

## **Miscellaneous**

### **Publication/Creation**

1903-1915

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/u8885y2n>

### **License and attribution**

You have permission to make copies of this work under a Creative Commons, Attribution, Non-commercial license.

Non-commercial use includes private study, academic research, teaching, and other activities that are not primarily intended for, or directed towards, commercial advantage or private monetary compensation. See the Legal Code for further information.

Image source should be attributed as specified in the full catalogue record. If no source is given the image should be attributed to Wellcome Collection.



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>



No. 6. Depot. A.F.A

Office Copy.



RANC Historical Museum

Received from OC, Royal Hospital  
Ardara Woodhouse 1 Feb 67.



MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

- ORDNANCE SERVICES. ARMY. Regns. 1902. Price 1s.  
 ORDNANCE. SERVICE. Treatise on. 1900. Price 10s.  
 PATHOLOGICAL SPECIMENS IN THE MUSEUM OF  
 THE ARMY MEDICAL DEPART., NETLEY. Descriptive Catalogue. 1892.  
 Price 5s.  
 RATIONS. Soldiers'. Lecture on the Mode of Provision and Inspection of. 1898. Price 1d.  
 RIFLE AND CARBINE EXERCISES. Manual, Firing and Bayonet Exercise, and Firing Exercise for Webley Pistol, and Instructions for Cleaning Arms. 1898. Price 3d.  
 SADDLES AND COLLARS, Sore Backs and Shoulders. A Manual of. By Veterinary Major F. SMITH. Third Edition. Price 1s.  
 TOPOGRAPHY. MILITARY. Text Book of. Parts I. and II. Price 1s. 6d. each.  
 TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS FOR THE ARMY. 1903. Price 1s.  
 VETERINARY SERVICES ARMY. Regns. 1900. Price 6d.  
 VOLUNTEER FORCE:—  
 REGNS. 1901. Price 1s.  
 CORPS. Purchase of Land by. 1893. Price 2d.  
 Do. Cash Accounts. Price 1d.  
 IN BRIGADE AND REGIMENTAL CAMPS, or when encamped with the Regular Forces. Orders, &c., for. May, 1902. Price 1d.  
 STEAM ENGINES AND BOILERS. Management of. Notes and Memoranda on the. 1899. Price 1d.  
 STORES. Priced Vocabulary of. 1902. Price 5s.  
 ARTIFICERS. MILITARY. Handbook. 8th Edition. Price 1s. 6d.  
 ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. Text Book of. Price 9s.  
 EXPLOSIVES. SERVICE. Treatise on. 1895. Price 2s.  
 GUNNERY. Text Book. 1902. Price 3s.  
 GUNNERY TABLES. Collected and compiled by Major G. MAC-KIMLAY, R.A., for the Text Book of Gunnery. 1897. 48 pp. Price 2s. 6d.  
 GUN. Handbooks, viz.:—  
 40-PR., R.B.L., of 32 and 35 cwt., on Travelling Siege Carriage and 6-Foot Parapet Carriage. (Movable Armament and Volunteer Batteries of Position.) 1899. Price 6d.  
 32-PR. S.B. B.L. (For Flank Defence), Mounted on Garrison Sliding Carriage and Traversing Slide. 1898. Price 6d.  
 20-PR., R.B.L., of 16 cwt., on Travelling Carriage. (Movable Armament and Volunteer Batteries of Position.) 1898. Price 1s.  
 16-PR., R.M.L., of 12 cwt. (Movable Armament and Batteries of Position, Volunteer Artillery.) 1898. Price 1s.  
 15-PR., B.L. (Mark I.) (Field Batteries.) 1898. Price 1s.  
 13-PR. R.M.L., of 8 cwt. (Movable Armament.) 1900. Price 1s.  
 12-PR. of 12 cwt. Q.F. (Land Service.) 1901. Price 1s. 6d.  
 9-PR., R.M.L., of 6 cwt. and 8 cwt. (Movable Armament.) 1901. Price 1s.  
 7-PR., R.M.L., of 150 LB. (Mark III.) and 200 LB. (Mark IV.), Mule Equipment; 150 LB. (Mark III.), Man Transport; and of 200 LB. (Mark IV.), Colonial Equipment. (L.S.) Price 2s. 6d.  
 6-PR. Hotchkiss. Q.F. (Land Service.) 1900. Price 6d.  
 3-PR. Hotchkiss. Q.F. (Land Service.) 1900. Price 1s.  
 6-PR. Nordenfält. Q.F. (Land Service.) 1900. Price 6d.  
 3-PR. Nordenfält. Q.F. (Land Service.) 1900. Price 1s. 6d.  
 1-PR. Q.F. 1902. Price 1s. 6d.  
 12-5-inch, R.M.L., of 38 tons. (Marks I and II.) 1899. Price 1s. 6d.  
 12-inch B.L. 1899. Price 1s. 6d.  
 11-inch, R.M.L., of 25 tons. 1899. Price 1s. 6d.  
 10-inch, B.L. 1900. Price 3s.  
 10-inch, R.M.L., and Mountings. 1899. Price 1s.



OFFICIAL COPY.

40185

9423A

[All Rights Reserved.]

# TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS

FOR THE

## ARMY

WITH

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE TRAINING OF TRUMPETERS  
AND BUGLERS.

---

---

1903.

---

---

Published by Authority.



LONDON:

PRINTED FOR HIS MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,  
BY HARRISON AND SONS, ST. MARTIN'S LANE,  
PRINTERS IN ORDINARY TO HIS MAJESTY.

And to be purchased, either directly or through any Bookseller, from  
EYRE & SPOTTISWOODE, EAST HARDING STREET, FLEET STREET, E.C.;  
or OLIVER & BOYD, EDINBURGH;  
or E. JONSONBY, 116, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.

*Price One Shilling.*

OFFICIAL COPY

40183

91224

[All Rights Reserved]

# TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS

FOR THE

## ARMY

WITH

### INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE TRAINING OF TRUMPETERS AND BUGLERS.

(Wt. 19,446 12,000 12 | 02—H & S 6268) P. 00  
1540

1903.

Published by Authority



LONDON:

Printed for His Majesty's Stationery Office  
BY HARRISON AND SONS, ST. MARTIN'S LANE,  
PRINTERS IN ORDINARY TO HIS MAJESTY.

And to be purchased, under direct authority of the Board of Ordnance and  
Survey, of the Stationery Office, at the Stationery Office, 15, Abchurch Lane,  
or of any of the Government Bookshops, at a price of 1s. 6d. per copy.  
By order of the Secretary of State, J. H. BURNETT, Esq., Secretary.

Price 0. 6d.



THE following "Trumpet and Bugle Sounds"  
are to be strictly adhered to on all  
occasions, and no others used in His Majesty's  
Service. General Officers Commanding may,  
at their discretion, order all or any of the  
Peace Calls to be used on Active Service.

Roberts, J. H.

*Commander-in-Chief.*

*War Office,*

*December, 1902.*

## CONTENTS.

### PART 1.—REGIMENTAL CALLS—

	PAGE
SEC. I. Household Cavalry and Cavalry of the Line	7-17
„ II. Royal Artillery and Royal Malta Artillery ..	18-21
„ III. Royal Engineers .. .. .	22
„ IV. Foot Guards and Infantry of the Line; Royal Garrison Regiment, West India Regiment, Hong Kong Regiment, King's African Rifles, West African Regiment, Chinese Regiment, and Mounted Infantry .	22-50
„ V. Royal Marines.. .. .	51
„ VI. Army Service Corps .. .. .	52
„ VII. Royal Army Medical Corps .. .. .	52
„ VIII. Army Ordnance Corps .. .. .	52

### PART 2.—WAR CALLS FOR ALL ARMS—

1. Charge .. .. .	53
2. Alarm .. .. .	53

### PART 3.—PEACE CALLS FOR ALL ARMS—

1. Officers .. .. .	54
2. Troop, Battery, or Company Sergeant-Majors, Colour-Sergeants, Quarter-Master Sergeants of A.S.C. or R.A.M.C. .. .. .	55
3. Orderly Sergeants .. .. .	56
4. Orderly Corporals .. .. .	56
5. Band .. .. .	57



PART 3.—PEACE CALLS—*continued.*

	PAGE
6. Trumpeters, Drummers, or Buglers .. ..	57
7. Signallers.. ..	58
8. Pioneers .. ..	58
9. Orders .. ..	59
10. Orderly Room .. ..	60
11. Post Call .. ..	61
12. Warning for Parade .. ..	61
13. Quarter Call (before Parade) .. ..	63
14. Fall In .. ..	63
15. Dismiss, or No Parade .. ..	64
16. Recruits' Parade, or Rides .. ..	65
17. Watering Order .. ..	65
18. Stables .. ..	66
19. Feed .. ..	68
20. Hay up, or Litter Down .. ..	68
21. Parade for Guard. . . .	69
22. Parade for Picquet .. ..	70
23. Fatigue .. ..	70
24. Defaulters .. ..	71
25. Sick .. ..	71
26. School .. ..	71
27. Rations .. ..	72
28. Forage .. ..	72
29. Alarm (for troops to turn out under arms) ..	72
30. Fire Alarm .. ..	73
31. Officers Dress for Dinner .. ..	73
32. Officers' Dinner .. ..	74
33. Sergeants' Dinner .. ..	75
34. Men's Meal (1st Call) .. ..	75

PART 3.—PEACE CALLS—*continued.*

	PAGE
35. Men's Meal (2nd Call) .. .. .	76
36. Flourish when Marching Past .. .. .	76
37. Salute for Guard.. .. .	77
38. Reveille .. .. .	78
39. Retreat .. .. .	79
40. Tattoo (1st Post) .. .. .	81
41. Tattoo (Last Post) .. .. .	83
42. Lights Out .. .. .	86
43. Continue .. .. .	86
44. Stand Fast .. .. .	86
45. Double .. .. .	87

## PART 4.—INSTRUCTIONS FOR TRUMPETERS AND BUGLERS—

SEC.	PAGE
I. General Instructions .. .. .	88-95
„ II. Exercises for the Bugle .. .. .	96-112
„ III. Exercises for the Trumpet .. .. .	113-130



## SECTION I.—CAVALRY.

## HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY.

## 1ST LIFE GUARDS.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 1st Life Guards call is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The Bugle part is in 2/4 time, starting with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. This is followed by a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a half note F#4. The melody continues with a quarter note E4, a quarter note D4, and a half note C4. The Trumpet part is in 2/4 time, starting with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. This is followed by a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a half note F#4. The melody continues with a quarter note E4, a quarter note D4, and a half note C4.

## 2ND LIFE GUARDS.

♩ = 108

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 2nd Life Guards call is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The Bugle part is in 6/8 time, starting with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. This is followed by a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a half note F#4. The melody continues with a quarter note E4, a quarter note D4, and a half note C4. The Trumpet part is in 6/8 time, starting with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. This is followed by a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a half note F#4. The melody continues with a quarter note E4, a quarter note D4, and a half note C4.

## ROYAL HORSE GUARDS.

♩ = 108

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the Royal Horse Guards call is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The Bugle part is in 2/4 time, starting with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. This is followed by a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a half note F#4. The melody continues with a quarter note E4, a quarter note D4, and a half note C4. The Trumpet part is in 2/4 time, starting with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. This is followed by a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a half note F#4. The melody continues with a quarter note E4, a quarter note D4, and a half note C4.



## CAVALRY OF THE LINE.

## 1ST DRAGOON GUARDS.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{C} = 76$

The musical notation for the 1st Dragoon Guards is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in C major (one sharp) and common time. The tempo is marked as C = 76. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, a quarter note C5, a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a final half note G4. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note G3, an eighth note A3, a quarter note B3, a quarter note C4, a quarter note B3, an eighth note A3, a quarter note G3, and a final half note G3. Both parts end with a repeat sign.

## 2ND DRAGOON GUARDS.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{C} = 76$

The musical notation for the 2nd Dragoon Guards is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in C major (one sharp) and common time. The tempo is marked as C = 76. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, a quarter note C5, a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a final half note G4. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note G3, an eighth note A3, a quarter note B3, a quarter note C4, a quarter note B3, an eighth note A3, a quarter note G3, and a final half note G3. Both parts end with a repeat sign.

## 3RD DRAGOON GUARDS.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{C} = 76$

The musical notation for the 3rd Dragoon Guards is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in C major (one sharp) and common time. The tempo is marked as C = 76. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, a quarter note C5, a quarter note B4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note G4, and a final half note G4. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note G3, an eighth note A3, a quarter note B3, a quarter note C4, a quarter note B3, an eighth note A3, a quarter note G3, and a final half note G3. Both parts end with a repeat sign.



## 4TH DRAGOON GUARDS.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 4th Dragoon Guards is written for Bugle and Trumpet. It is in 6/8 time, indicated by the '6' over the '8' in the time signature. The tempo is marked with a quarter note followed by '= 108.'. The key signature has one flat (B-flat). The Bugle part is on a single staff, and the Trumpet part is on a single staff. Both parts begin with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Bugle part has a final fermata, while the Trumpet part has a final fermata on a half note.

## 5TH DRAGOON GUARDS.

$\circ = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 5th Dragoon Guards is written for Bugle and Trumpet. It is in common time (C), indicated by the 'C' in the time signature. The tempo is marked with a half note followed by '= 76.'. The key signature has one flat (B-flat). The Bugle part is on a single staff, and the Trumpet part is on a single staff. Both parts begin with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Bugle part has a final fermata, while the Trumpet part has a final fermata on a half note.

## 6TH DRAGOON GUARDS.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 6th Dragoon Guards is written for Bugle and Trumpet. It is in 6/8 time, indicated by the '6' over the '8' in the time signature. The tempo is marked with a quarter note followed by '= 108.'. The key signature has one flat (B-flat). The Bugle part is on a single staff, and the Trumpet part is on a single staff. Both parts begin with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Bugle part has a final fermata, while the Trumpet part has a final fermata on a half note.



## 7TH DRAGOON GUARDS.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

This musical score is for the 7th Dragoon Guards. It features two staves: Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 3/4. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. Both parts are written in a style typical of 19th-century military music.

## 1ST DRAGOONS.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

This musical score is for the 1st Dragoons. It features two staves: Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 2/4. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. Both parts are written in a style typical of 19th-century military music.

## 2ND DRAGOONS.

$\bullet = 108$

Bugle

Trumpet

This musical score is for the 2nd Dragoons. It features two staves: Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 6/8. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. Both parts are written in a style typical of 19th-century military music.



## 3RD HUSSARS.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 3rd Hussars is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. Both parts end with a quarter note G4 and a half note C5.

## 4TH HUSSARS.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 4th Hussars is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in 6/8 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. Both parts end with a quarter note G4 and a half note C5.

## 5TH LANCERS.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 5th Lancers is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, an eighth note A4, a quarter note B4, and a half note C5. Both parts end with a quarter note G4 and a half note C5.

## 6TH DRAGOONS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

## 7TH HUSSARS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

## 8TH HUSSARS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet



## 9TH LANCERS.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{♩} = 76.$

The musical score for the 9th Lancers is written for Bugle and Trumpet. Both parts are in C major and common time (C). The tempo is marked as quarter note = 76. The Bugle part consists of a half note G, a quarter note A, a quarter note B, a quarter note C, a quarter note D, a quarter note E, a quarter note F, and a half note G. The Trumpet part consists of a half note G, a quarter note A, a quarter note B, a quarter note C, a quarter note D, a quarter note E, a quarter note F, and a half note G.

## 10TH HUSSARS.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{♩} = 76.$

The musical score for the 10th Hussars is written for Bugle and Trumpet. Both parts are in C major and common time (C). The tempo is marked as quarter note = 76. The Bugle part consists of a half note G, a quarter note A, a quarter note B, a quarter note C, a quarter note D, a quarter note E, a quarter note F, and a half note G. The Trumpet part consists of a half note G, a quarter note A, a quarter note B, a quarter note C, a quarter note D, a quarter note E, a quarter note F, and a half note G.

## 11TH HUSSARS.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{♩} = 108.$

The musical score for the 11th Hussars is written for Bugle and Trumpet. Both parts are in C major and 2/4 time. The tempo is marked as quarter note = 108. The Bugle part consists of a half note G, a quarter note A, a quarter note B, a quarter note C, a quarter note D, a quarter note E, a quarter note F, and a half note G. The Trumpet part consists of a half note G, a quarter note A, a quarter note B, a quarter note C, a quarter note D, a quarter note E, a quarter note F, and a half note G.



## 12TH LANCERS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 12th Lancers is written for Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 2/4. The tempo is marked as ♩ = 108. The Bugle part is in the treble clef, and the Trumpet part is in the bass clef. Both parts feature a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a final measure containing a whole note and a repeat sign.

## 13TH HUSSARS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 13th Hussars is written for Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 6/8. The tempo is marked as ♩ = 108. The Bugle part is in the treble clef, and the Trumpet part is in the bass clef. Both parts feature a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a final measure containing a whole note and a repeat sign.

## 14TH HUSSARS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 14th Hussars is written for Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 3/4. The tempo is marked as ♩ = 108. The Bugle part is in the treble clef, and the Trumpet part is in the bass clef. Both parts feature a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a final measure containing a whole note and a repeat sign. The Trumpet part includes triplets in the final measure.



## 15TH HUSSARS.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 15th Hussars is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note, followed by an eighth note, a quarter note, and a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note, followed by an eighth note, a quarter note, and a half note. Both parts end with a quarter note and a half note. The tempo is marked as 108.

## 16TH LANCERS.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 16th Lancers is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note, followed by an eighth note, a quarter note, and a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note, followed by an eighth note, a quarter note, and a half note. Both parts end with a quarter note and a half note. The tempo is marked as 108.

## 17TH LANCERS.

$\circ = 76$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the 17th Lancers is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom for the Trumpet. Both are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note, followed by an eighth note, a quarter note, and a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note, followed by an eighth note, a quarter note, and a half note. Both parts end with a quarter note and a half note. The tempo is marked as 76.



## 18TH HUSSARS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 18th Hussars is written for Bugle and Trumpet. The Bugle part is in 6/8 time, starting with a quarter note G4, followed by eighth notes A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F5, and G5. The Trumpet part is in 6/8 time, starting with a quarter note G3, followed by eighth notes A3, B3, C4, D4, E4, F4, and G4. Both parts end with a double bar line.

## 19TH HUSSARS

♩ = 76.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 19th Hussars is written for Bugle and Trumpet. The Bugle part is in 2/4 time, starting with a quarter rest, followed by a half note G4, and then eighth notes A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F5, and G5. The Trumpet part is in 2/4 time, starting with a quarter note G3, followed by a half note A3, and then eighth notes B3, C4, D4, E4, F4, and G4. Both parts end with a double bar line.

## 20TH HUSSARS.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical score for the 20th Hussars is written for Bugle and Trumpet. The Bugle part is in 2/4 time, starting with a quarter note G4, followed by eighth notes A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F5, and G5. The Trumpet part is in 2/4 time, starting with a quarter note G3, followed by eighth notes A3, B3, C4, D4, E4, F4, and G4. Both parts end with a double bar line.

## 21ST LANCERS.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{♩} = 76.$

The musical score for the 21st Lancers is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The tempo is marked as quarter note = 76. The Bugle part is in C major, 2/4 time, with a melody of eighth and quarter notes. The Trumpet part is in C major, 2/4 time, with a melody of eighth and quarter notes, including triplets.

## CAVALRY DEPÔT.

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{♩} = 108.$

The musical score for the Cavalry Depot is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The tempo is marked as quarter note = 108. The Bugle part is in C major, 2/4 time, with a melody of eighth and quarter notes. The Trumpet part is in C major, 2/4 time, with a melody of eighth and quarter notes, including triplets.



ROYAL HORSE ARTILLERY.

Bugle

Trumpet

The image shows a musical score for two parts: Bugle and Trumpet. The Bugle part is written in a single staff with a treble clef and a 6/8 time signature. The Trumpet part is written in a single staff with a treble clef and a 6/8 time signature. Both parts are in G major, indicated by one sharp (F#). The tempo is marked as 'Allegretto' with a quarter note equal to 108 beats per minute. The key signature is one sharp (F#). The time signature is 6/8. The music consists of four measures. The Bugle part starts with a quarter rest, followed by eighth and sixteenth notes. The Trumpet part starts with a quarter note, followed by eighth and sixteenth notes. Both parts end with a half note and a fermata.

DEPÔT.

**Bugle**

**Trumpet**

$\text{♩} = 108.$

The image shows the musical notation for the Bugle and Trumpet parts of 'The Charge of the Light Brigade'. The tempo is marked as quarter note = 108. The key signature has one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 2/4. The Bugle part is written on a single staff with a treble clef. The Trumpet part is written on a single staff with a treble clef. Both parts feature a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with some measures containing triplets. The notation includes various musical symbols such as beams, slurs, and dynamic markings like 'v' (forte) and 'f' (fortissimo). The score is presented in a clear, legible format with a large, bold font for the instrument names.



## ROYAL ARTILLERY.

## R.A. REGIMENTAL CALL

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

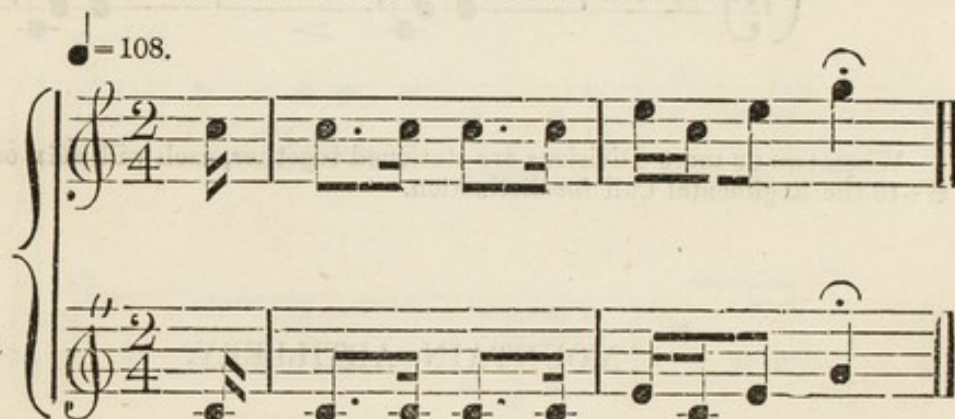


## ROYAL FIELD ARTILLERY.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet




When two or more Brigade Divisions, Field Artillery, are quartered together, each will affix one or more G's to the Field Artillery Call to distinguish 1st, 2nd, &c., Brigade Divisions.

## RIDING ESTABLISHMENT.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet





## ROYAL GARRISON ARTILLERY.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the Royal Garrison Artillery call is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom staff is for the Trumpet. Both are in 2/4 time. The tempo is marked as a quarter note equals 108. The Bugle part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat (B-flat). The melody consists of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a final measure containing a half note with a fermata. The Trumpet part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The melody is similar to the Bugle part but includes some lower notes and a final measure with a half note and a fermata. A dynamic marking of 'f' (forte) is placed below the first measure of the Trumpet part.

When two or more Divisions are stationed together, each will affix one or more G's to the Regimental Call for distinction.

## MOUNTAIN ARTILLERY.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the Mountain Artillery call is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom staff is for the Trumpet. Both are in 2/4 time. The tempo is marked as a quarter note equals 108. The Bugle part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The melody consists of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a final measure containing a half note with a fermata. The Trumpet part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The melody is similar to the Bugle part but includes some lower notes and a final measure with a half note and a fermata. A dynamic marking of 'f' (forte) is placed below the first measure of the Trumpet part.

When two or more Batteries are quartered together, each will affix one or more G's to the Mountain Artillery Call to distinguish the 1st, 2nd, &c., Batteries.



## DISTRICT STAFF.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the District Staff call is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 2/4. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note.

## LOCAL COMPANIES R.A.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the Local Companies R.A. call is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 3/4. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note.

Where two or more Companies are quartered together, each will affix one or more G's to the Local Companies Call to distinguish the 1st, 2nd, &c., Companies.

## ROYAL MALTA ARTILLERY.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the Royal Malta Artillery call is presented for Bugle and Trumpet. The key signature is one flat (B-flat), and the time signature is 2/4. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note.



### SECTION III.—ROYAL ENGINEERS.

## REGIMENTAL CALL.

$\text{♩} = 108$  Maelzel's Metronome.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.

Bugle

Trumpet

The image shows a musical score for two parts: Bugle and Trumpet. The tempo is marked as ♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome. The Bugle part is written in a single staff with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat (B-flat major). The Trumpet part is written in a single staff with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat (B-flat major). Both parts are in 4/4 time. The Bugle part starts with a whole note G4, followed by a half note A4, a quarter note B-flat4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note G4, and a whole note F4. The Trumpet part starts with a whole note G4, followed by a half note A4, a quarter note B-flat4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note G4, and a whole note F4. The score is for the first line of the song, 'The Star-Spangled Banner'.

## SECTION IV.—INFANTRY.

GRENADIER GUARDS.

FOOT GUARDS.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108$  Maelzel's Metronome.

2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

3rd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

The image shows a musical score for three parts, labeled '1st Batt.', '2nd Batt.', and '3rd Batt.'. Each part is written on a single staff with a treble clef. The first staff is in 2/4 time, the second and third are in 6/8 time. Each staff begins with a tempo marking: a quarter note followed by '= 108 Maelzel's Metronome.' for the first part, and '= 108.' for the others. The notation includes various note values, rests, and bar lines. The first part has a repeat sign at the end of the first measure. The second and third parts have repeat signs at the end of the first measure. The third part has a repeat sign at the end of the first measure. The third part has a repeat sign at the end of the first measure.



## COLDSTREAM GUARDS.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

3rd Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

The musical score for the Coldstream Guards is presented in three staves. The 1st and 3rd Battalions are in 2/4 time, while the 2nd Battalion is in 6/8 time. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The music consists of a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with triplets in the 1st and 3rd Battalions.

## SCOTS GUARDS.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

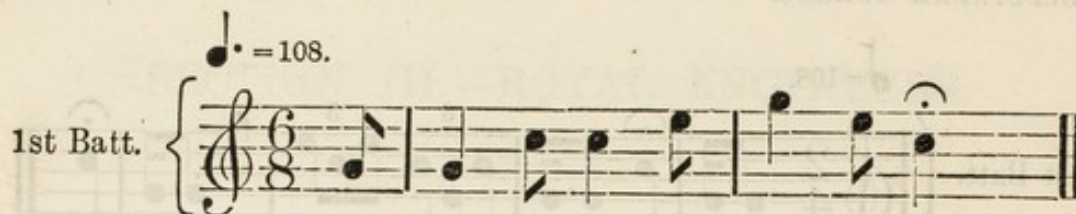
2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

The musical score for the Scots Guards is presented in three staves. The tempo is marked as 108 beats per minute. The music consists of a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with triplets in the 1st and 3rd Battalions.

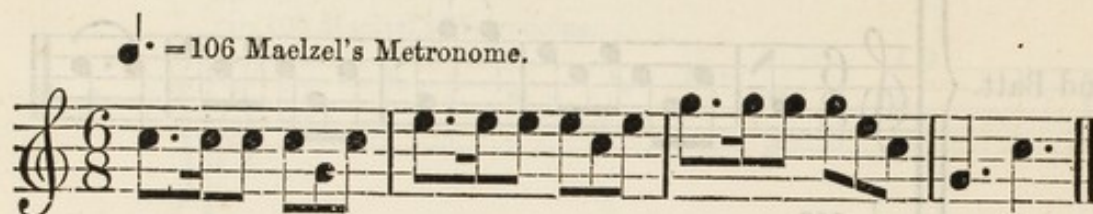


## IRISH GUARDS.



## BRIGADE CALLS OF FOOT GUARDS.

## 1ST BRIGADE.



## 2ND BRIGADE.



## INFANTRY OF THE LINE.

When more than one Battalion use the same Regimental Call, the "G's" prefixed for distinction in that laid down for the Battalions need only be sounded when two or more of the Battalions happen to be stationed together.

## ROYAL SCOTS.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.





## ROYAL WEST SURREY.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

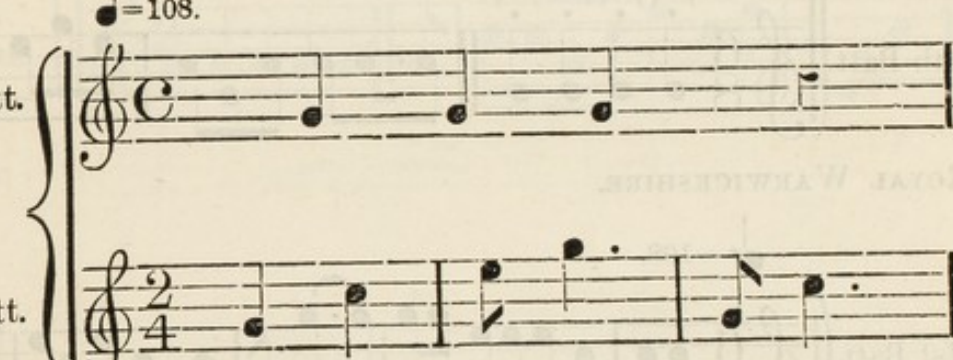


## EAST KENT.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

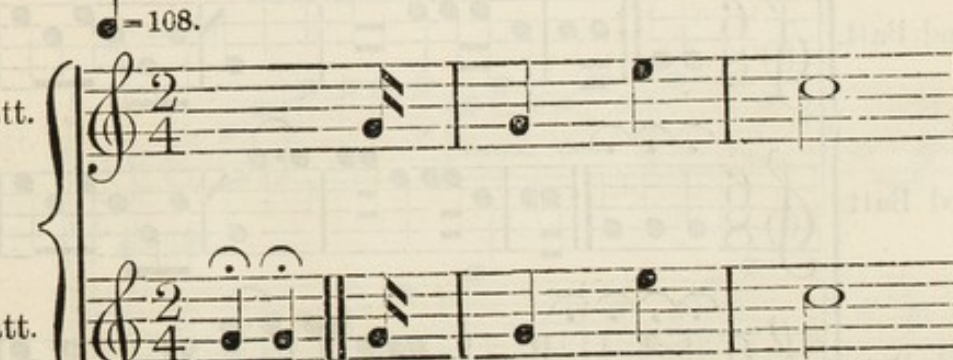


## ROYAL LANCASTER.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.





## NORTHUMBERLAND FUSILIERS.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.

## ROYAL WARWICKSHIRE.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.



## ROYAL FUSILIERS.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.



## LIVERPOOL.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.





## NORFOLK.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

1st Batt. 2nd Batt.

## LINCOLNSHIRE.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

1st Batt. 2nd Batt.

## DEVONSHIRE.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

1st Batt. 2nd Batt.



## SUFFOLK.

 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

1st Batt. 

2nd Batt. 

## SOMERSETSHIRE L. I.

 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

1st Batt. 

2nd Batt. 

## WEST YORKSHIRE.

 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

1st Batt. 

2nd Batt. 



## EAST YORKSHIRE.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

The musical notation for the East Yorkshire Regimental Call is presented for two battalions. Both parts are in 6/8 time. The 1st Battalion part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat (B-flat). The melody consists of a series of eighth and quarter notes, ending with a half note. The 2nd Battalion part also begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. It features a similar melody but includes a triplet of eighth notes in the first measure. Both parts conclude with a double bar line.

## BEDFORDSHIRE.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

The musical notation for the Bedfordshire Regimental Call is presented for two battalions. Both parts are in 2/4 time. The 1st Battalion part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The melody consists of a series of eighth and quarter notes, ending with a half note. The 2nd Battalion part also begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. It features a similar melody but includes a triplet of eighth notes in the first measure. Both parts conclude with a double bar line.

## LEICESTERSHIRE.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

The musical notation for the Leicestershire Regimental Call is presented for two battalions. Both parts are in 2/4 time. The 1st Battalion part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The melody consists of a series of eighth and quarter notes, ending with a half note. The 2nd Battalion part also begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. It features a similar melody but includes a triplet of eighth notes in the first measure. Both parts conclude with a double bar line.

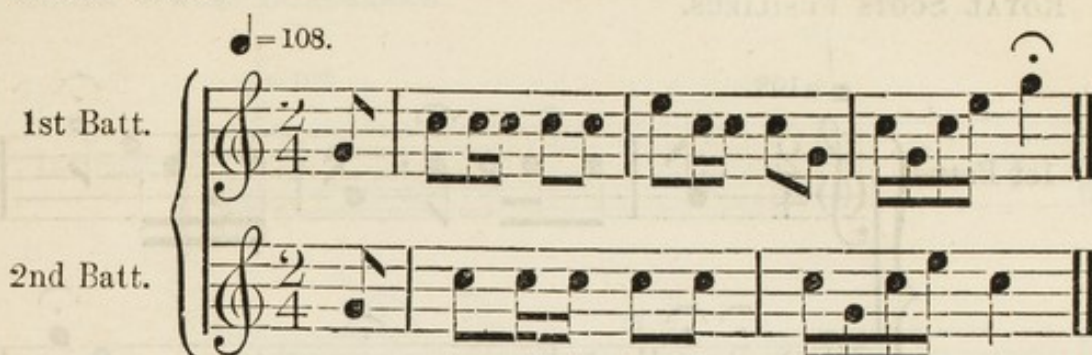


## ROYAL IRISH.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.




## YORKSHIRE.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



## LANCASHIRE FUSILIERS.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.





## ROYAL SCOTS FUSILIERS.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



## CHESHIRE.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



## ROYAL WELSH FUSILIERS.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



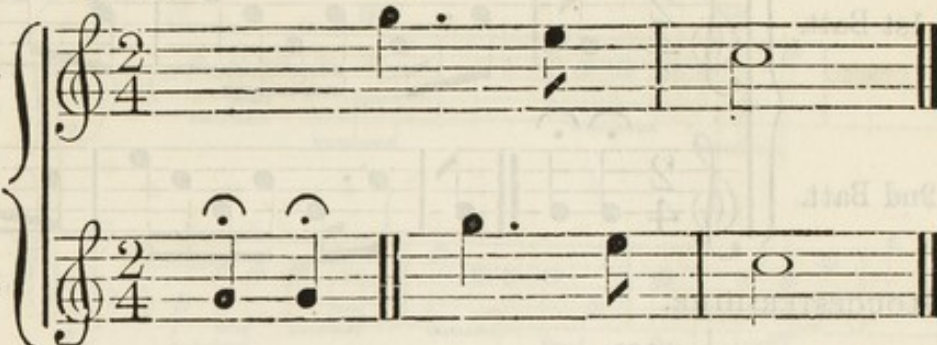


## SOUTH WALES BORDERERS.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



## KING'S OWN SCOTTISH BORDERERS.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.




## SCOTTISH RIFLES.

♩ = 108

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.





## ROYAL INNISKILLING FUSILIERS.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## GLOUCESTERSHIRE.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

1st Batt.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.

## WORCESTERSHIRE.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

3rd Batt.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

4th Batt.



## EAST LANCASHIRE.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.

## EAST SURREY.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108$

2nd Batt.

## DUKE OF CORNWALL'S L. I.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 76.$

2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$



## WEST RIDING.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.

## BORDER.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.

## ROYAL SUSSEX.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.



## HAMPSHIRE.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## SOUTH STAFFORDSHIRE.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## DORSETSHIRE.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.


2nd Batt.



## SOUTH LANCASHIRE.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$



## WELSH.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$



## ROYAL HIGHLANDERS.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$





## OXFORDSHIRE L. I.

♩. = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## ESSEX.

♩. = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## DERBYSHIRE.

♩. = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



## NORTH LANCASHIRE.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



## NORTHAMPTONSHIRE.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

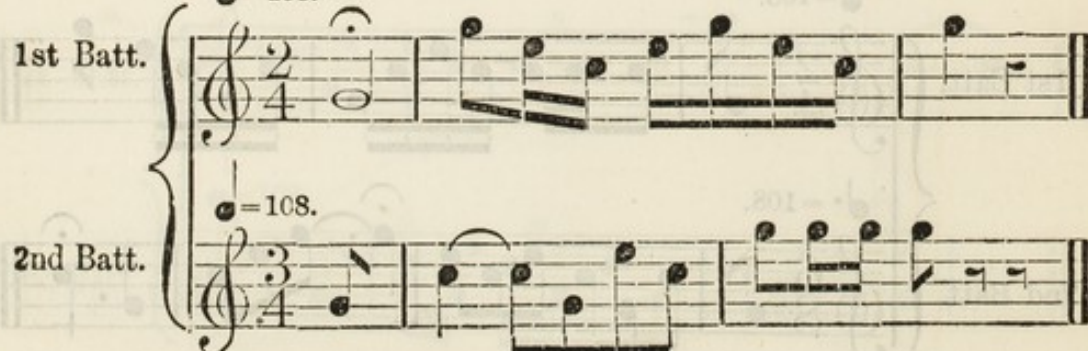


## ROYAL BERKSHIRE.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.





## ROYAL WEST KENT.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

## YORKSHIRE L.I.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

## SURREYSHIRE L. I.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$



## MIDDLESEX.

♩ = 108.

ROYAL WEST KENT

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.

## KING'S ROYAL RIFLE CORPS.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.

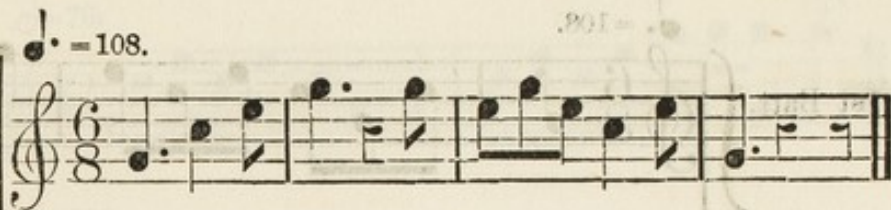


## WILTSHIRE.

NORTH STAFFORDSHIRE

108. =

1st Batt.



2nd Batt.



YORK AND LANCASTER

108. =

## MANCHESTER.

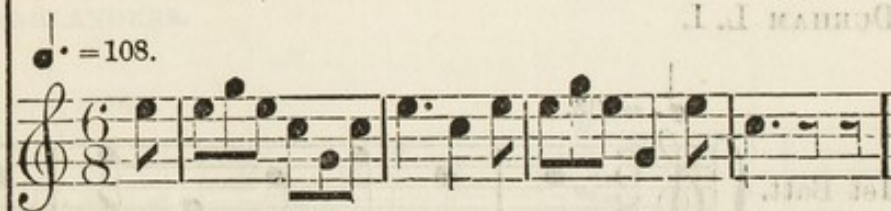
1st Batt.



2nd Batt.



3rd Batt.



4th Batt.





## NORTH STAFFORDSHIRE.

♩. = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## YORK AND LANCASTER.

♩. = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## DURHAM L. I.

♩. = 108.

1st Batt.

♩ = 76.

2nd Batt.



## HIGHLAND L. I.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 76.$


2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$



## SEAFORTH HIGHLANDERS.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$



## GORDON HIGHLANDERS.

1st Batt.  $\text{♩} = 76.$

2nd Batt.  $\text{♩} = 108.$





## CAMERON HIGHLANDERS.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## ROYAL IRISH RIFLES.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## ROYAL IRISH FUSILIERS.

$\bullet = 108.$

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.



## CONNAUGHT RANGERS.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

## ARGYLL AND SUTHERLAND HIGHLANDERS.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\bullet = 76.$

## LEINSTER.

1st Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$

2nd Batt.  $\bullet = 108.$



## ROYAL MUNSTER FUSILIERS.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## ROYAL DUBLIN FUSILIERS.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

## RIFLE BRIGADE.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.



## ROYAL GARRISON REGIMENT.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.

4th Batt.

5th Batt.



## WEST INDIA REGIMENT.

♩ = 108.

1st Batt.

2nd Batt.

3rd Batt.





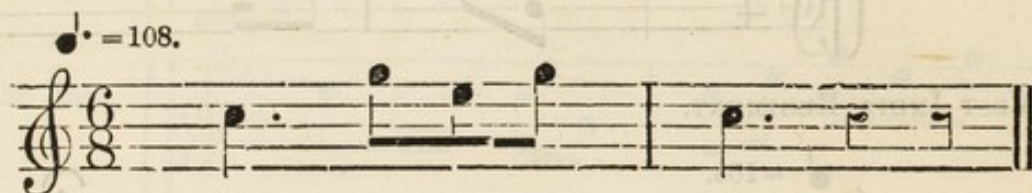
## HONG KONG REGIMENT.



## KING'S AFRICAN RIFLES.



## WEST AFRICAN REGIMENT.



## CHINESE REGIMENT.



## MOUNTED INFANTRY.





## SECTION V.—ROYAL MARINES.

## ROYAL MARINE ARTILLERY.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for the Bugle and Trumpet parts is written on two staves. The Bugle part is in the treble clef with a 6/8 time signature. The Trumpet part is also in the treble clef with a 6/8 time signature. Both parts consist of a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, ending with a half note. The Bugle part has a fermata over the final note, and the Trumpet part has a fermata over the final note.

## ROYAL MARINE LIGHT INFANTRY.

## 1. CHATHAM DIVISION.

♩ = 108.

The musical notation for the Chatham Division call is written on a single staff in the treble clef with a 2/4 time signature. It consists of a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a triplet of eighth notes in the second measure and a triplet of eighth notes in the fourth measure. The piece ends with a half note.

## 2. PORTSMOUTH DIVISION.

♩ = 76.

The musical notation for the Portsmouth Division call is written on a single staff in the treble clef with a 2/4 time signature. It consists of a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a triplet of eighth notes in the second measure and a triplet of eighth notes in the fourth measure. The piece ends with a half note.

## 3. PLYMOUTH DIVISION.

♩ = 76.

The musical notation for the Plymouth Division call is written on a single staff in the treble clef with a 2/4 time signature. It consists of a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with a triplet of eighth notes in the second measure and a triplet of eighth notes in the fourth measure. The piece ends with a half note.



## SECTION VI.—ARMY SERVICE CORPS.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.

Bugle

Trumpet

## SECTION VII.—ROYAL ARMY MEDICAL CORPS.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.

## SECTION VIII.—ARMY ORDNANCE CORPS.

♩ = 108 Maelzel's Metronome.



## WAR CALLS.

## No. 1. CHARGE.

 $\text{♩} = 160.$ 

Bugle

Trumpet

## No. 2. ALARM.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.



## PEACE CALLS.

[General Officers Commanding may at their discretion order all or any of the Peace Calls to be used on Active Service.]

## No. 1. OFFICERS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.



NO. 2. TROOP, BATTERY, OR COMPANY SERGEANT-MAJORS, COLOUR-SERGEANTS, QUARTER-MASTER-SERGEANTS OF ARMY SERVICE CORPS, OR R. A. M. CORPS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The Bugle and Trumpet parts are written on two staves. The Bugle staff is in G-clef and 6/8 time. The Trumpet staff is in C-clef and 6/8 time. Both parts play the same melody: a quarter note G4, eighth notes A4-B4, quarter note C5, eighth notes D5-E5, quarter note F5, eighth notes G5-A5, quarter note B5, eighth notes A5-G5, quarter note F5, eighth notes E5-D5, quarter note C5, eighth notes B4-A4, quarter note G4. The piece ends with a double bar line.

B.

T.

The B. and T. parts are written on two staves. The B. staff is in G-clef and 6/8 time. The T. staff is in C-clef and 6/8 time. Both parts play the same melody: a quarter note G4, eighth notes A4-B4, quarter note C5, eighth notes D5-E5, quarter note F5, eighth notes G5-A5, quarter note B5, eighth notes A5-G5, quarter note F5, eighth notes E5-D5, quarter note C5, eighth notes B4-A4, quarter note G4. The piece ends with a double bar line.



## No. 3. ORDERLY SERGEANTS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.

## No. 4. ORDERLY CORPORALS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet



No. 5. BAND

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

No. 6. TRUMPETERS, DRUMMERS, OR BUGLERS.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet



## No. 7. SIGNALLERS.

Bugle

Trumpet

This musical score is for 'No. 7. SIGNALLERS'. It features two staves: Bugle and Trumpet. Both are in 6/8 time. The Bugle part starts with a half note G4, followed by a quarter note F#4, a quarter note E4, and a half note D4. The Trumpet part starts with a half note G3, followed by a quarter note F#3, a quarter note E3, and a half note D3. Both parts end with a double bar line.

## No. 8. PIONEERS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B

T.

This musical score is for 'No. 8. PIONEERS'. It features four staves: Bugle, Trumpet, B (Baritone), and T (Tenor). The tempo is marked as  $\text{♩} = 76.$ . The Bugle and Trumpet parts are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part starts with a half note G4, followed by a quarter note F#4, a quarter note E4, and a half note D4. The Trumpet part starts with a half note G3, followed by a quarter note F#3, a quarter note E3, and a half note D3. The B and T parts are in 2/4 time. The B part starts with a half note G4, followed by a quarter note F#4, a quarter note E4, and a half note D4. The T part starts with a half note G3, followed by a quarter note F#3, a quarter note E3, and a half note D3. All parts end with a double bar line.



Part 3.]

59  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 9. ORDERS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet





## No. 10. ORDERLY ROOM.

 $\bullet = 108.$ 

Bugle

Trumpet

B. 

T. 

B. 

T. 



Part 3.]

61  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 11. POST CALL.

$\text{♩} = 104.$

Bugle

Trumpet



No. 12. WARNING FOR PARADE.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.





No. 12. WARNING FOR PARADE—*continued.*

B. 

T. 

B. 

T. 

B. 

T. 



## No. 13. QUARTER CALL (before Parade).

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

## No. 14. FALL IN.

$\circ = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.

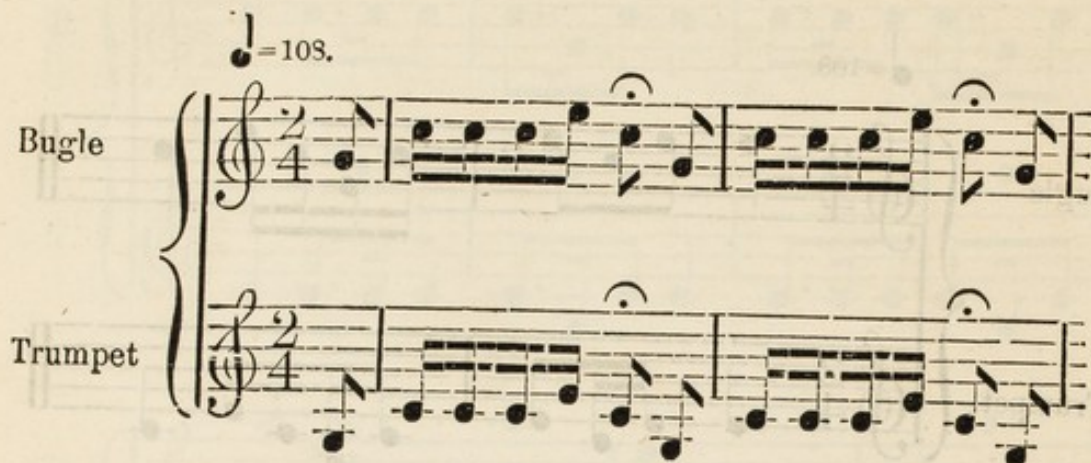


## No. 15. DISMISS, OR NO PARADE.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

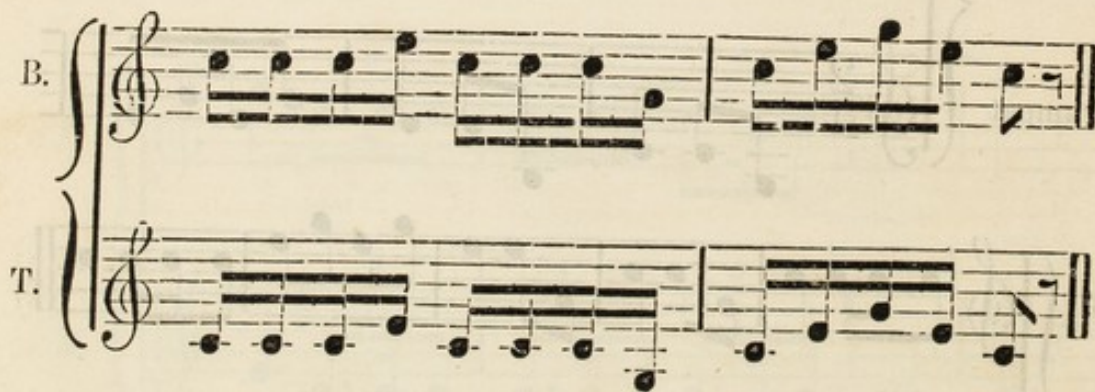
Bugle

Trumpet

No. 15. DISMISS, OR NO PARADE—*continued.*

B.

T.





No. 17. WATERING ORDER—continued.

## No. 16. RECRUITS' PARADE, OR RIDES.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

## No. 17. WATERING ORDER.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle


Trumpet



No. 17. WATERING ORDER—*continued.*

B.

T.



## No. 18. STABLES.

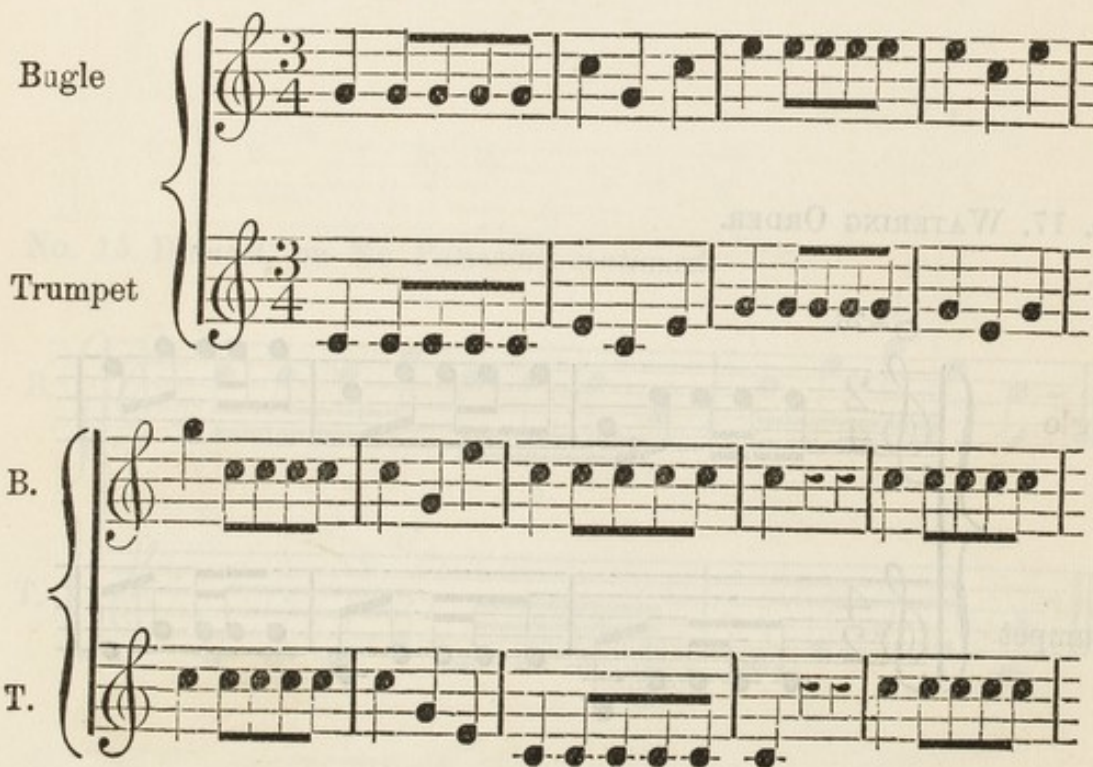
♩ = 76.

Bugle

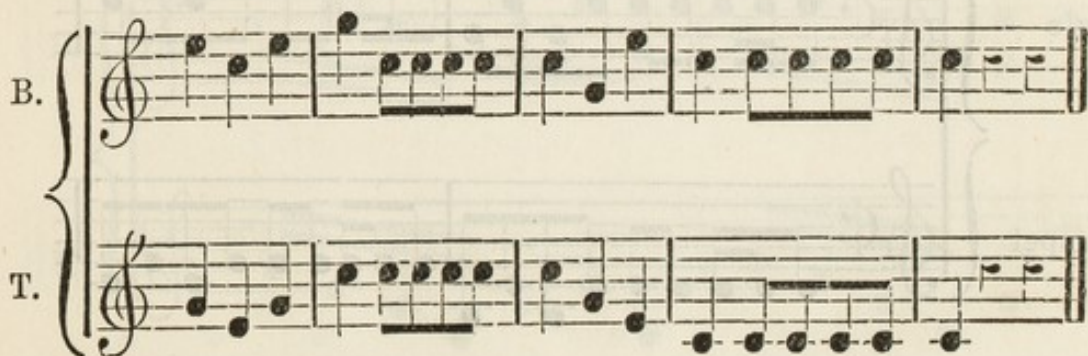
Trumpet

B.

T.





No. 18. STABLES—*continued.*



## No. 19. FEED.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.

## No. 20. HAY UP, OR LITTER DOWN.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet



No. 20. HAY UP, OR LITTER DOWN—*continued.*

## No. 21. PARADE FOR GUARD.

$\bullet = 108.$

Three staves of music, labeled Bugle, Trumpet, and B. (Baritone), in treble clef. The music is in 2/4 time and consists of two measures. The Bugle staff begins with a half rest followed by a quarter note G4, then a quarter note A4, and a half note B4. The Trumpet staff begins with a half rest followed by a quarter note F4, then a quarter note G4, and a half note A4. The B. staff begins with a half rest followed by a quarter note G4, then a quarter note A4, and a half note B4. All staves end with a double bar line.



## No. 22. PARADE FOR PICQUET.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

Bugle

Trumpet

## No. 23. FATIGUE.

 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.



Part 3.]

71  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 24. DEFAULTERS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

No. 25. SICK.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

No. 26. SCHOOL.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet



Part 3.]

72  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 27. RATIONS.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

No. 28. FORAGE.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

No. 29. ALARM (for troops to turn out under arms).

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet



## Part 3.]

## PEACE CALLS.

No. 29. ALARM—*continued*.

B.

T.

## No. 30. FIRE ALARM.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet

## No. 31. OFFICER'S DRESS FOR DINNER.

♩ = 76.

Bugle

Trumpet



No. 32. OFFICER'S DINNER.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.

B.

T.

The musical score is arranged in three systems. The first system features a Bugle and a Trumpet, both in 6/8 time. The Bugle part is written in a single treble clef, while the Trumpet part is written in a single treble clef. The second system features two Horns, labeled 'B.' (Baritone) and 'T.' (Tenor), both in a single treble clef. The third system also features two Horns, labeled 'B.' and 'T.', both in a single treble clef. The music consists of a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with some rests and repeat signs. The tempo is marked as 76 beats per minute.



## Part 3.]

## PEACE CALLS.

## No. 33. SERGEANT'S DINNER.

♩ = 76.

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.

## No. 34. MEN'S MEAL (1st Call).

♩ = 76.

Bugle

Trumpet



## No. 35. MEN'S MEAL (2nd Call).

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.

## No. 36. FLOURISH WHEN MARCHING PAST.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet



Part 3.]

77  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 36. FLOURISH WHEN MARCHING PAST—continued.

B.

T.

No. 37. SALUTE FOR GUARD.

*Do be used on all occasions when Trumpets or Bugles are required to sound a salute.*


Bugle


Trumpet

*See A. O. 144 of 1905*




No. 37. SALUTE FOR GUARD—*continued.*

B. 

T. 

## No. 38. REVEILLE.

 = 108.

Bugle 

Trumpet 

B. 

T. 





Part 3.]

79  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 38. REVEILLE—continued.

*Slower.*

B. 

T. 

No. 39. RETREAT.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle 

Trumpet 

B. 

T. 



No. 39. RETREAT—*continued.*



Part 3.]

81  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 39. RETREAT—*continued.*

B.

T.

No. 40. TATTOO (1st Post).

Bugle

Trumpet

B.

T.

$\text{♩} = 76.$



No. 40. TATTOO (1st Post)—*continued.*



No. 40. TATTOO (1st Post)—*continued.*

B.

T.

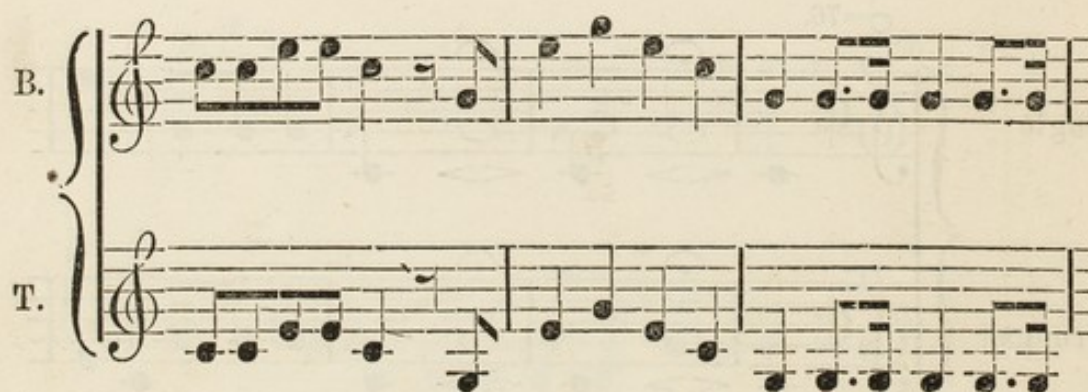
## No. 41. TATTOO (Last Post).

Bugle

Trumpet

$\text{♩} = 76.$



No. 41. TATTOO (Last Post)—*continued.*



B.

T.



Part 3.]

86  
PEACE CALLS.

No. 42. LIGHTS OUT.

Bugle

Trumpet

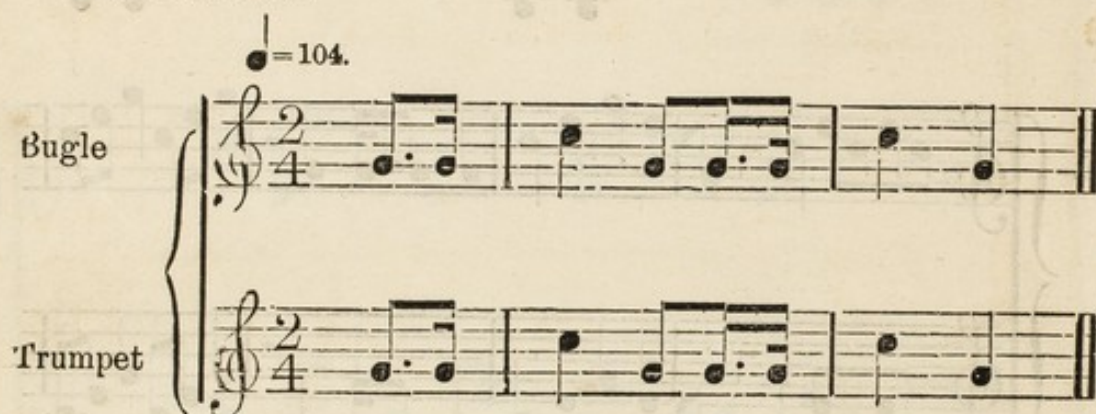


No. 43. CONTINUE.

$\text{♩} = 104.$

Bugle

Trumpet

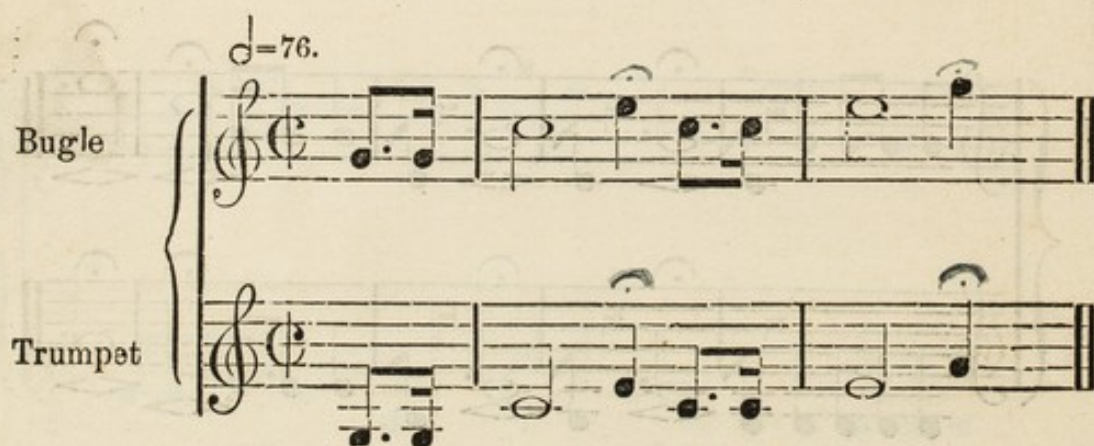


No. 44. STAND FAST.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

Bugle

Trumpet

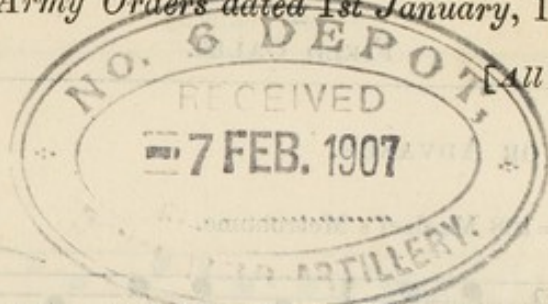




**OFFICIAL COPY.**

[*Issued with Army Orders dated 1st January, 1907.*]

1  
Gen. No.  
426



[*All rights reserved.*]

# TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS.

## PART 3A.

### FIELD CALLS FOR CAVALRY.

LONDON:  
PRINTED FOR HIS MAJESTY'S STATIONERY OFFICE,  
BY HARRISON AND SONS, ST. MARTIN'S LANE,  
PRINTERS IN ORDINARY TO HIS MAJESTY.

And to be purchased, either directly or through any Bookseller, from  
WYMAN AND SONS, LTD., FETTER LANE, E.C.; or  
OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH; or  
E. PONSONBY, 116, GRAFTON STREET, DUBLIN.

*Price One Penny.*

(Wt. 22,666 10,000 12 | 06—H & S 124.)



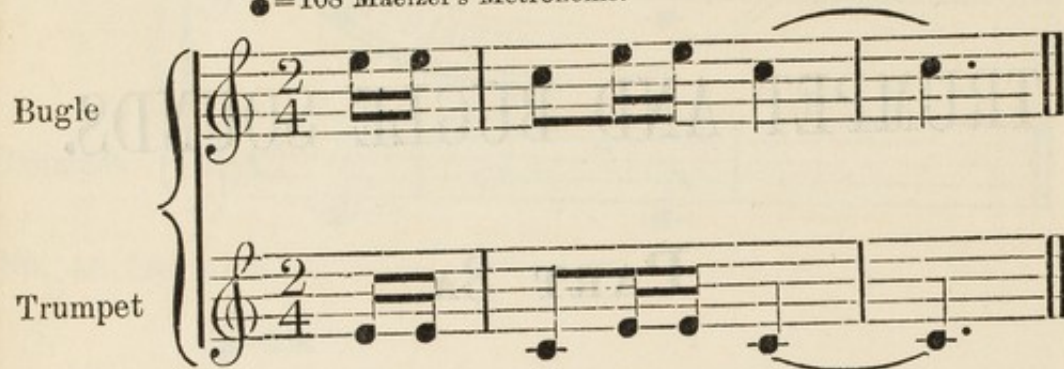
2  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 1. FORWARD, OR ADVANCE.

$\text{♩} = 108$  Maelzel's Metronome.

Bugle

Trumpet

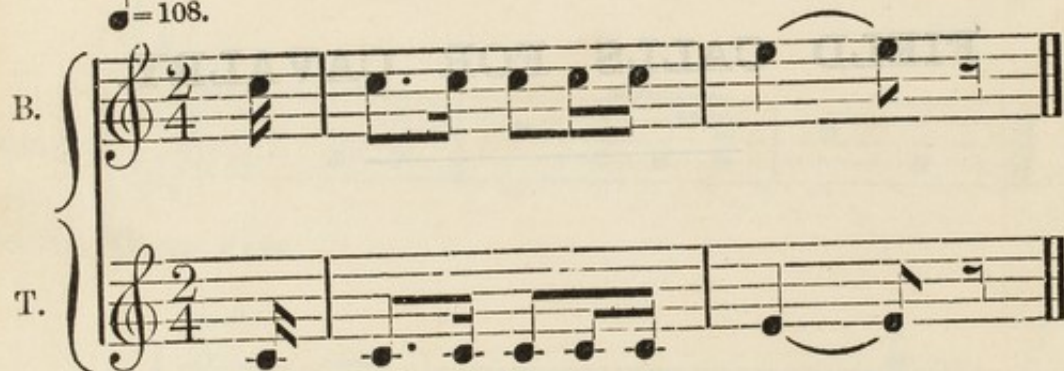


No. 2. WALK.

$\text{♩} = 108$ .

B.

T.

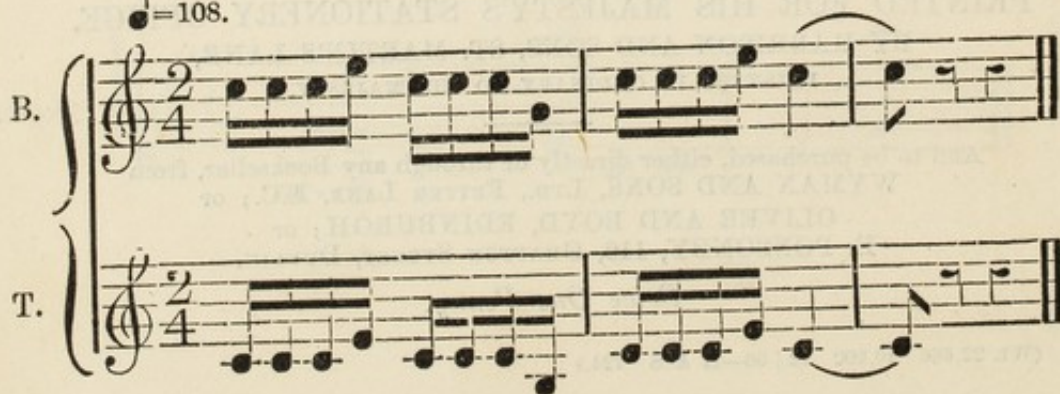


No. 3. TROT.

$\text{♩} = 108$ .

B.

T.





3  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 4. GALLOP.

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.

No. 5. CHARGE.

$\bullet = 160.$

B.

T.

No. 6. MARCH.

B.

T.



4  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 7. HALT.

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.

No. 8. ANNUL, OR AS YOU WERE.

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.

(This Call is used to cancel any previous Order.)

No. 9. TROOPS RIGHT WHEEL.

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.

*Cancelled  
amendment  
dated 1. 5.*



[Issued with Army Orders, dated 1st May, 1907.]

47  
231

[All Rights Reserved.]

# TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS.

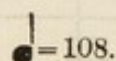
## PART 3A.

### FIELD CALLS FOR CAVALRY.

#### Amendments.

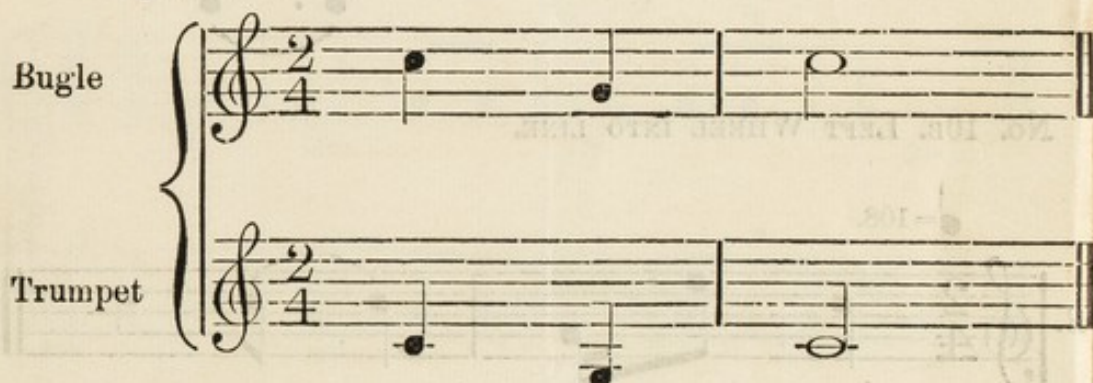
1. The following will be *substituted* for Calls Nos. 9 and 10 :—

#### No. 9. TROOPS RIGHT WHEEL.

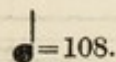
 = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet



#### No. 10. TROOPS LEFT WHEEL.

 = 108.

B.

T.





2. The following additional Calls to be used only for the Wheel of a Column of Squadrons into line to the right or left will be *inserted*:—

No. 10A. RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

B. 

T. 

No. 10B. LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

B. 

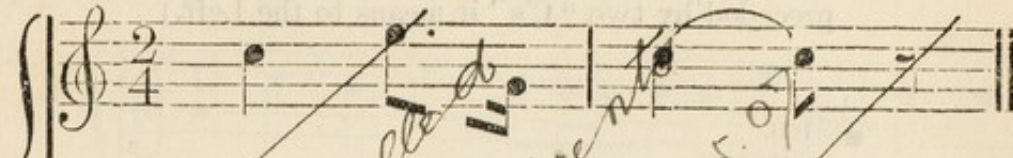
T. 




5  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 10. TROOPS LEFT WHEEL.

$\bullet = 108.$

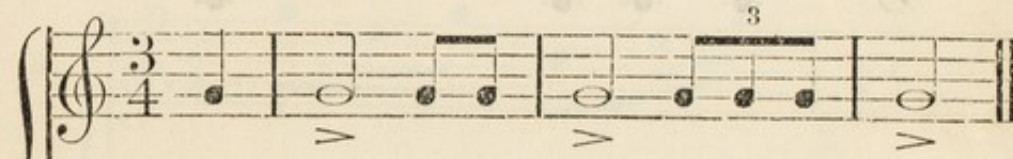
B. 

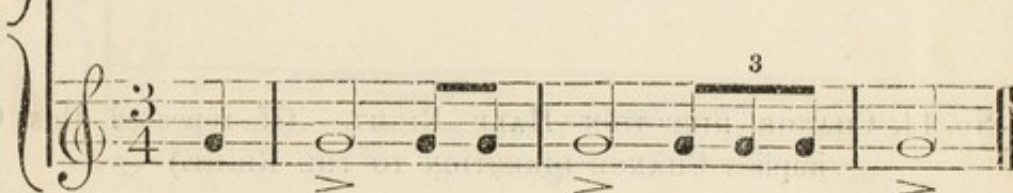
T. 

*Cancelled & amended. Dated 1. 5. 07.*

No. 11. FORM LINE.

$\circ = 76.$

B. 

T. 

No. 12. RETIRE, OR TROOPS RIGHT (OR LEFT) ABOUT WHEEL.

$\bullet = 108.$


B. 

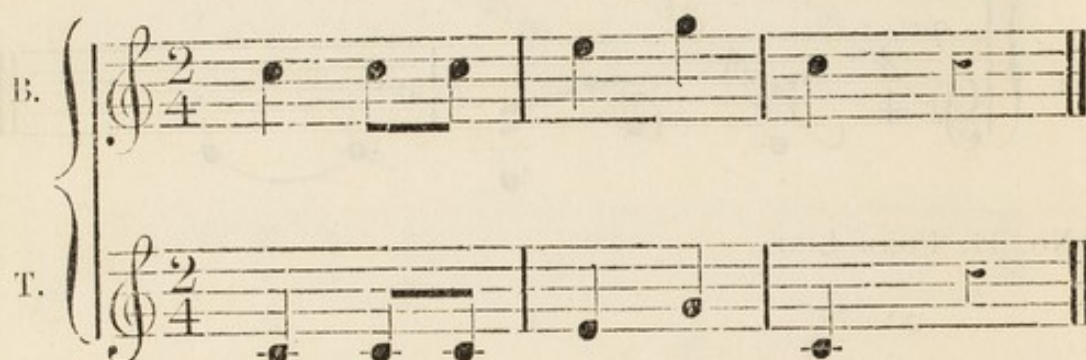
T. 




6  
FIELD CALLS.

NO. 13. SQUADRON COLUMNS. (If, in Column of Troops, this Call is sounded preceded by one "C," it implies to the Right; if preceded by two "C's" it means to the Left.)

 = 160.



NO. 14. CHANGE DIRECTION HALF RIGHT. (If repeated this Call implies CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT.)

 = 108.





7  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 15. CHANGE DIRECTION HALF LEFT. (If repeated this Call implies CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE LEFT.)

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.



No. 16. PURSUE.

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.




No. 17. RALLY.

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.





8  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 18. MASS. (If preceded by one "C" to the RIGHT; if preceded by two "C's" to the LEFT.)

$\text{♩} = 76.$

B. 

T. 

No. 19. ATTENTION.


$\text{♩} = 108.$

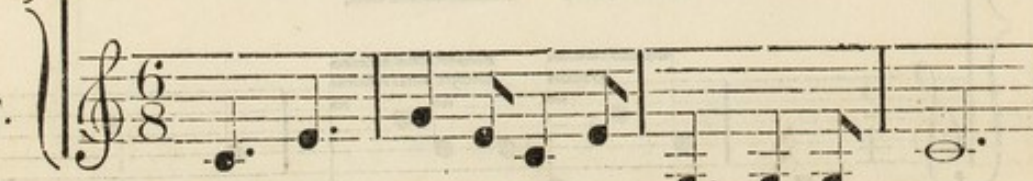
B. 

T. 

No. 20. MARCH, OR SIT AT EASE.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

B. 

T. 



9  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 21. STAND TO YOUR HORSES.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

B.

T.

No. 22. PREPARE TO MOUNT OR DISMOUNT.

$\text{♩} = 108.$

B.

T.

No. 23. MOUNT.

$\text{♩} = 76.$

B.

T.



10  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 24. DISMOUNT.

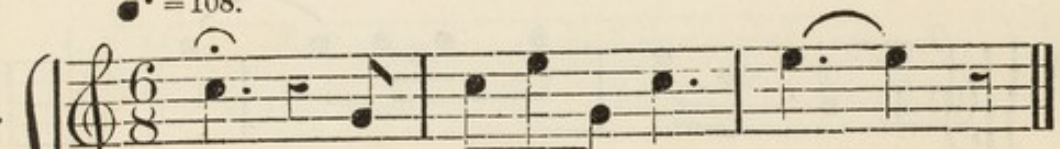
$\bullet = 108.$

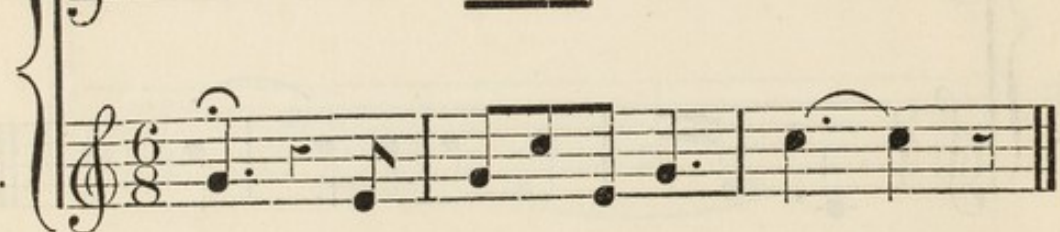
B. 

T. 

No. 25. FIRST BRIGADE.


$\bullet = 108.$

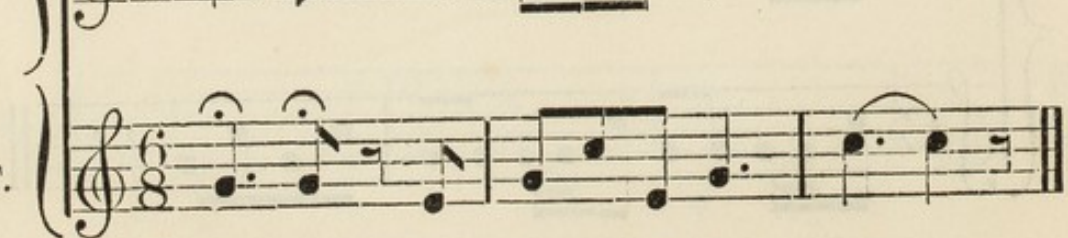
B. 

T. 

No. 26. SECOND BRIGADE.

$\bullet = 108.$

B. 

T. 



11  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 27. THIRD BRIGADE.

$\text{♩} \cdot = 108.$



No. 28. FOURTH BRIGADE.

$\text{♩} \cdot = 108.$





11  
THIRD GARD

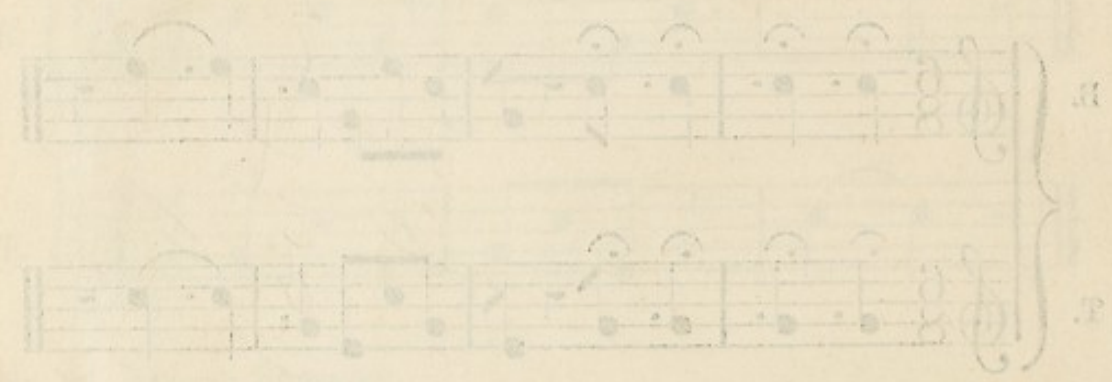
No. 27. THIRD BRIGADE.

$\frac{1}{2}$  - 108.



No. 28. FOURTH BRIGADE.

$\frac{1}{2}$  - 108.





[Issued with Army Orders dated 1st April, 1906.]

# TRUMPET AND BUGLE SOUNDS.

## PART 3A.

FIELD CALLS FOR CAVALRY, IMPERIAL YEOMANRY,  
ROYAL HORSE AND FIELD ARTILLERY, AND  
MOUNTED INFANTRY.

### No. 1. WALK.

$\bullet = 108.$

Bugle

Trumpet

The musical notation for No. 1. WALK. is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle and the bottom staff is for the Trumpet. Both staves are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter rest, followed by a quarter note G4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note B4, a quarter note C5, a quarter note B4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note G4, and a quarter rest. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note G4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note B4, a quarter note C5, a quarter note B4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note G4, and a quarter rest. Both parts end with a double bar line.

### No. 2. TROT.

$\bullet = 108.$

B.

T.


The musical notation for No. 2. TROT. is presented in two staves. The top staff is for the Bugle (labeled 'B.') and the bottom staff is for the Trumpet (labeled 'T.'). Both staves are in 2/4 time. The Bugle part begins with a quarter note G4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note B4, a quarter note C5, a quarter note B4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note G4, and a quarter rest. The Trumpet part begins with a quarter note G4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note B4, a quarter note C5, a quarter note B4, a quarter note A4, a quarter note G4, and a quarter rest. Both parts end with a double bar line.




2  
FIELD CALLS

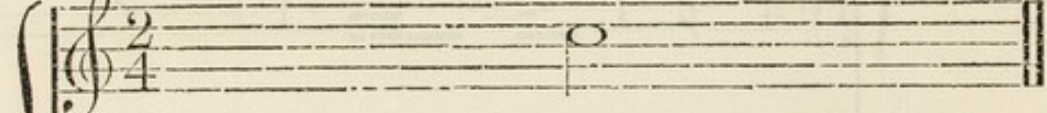
No. 3. GALLOP OR CHARGE.

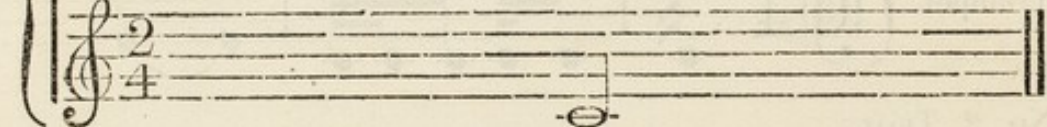
$\bullet = 160.$

B. 

T. 

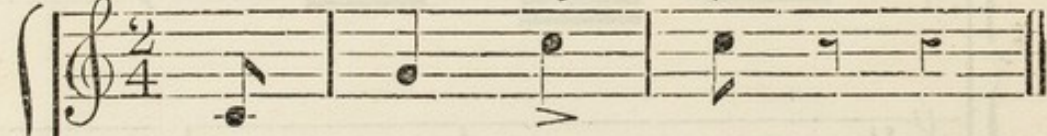
No. 4. MARCH.

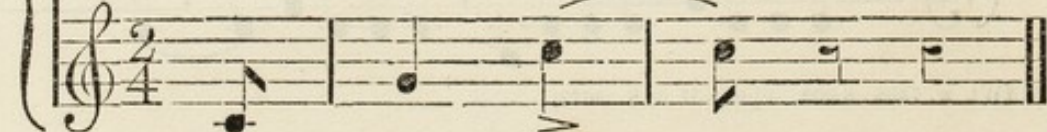
B. 

T. 

No. 5. HALT.

$\bullet = 108.$

B. 


T. 

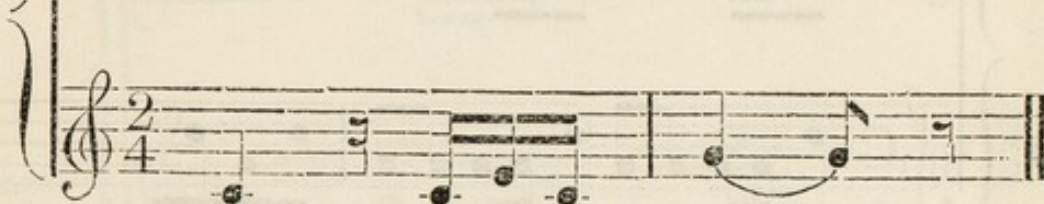


3  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 6. ANNUL, OR AS YOU WERE.

♩ = 108.

B. 

T. 

(This Call is used to cancel any previous Order.)

No. 7. HEAD OF COLUMN OR HEADS OF COLUMNS CHANGE DIRECTION  
HALF RIGHT.

♩ = 108.

B. 

T. 

No. 8. HEAD OF COLUMN OR HEADS OF COLUMNS CHANGE DIRECTION  
HALF LEFT.

♩ = 108.

B. 

T. 



4  
FIELD CALLS.

No. 9. MOUNT.

$\text{♩} = 76.$



No. 10. DISMOUNT.

$\text{♩} = 108.$



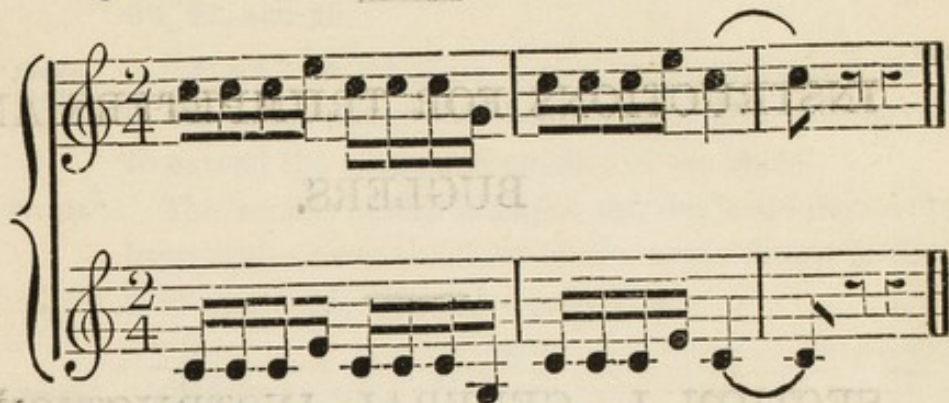


## No. 45. DOUBLE.

♩ = 108.

Bugle

Trumpet



It is of the first importance that Sergeant Trumpeters, Buglers or Drummers should be able to sound correctly the Calls on the Trumpet and Bugle, and understand as much of the principles of music as will enable them to instruct Trumpeters and Buglers in the system of calling laid down.

The position of a Trumpeter or Bugler at practice should be erect (as at "Attention"), shoulders square, head well up, the instrument held with the right hand, nearly horizontal, the mouthpiece firmly held to the centre of the lips; but strong pressure is to be avoided. A strong and good "embouchure" is thus obtained.

When sitting down for practice, slouching or stooping should not be allowed. The first practical effort of the beginner should be directed to the Diamond Diagram.

The Bugle Calls should, as a rule, be played in "quick time."

The forms of notes are shown in the table of "Names of the Signs of Duration," &c., and in the "Diamond Diagram," pages 90, 91, and 92.



## PART 4.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR TRUMPETERS AND  
BUGLERS.

## SECTION I.—GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS.

It is of the first importance that Serjeant Trumpeters, Buglers, or Drummers should be able to sound correctly the Calls on the Trumpet and Bugle, and understand so much of the principles of music as will enable them to instruct Trumpeters and Buglers in the system of tuition laid down.

The position of a Trumpeter or Bugler at practice should be erect (as at "Attention"), shoulders square, head well up, the instrument held with the right hand, nearly horizontal, the mouthpiece firmly held to the centre of the lips; but strong pressure is to be avoided. A strong and good "Embouchure" is thus obtained.

When sitting down for practice, lounging or stooping should not be allowed. The first practical effort of the beginner should be directed to the Diamond Diagram.

The Bugle Calls should, as a rule, be played in "quick time."

The forms of notes are shown in the table of "Names of the Signs of Duration," &c., and in the "Diamond Diagrams," pages 90, 91, and 92



"BARS."  
"TIME."

The terms "Bars" and "Time" (or "Measure") are explained in the "Diamond Diagram," and in the "Table of Examples of the different Measures," pp. 93, 94, and 95

"LEDGER  
LINES."

"Short" or "Ledger Lines" are sometimes added to the notes above and below the stave, and serve to extend the range and number of the notes.

"SOUNDS."

The sounds of the Trumpet and Bugle are obtained from various combinations of the notes shown in the following Scales (see also page 92):—



The notes are all "open," that is, obtained without the aid of "piston," "slides," or "keys." Great care is therefore required that a beginner be perfect in the exercises on the first note before he is allowed to practise those on other notes.

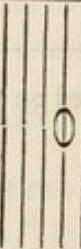





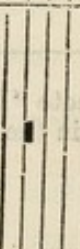

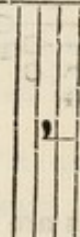
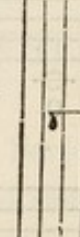
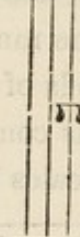
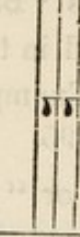
The Bugle is to be used at all times in the key of B flat.

\* This note "B $\flat$ " can be played on the Trumpet, but is never used in the Trumpet Calls.



## No. 1 DIAGRAM.

Names of the Signs of Duration, and their equivalent Rests, &amp;c.

Semibreve,  one Common Measure or Bar.	Minim,  half as long as a Semibreve.	Crotchet,  half as long as a Minim.	Quaver,  half as long as a Crotchet.	Semiquaver,  half as long as a Quaver.	Demisemiquaver,  half as long as a Semiquaver.
 One Common Measure or Bar.	 Half a Common Measure.	 Fourth of a Common Measure.	 Eighth of a Common Measure.	 Sixteenth of a Common Measure.	 Thirty-second of a Common Measure.



## No. 2 DIAGRAM.

A dot placed after a Note, or its equivalent Rest, increases the duration of that Note or Rest one half.  
A second dot further increases its duration one half of the value of the first dot.

## EXAMPLE.

<p>A dotted Minim</p>	<p>A Minim and a Crotchet.</p>	<p>A dotted Crotchet</p>	<p>A Crotchet and a Quaver.</p>
Must be considered as long as		Must be considered as long as	
Three-fourths of a Common Measure.		Three-eighths of a Common Measure.	
<p>A double-dotted Minim</p>	<p>A Minim, a Crotchet, and a Quaver.</p>	<p>A double-dotted Crotchet</p>	<p>A Crotchet, a Quaver, and a Semiquaver.</p>
Must be considered as long as		Must be considered as long as	
Seven-eighths of a Common Measure.		Seven-sixteenths of a Common Measure.	
<p>A dotted Quaver</p>	<p>A Quaver and a Semiquaver.</p>	<p>A double-dotted Quaver</p>	<p>A Quaver, a Semiquaver, and a Demisemiquaver.</p>
Must be considered as long as		Must be considered as long as	
Three-sixteenths of a Common Measure.		Seven-thirty-seconds of a Common Measure.	

The Diamond Diagram (on page 92) gives the Signs of Duration and their relative Value compared to each other, and must be played in very slow but strict Time, on every note of the scale of the Bugle, and as high as "G" on the Trumpet, beginning each scale from the bottom, and taking the note of the same name as that just used in playing the One-Note Exercise.



## No. 3 DIAGRAM.

One

Semibreve is equal to

Two Minims or

Four Crotchets or

Eight Quavers or

Sixteen Semiquavers or

Thirty-two Demisemiquavers or

Sixteen Semiquavers or

Eight Quavers or

Four Crotchets or

Two Minims or

One Semibreve.

BUGLE SCALE (Up).

BUGLE SCALE (Down).

TRUMPET SCALE (Up).

TRUMPET SCALE (Down).

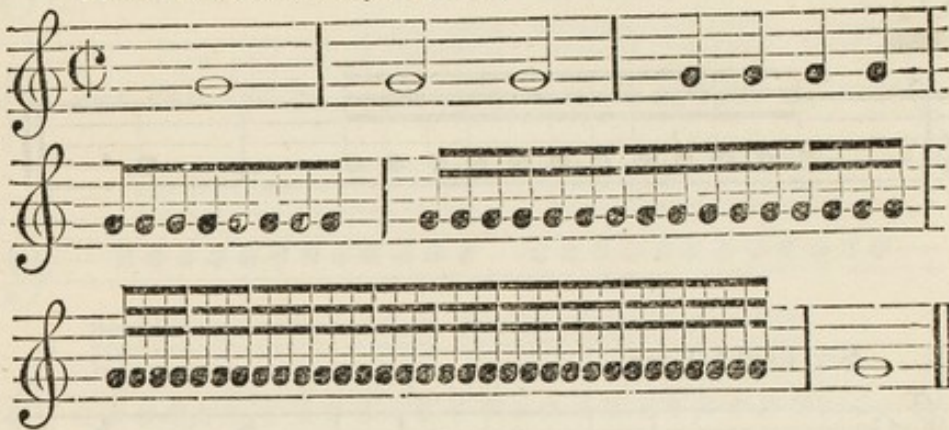
\* This note B $\flat$  can be played on the Trumpet, but it is never used in the Trumpet Calls.



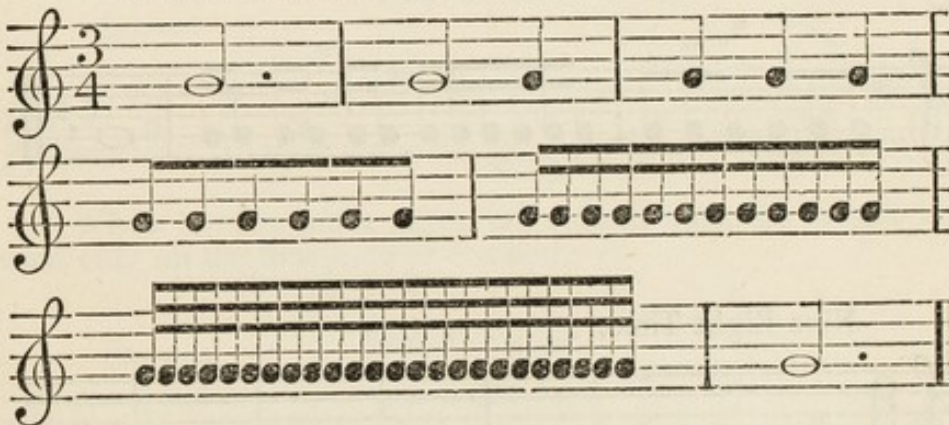
## No. 4 DIAGRAM.

## Examples of the different Measures.

## Common Measure (or Time).\*



## Three Four Time.

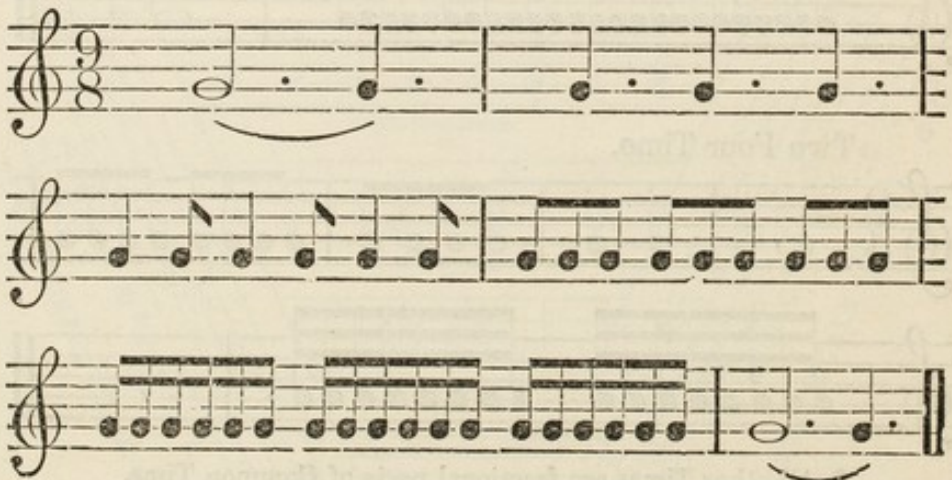


## Two Four Time.



\* All other Times are fractional parts of Common Time.



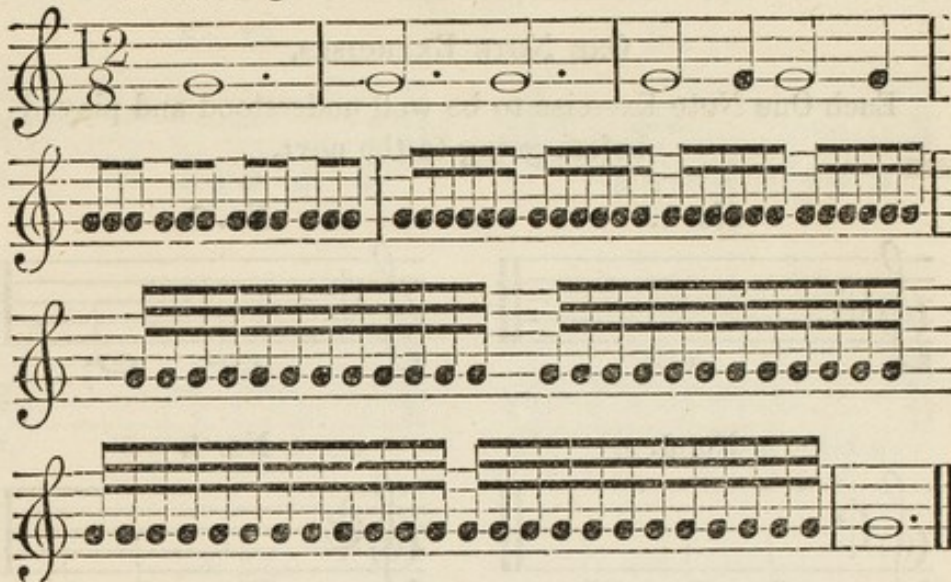
**Part 4.] INSTRUCTIONS FOR TRUMPETERS AND BUGLERS. [Sec L****Three Eight Time.****Six Eight Time.****Nine Eight Time.**



## Part 4.] INSTRUCTIONS FOR TRUMPETERS AND BUGLERS.

[Sec. I.]

## Twelve Eight Time.



## FOR BUGLE.

*Legato.*

When two or more notes are slurred thus, the tongue is used only on the first note of the slur.

## FOR TRUMPET.

*Staccato.*

When a dot is placed beneath or above a note, it indicates that the note or notes so marked are to be tongued in a smart crisp manner.

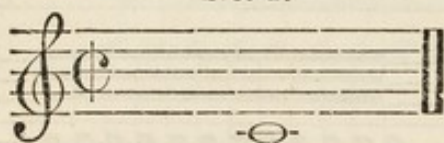


## SECTION II.—EXERCISES FOR THE BUGLE.

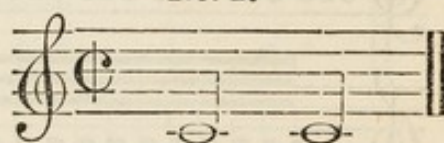
## ONE NOTE EXERCISES.

Each One Note Exercise to be well understood and played before going to the next.

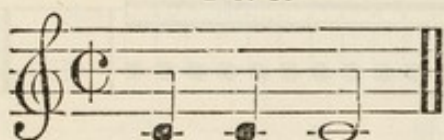
No. 1.



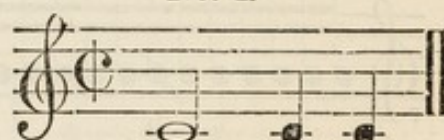
No. 2.



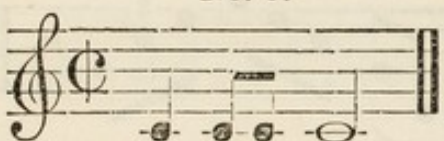
No. 3.



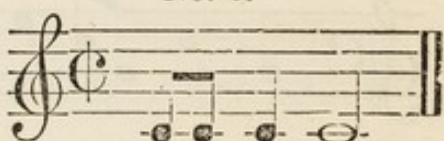
No. 4.



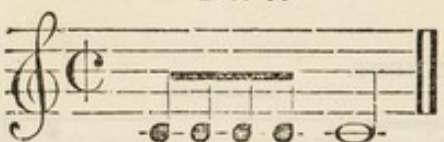
No. 5.



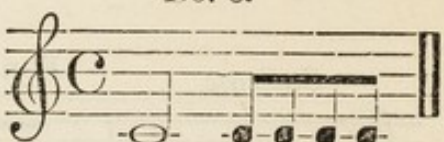
No. 6.



No. 7.



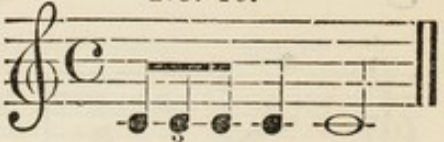
No. 8.



No. 9.



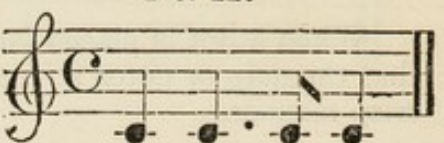
No. 10.



No. 11.



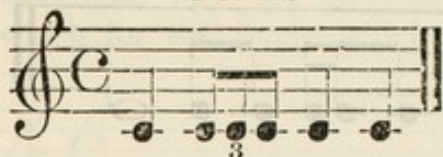
No. 12.



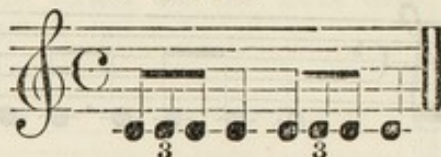


## Part 4.] INSTRUCTIONS FOR TRUMPETERS AND BUGLERS. [Sec. II.]

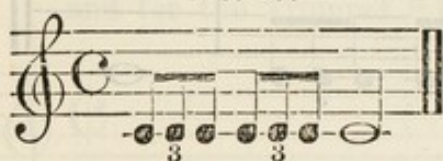
No. 13.



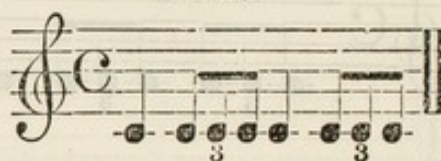
No. 14.



No. 15.



No. 16.



No. 17.



No. 18.



No. 19.



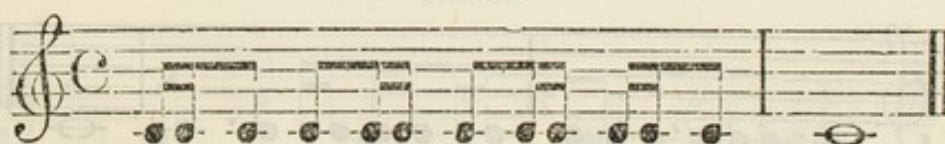
No. 20.



No. 21.



No. 22.



G



## No. 23.



## No. 24.



## No. 25.



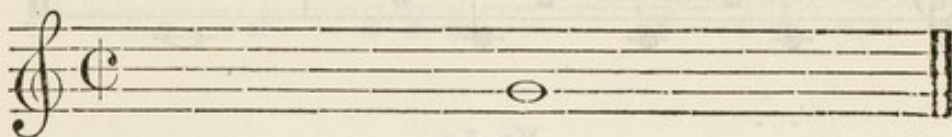
## No. 26.



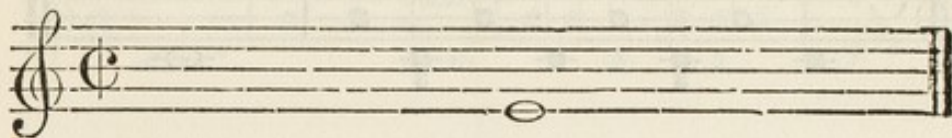


Part 4.] INSTRUCTIONS FOR TRUMPETERS AND BUGLERS. [Sec. II.]

Having carefully practised the whole of the One Note Exercises, now go through them again on the next note, which for the Bugle will be "G."



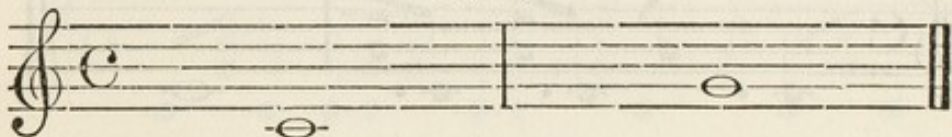
and for the Trumpet "E."



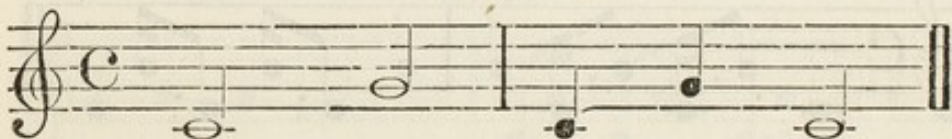
TWO NOTE EXERCISES.

To be practised after having gone over the One Note Exercise on the first two notes of the Bugle.

No. 1.



No. 2.



No. 3.



G 2



## No. 4.



## No. 5.



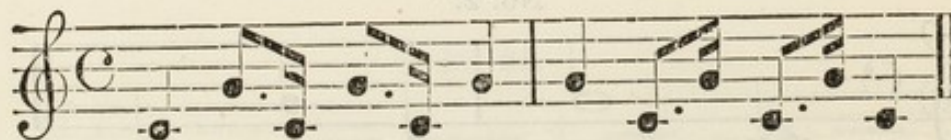
## No. 6.



## No. 7.



## No. 8.



## No. 9.





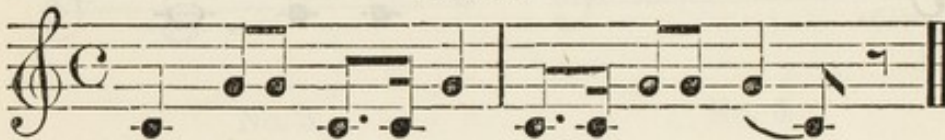
## No. 10.



## No. 11.



## No. 12.



## No. 13.



## No. 14.





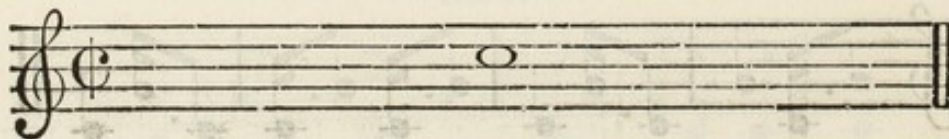
## No. 15.



## No. 16.



Having carefully practised the above Exercise, again turn back to the One Note Exercise and practise the note "C."





To be practised after having gone through the One Note Exercise on the first three notes of the Bugle.

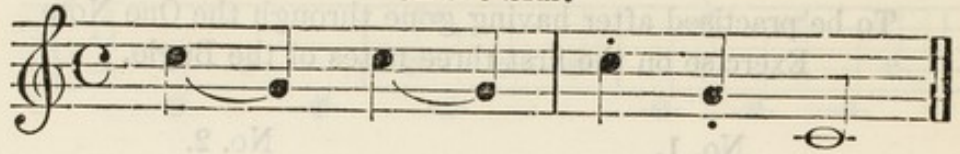
### On the Slur.





## No. 10.

On the Slur.



## No. 11.



## No. 12.



## No. 13.



## No. 14.



## No. 15.





## No. 16.



## No. 17.



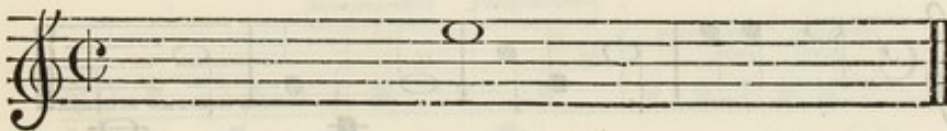
## No. 18.



## No. 19.



After having well practised the above Exercise, again turn back to the One Note Exercise, and practise it on the note "E."

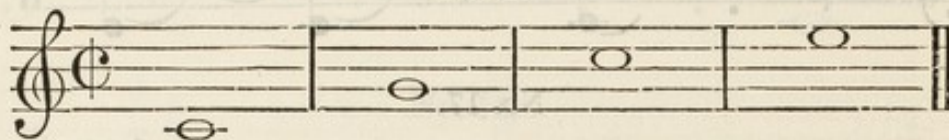




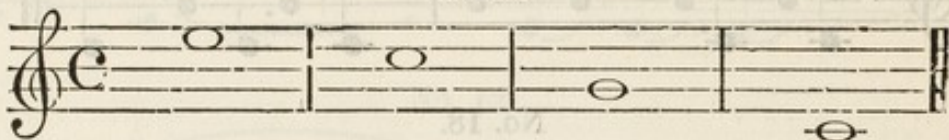
## FOUR NOTE EXERCISES.

To be practised after having gone through the One Note Exercise on the first four notes of the Bugle.

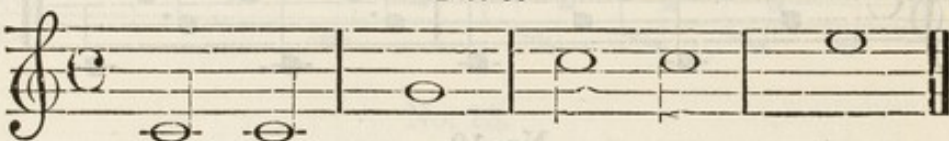
## No. 1.



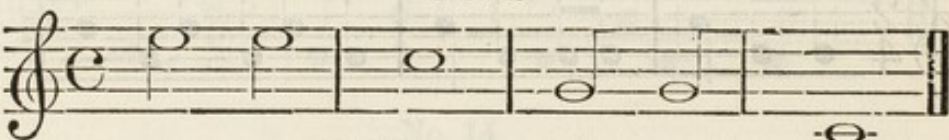
## No. 2.



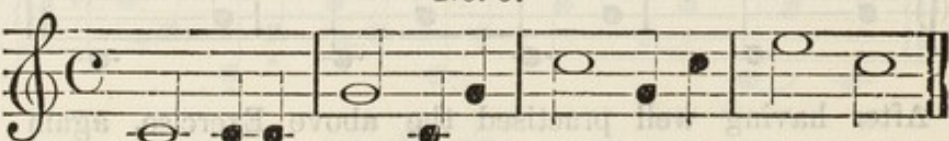
## No. 3.



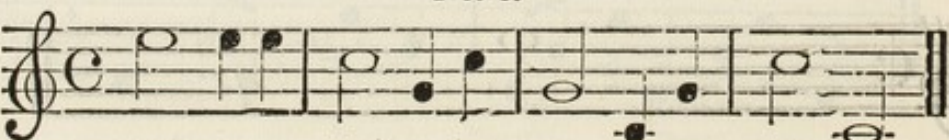
## No. 4.



## No. 5.



## No. 6.





## No. 7.



## No. 8.



## No. 9.



## No. 10.



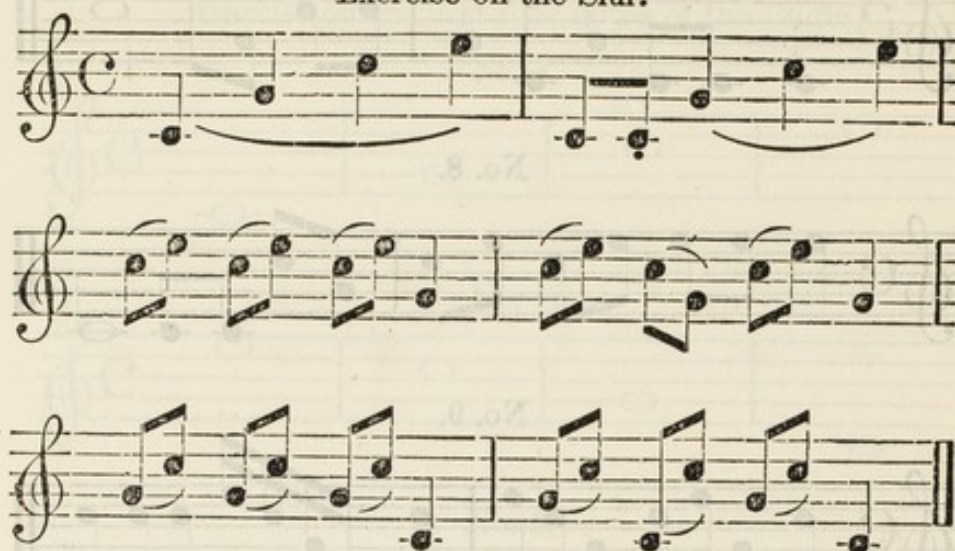
## No. 11.



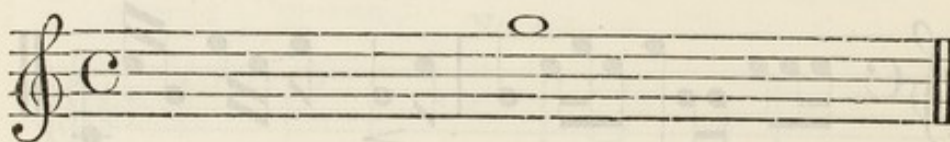


## No. 12.

Exercise on the Slur.



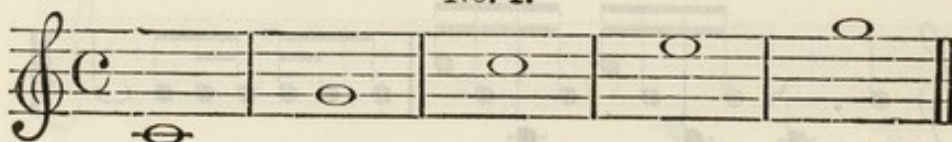
Having mastered the above Exercises, turn once more to the One Note Exercise, and again practise on the top note "G."



## FIVE NOTE EXERCISES.

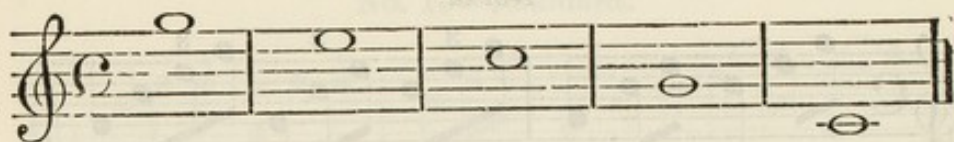
To be practised after having quite gone through the One Note Exercise on five notes of the Bugle.

## No. 1.

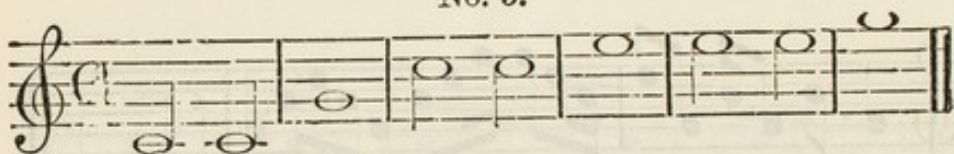




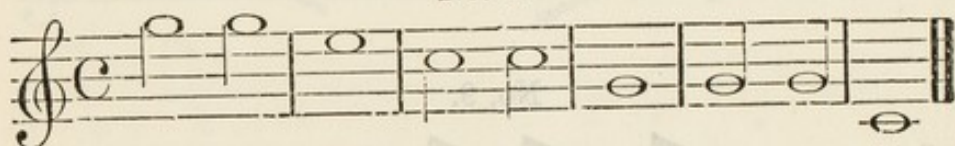
## No. 2.



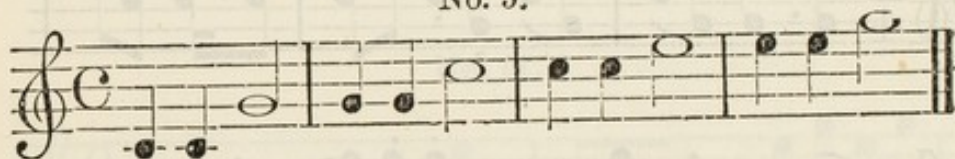
## No. 3.



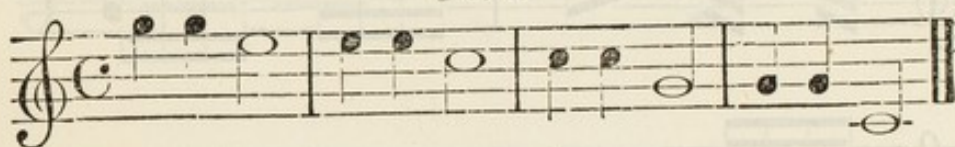
## No. 4.



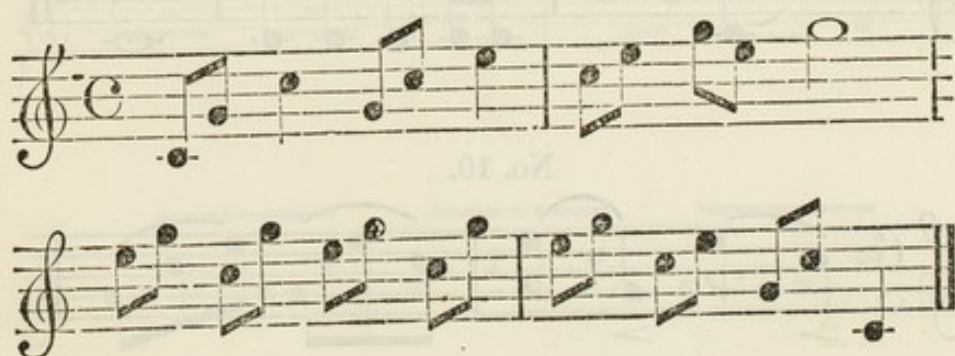
## No. 5.



## No. 6.



## No. 7





## No. 8.



## No. 9.



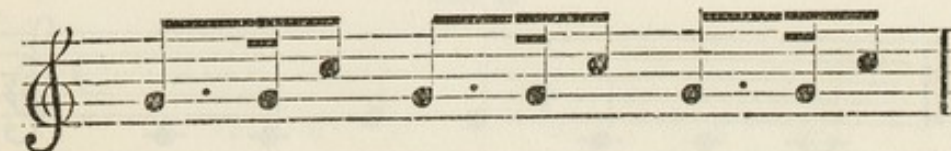
## No. 10.





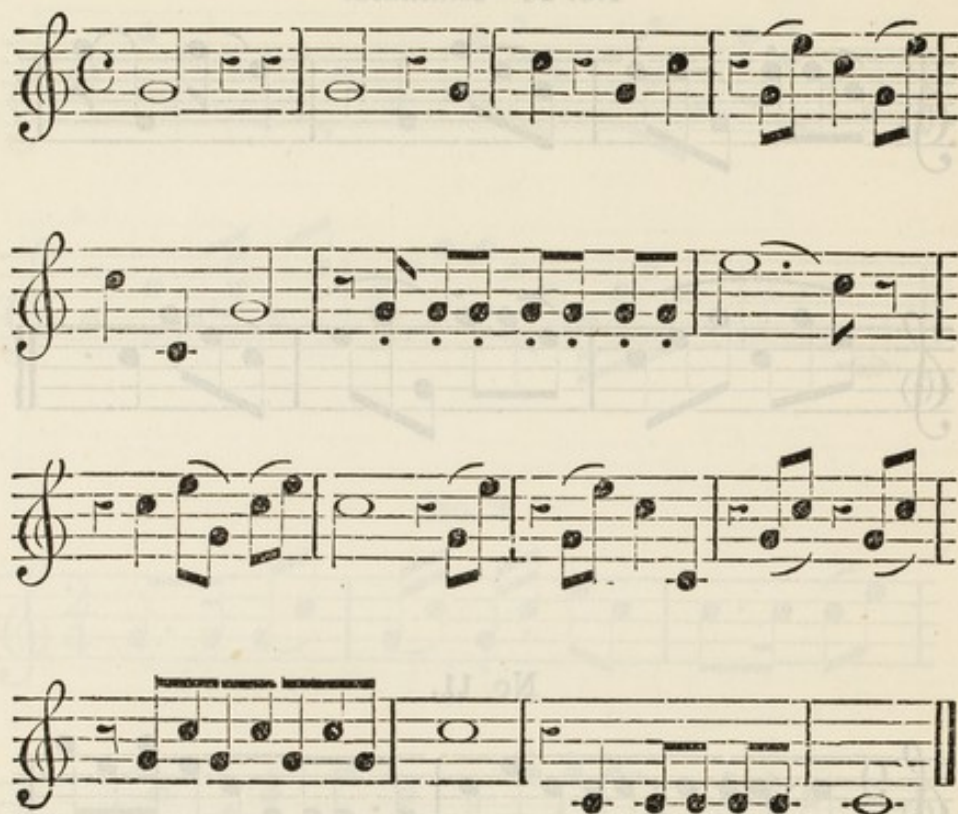
No. 10—*continued.*

## No. 11.





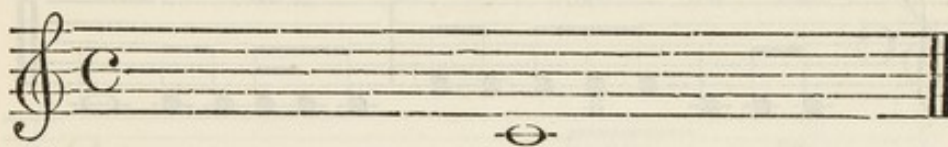
## No. 12.



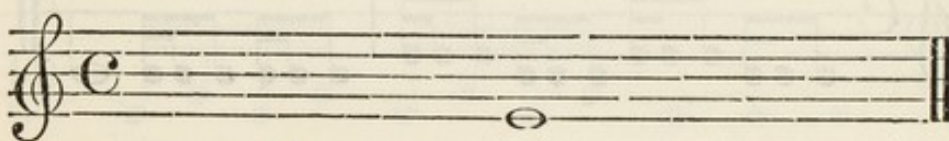


## SECTION III.—EXERCISES FOR THE TRUMPET.

Begin the Trumpet Exercises by practising the One Note Exercise (for Bugle) on the note "C,"



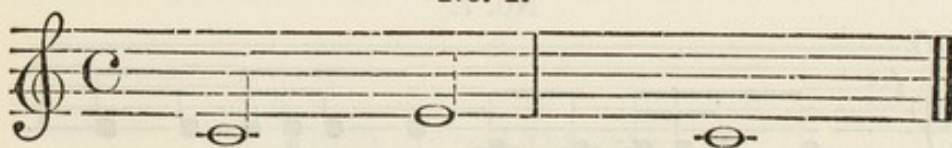
and when perfect, then practise the One Note Exercise on the note "E,"



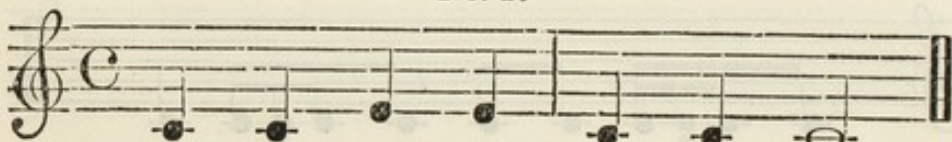
and when this is well done, then practise the Two Note Exercises.

## TWO NOTE EXERCISES.

## No. 1.



## No. 2.





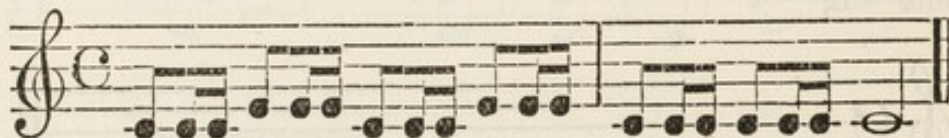
## No. 3.



## No. 4.



## No. 5.



## No. 6.



## No. 7.





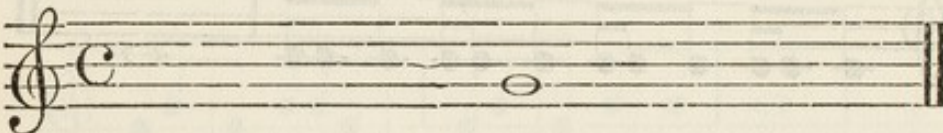
## No. 8.



## No. 9.



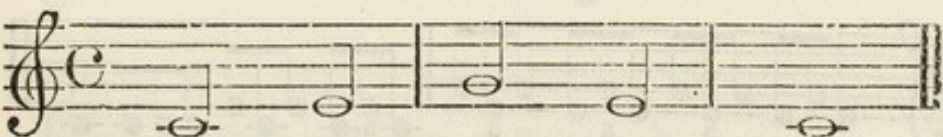
Now play over the One Note Exercise again on the note "G,"



and when quite perfect, then practise the Three Note Exercises.

## THREE NOTE EXERCISES.

## No. 1.





## No. 2.



## No. 3.



## No. 4.



## No. 5.





## No. 6.



## No. 7.



## No. 8.

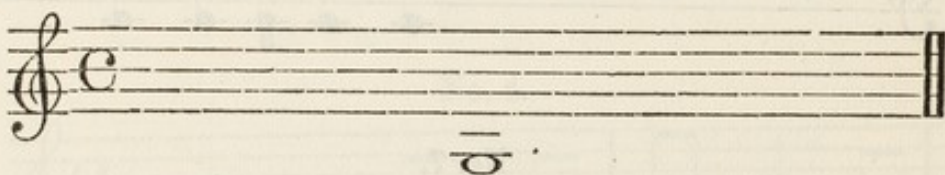




## No. 9.



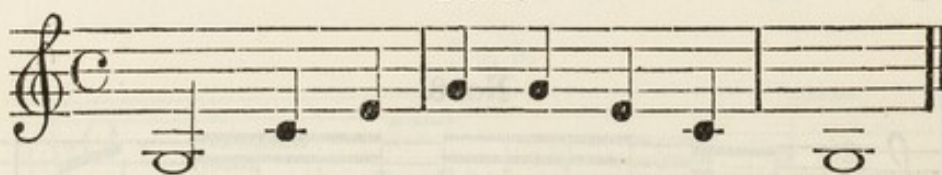
Now practise the One Note Exercise again on the low "G,"



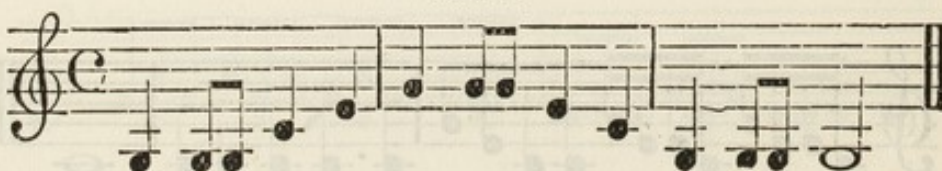
and when quite perfect go on to the Four Note Exercises

## FOUR NOTE EXERCISES.

## No. 1.

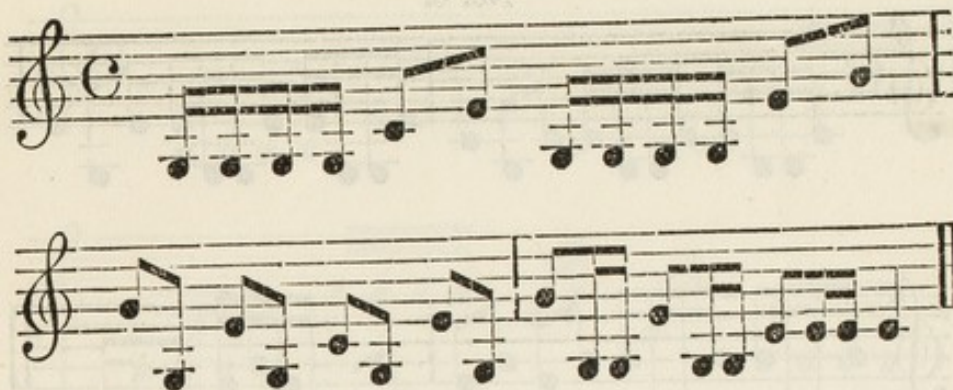


## No. 2.





## No. 3.



## No. 4.



## No. 5.

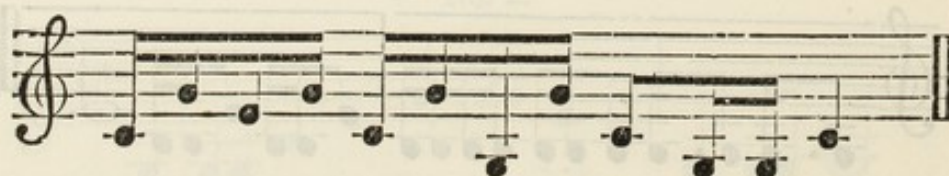




## No. 6.



## No. 7.

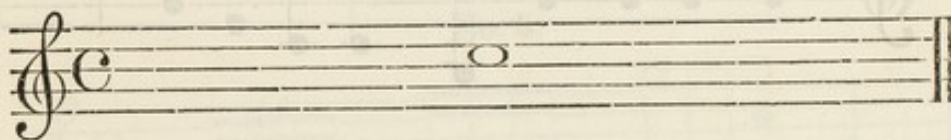




## No. 8.



Now practise the One Note Exercise again on the note "C,"



and when quite perfect go on to the Five Note Exercises.

## FIVE NOTE EXERCISES.

## No. 1.



## No. 2.





## No. 3.





Part 4.] INSTRUCTIONS FOR TRUMPETERS AND BUGLERS. [Sec. III.

No. 4.



No. 5.





## No. 6.

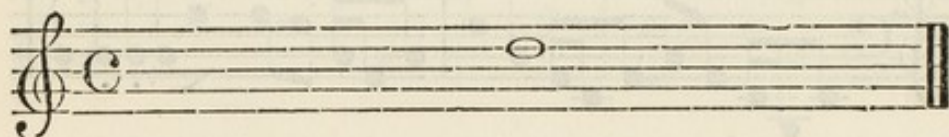


## No. 7.





Now practise the One Note Exercise on the note "D,"



and when quite perfect go on to the Six Note Exercises.

### SIX NOTE EXERCISES.

#### No. 1.

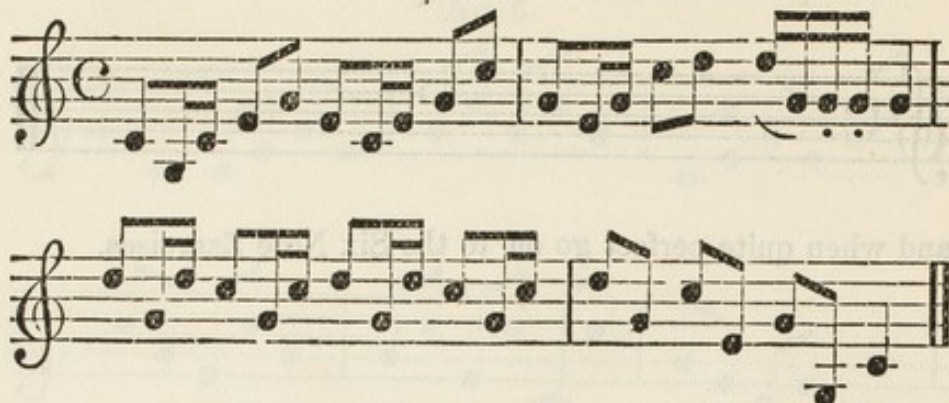


#### No. 2.





## No. 3



## No. 4.

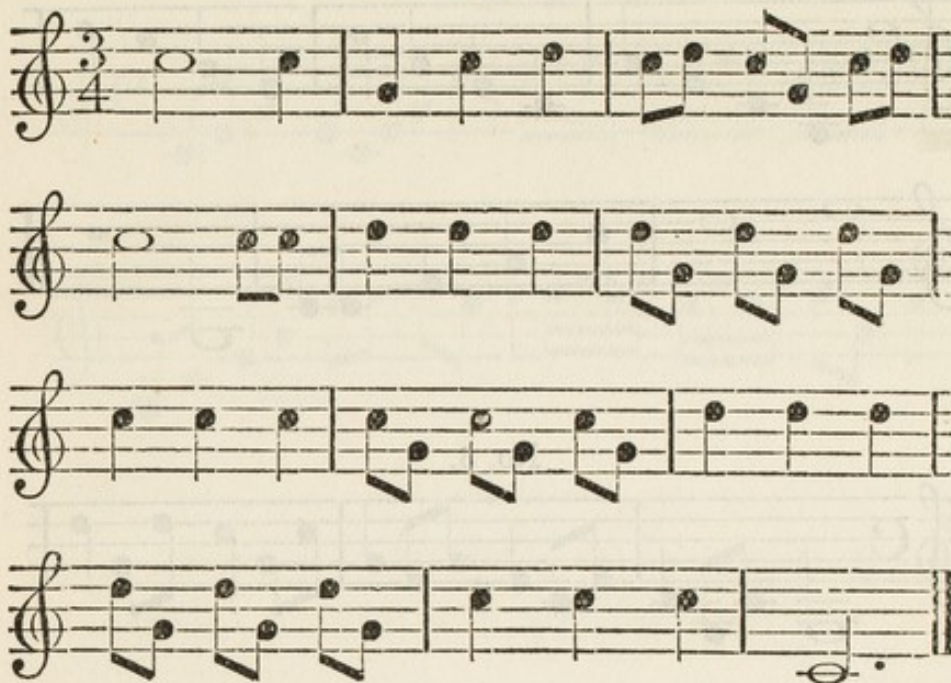


## No. 5.

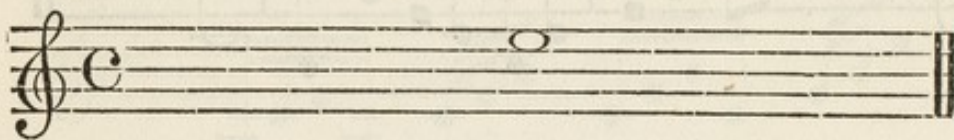




## No. 6.



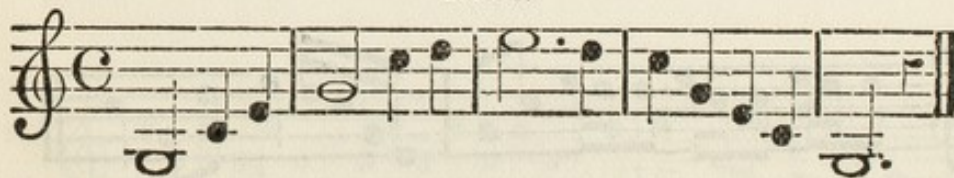
Now practise the One Note Exercise again on the note "E,"



and when quite perfect go on to the Seven Note Exercises.

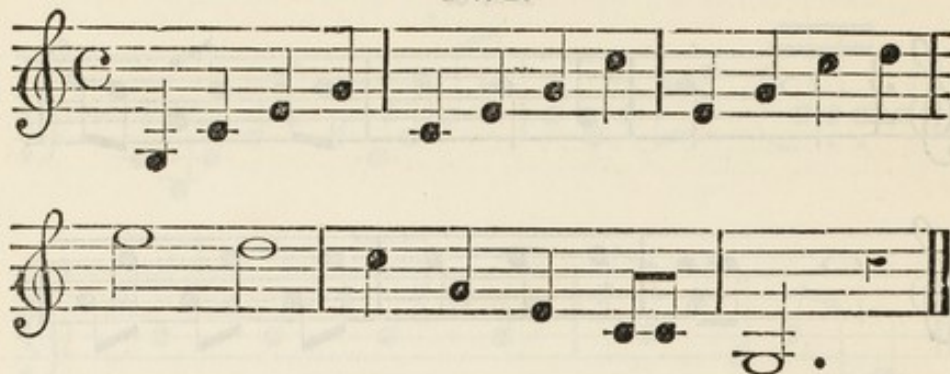
## SEVEN NOTE EXERCISES.

## No. 1.

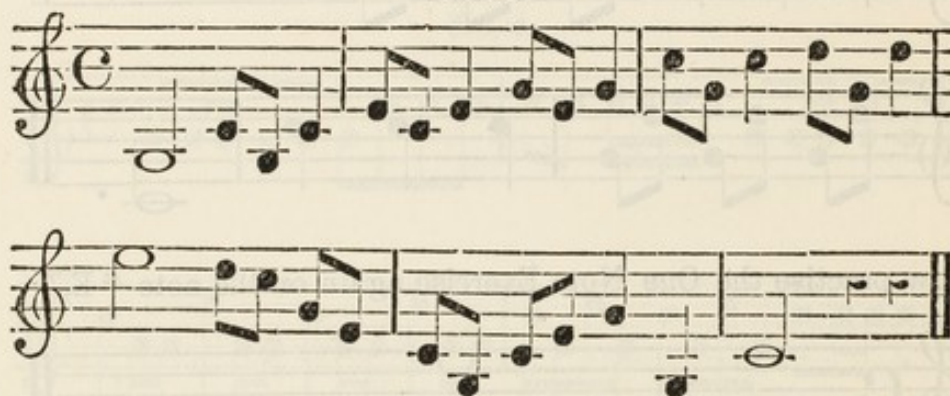




## No. 2.



## No. 3.



## No. 4.





## No. 5.

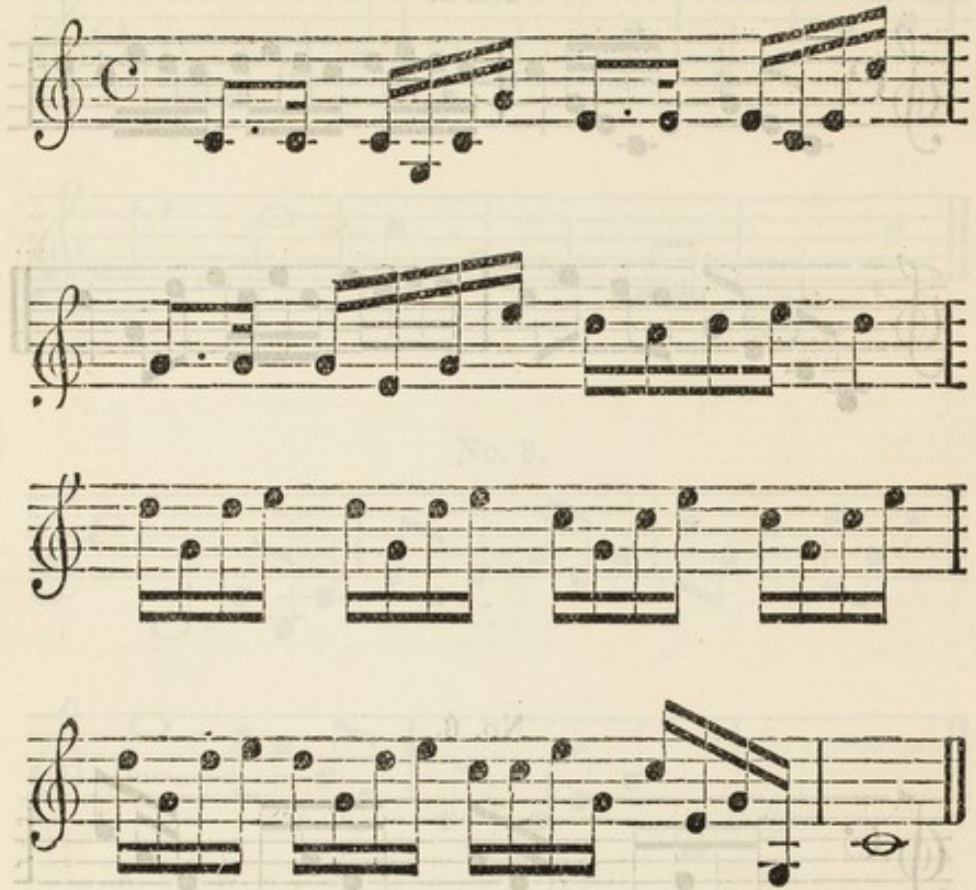


## No. 6.





## No. 7.



LONDON :

Printed for His Majesty's Stationery Office by HARRISON & SONS, St. Martin's Lane,  
Printers in Ordinary to His Majesty.

(Wt. 19,446 12,000 12 | 02—H & S 6263) P. 00

1540



**MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.**

- 9·2-inch, B.L. 1902. Price 2s. 6d.  
 9-inch, R.M.L., and Mountings. 1899. Price 1s. 3d.  
 8-inch, R.M.L., Howitzer of 70 cwt. For Movable Armament or Armament of Works. 1901. Price 2s.  
 7-inch, R.M.L., of 6½ and 7 tons, on Sliding and Moncrieff Carriage, Land Service. Price 1s. 6d.  
 6·6-inch, R.M.L., Howitzer, on Bed and Ground Platform, or on Siege Travelling Carriage. 1899. Price 1s. 6d.  
 6-inch, B.L., Howitzer of 30 cwt. (Mark I.) 1902. Price 1s.  
 6-inch, B.L., Howitzer, 25 cwt. (Mark I.) 1899. Price 3s.  
 6-inch, Q.F. (Land Service.) 1901. Price 2s.  
 5·4-inch, B.L., Howitzer. (Mark I.) 1902. Price 1s. 6d.  
 5-inch, B.L., Howitzer. (Mark I.) 1901. Price 2s.  
 5-inch, B.L. (Marks II.—V.) (Land Service.) 1900. Price 1s. 3d.  
 4·7-inch Q.F., Land Service. 1901. Price 2s.  
 4·7-inch (B), Mark IV., on Travelling Carriage. L.S. Volunteer Batteries. 1902. Price 1s.  
 4-inch, B.L. (Marks V. and VI.) (Land Service.) 1899. Price 1s. 6d.  
 0·303-inch Maxim Machine Gun (Magazine Rifle Chamber). Mounted on Carriages, Field Machine Gun, Cavalry and Infantry, &c. 1901. Price 1s.  
**WAR MATÉRIEL.** Care and Preservation of. Regns. for. And for Magazines. 1902. Price 1s.  
**MEKOMETER.** Handbook. 1899. (Revised to Aug., 1901.) Price 6d.  
**MILITARY ACADEMY, ROYAL.** Admission to. Regns. 1901. Price 1d.  
**MILITARY COLLEGE, ROYAL.** Ditto.  
**MILITARY COLLEGE, ROYAL.** Syllabus of Course of Instruction at. 1898. Price 3d.  
**POSITION FINDING INSTRUMENTS.** Handbook. 1901. Price 3d.  
**RANGE FINDER.** Depression. For Elevated Batteries. Handbook. Land Service. 1898. Price 3d.  
**RANGE-FINDING.** Field. Manual. For Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers of the Horse and Field Royal Artillery. 1891. Price 1s.  
**RIFLE RANGES.** Miniature and Safety. Instructions. 1902. Price 3d.  
**BASHFORTH CHRONOGRAPH.** Report on Experiments with. (1870.) Price 1s. Final do. (1878-80.) Price 2s. 3d.  
**SIGNALLING INSTRUCTIONS.** 1898. With Amendments to December, 1901. Price 9d.  
**SMALL ARMS AND AMMUNITION. MILITARY.** Text Book. Price 2s. 6d. (Out of print.)  
**SMALL WARS.** Their Principles and Practice. By Major CALLWELL, R.A. New Edition. Price 5s.  
**TELEGRAPHY. ARMY.** Field Telegraphs. Manual of Instruction in. Price 3s.  
**TELEPHONE. SMALL ARMS. AND COAST DEFENCE TELEPHONE SYSTEM.** Handbook. 1899. Price 9d.  
**MILITARY EXAMINATION PAPERS, viz. :—**  
 Military Entrance. July, 1902. Price 1s.  
 Staff College. Admission. August, 1901. Price 1s.  
 Militia. Officers. Military Competitive. March, 1902. Price 1s.  
 Foreign Languages. Modern. Officers of the Army. Oct., 1901. Price 1s.  
 Officers of Regular Forces, Militia, Yeomanry, and Volunteers. May, 1902. Price 1s.  
 Yeomanry. Imperial. Training. (Prov.) 1902. Price 6d.  
*Papers of earlier dates can still be had.*  
**ABYSSINIA. EXPEDITION TO.** Record of. Compiled by Order of the Secretary of State for War, by Lieut.-Col. TREVENEN J. HOLLAND, C.B., Bombay Staff Corps, and Captain HENRY HOBBS, 3rd Dragoon Guards. In two Vols. and case of Maps. Cloth. £4 4s. Half morocco, £5 5s.



*WORKS prepared in the Intelligence Division of the  
War Office.*

- AFRICA. BRITISH EAST. PROTECTORATE.** Précis of Information concerning. 1900. Price 3s.
- BALKAN STATES.** Armies of. Handbook. 1900. Price 6d.
- BELGIAN ARMY.** Handbook. By Major W. N. BARNARDISTON. Price 9d.
- CAVALRY.** Instructions for the Training, Employment, and Leading of. By Major-General CARL VON SCHMIDT. Compiled by Captain VON VOLLARD-BECKELBERG, 2nd Silesian Dragoons. Translated by Captain C. W. BOWDLER BELL, 8th Hussars. 1881. Price 3s. 6d.
- CHINO-JAPANESE WAR, 1894-95.** An Epitome of the. By Captain N. W. H. DU BOULAY, R.A. Price 1s. 3d.
- COLONIES AND PROTECTORATES. BRITISH.** Military Forces of. 1902. 2s.
- DUTCH ARMY (Home and Colonial).** Handbook. 1896. Price 9d.
- FRANCO-GERMAN WAR, 1870-71.** Authorised Translation from the German Official Account, by Major F. C. H. CLARKE, C.M.G., R.A.
- FIRST PART.—*History of the War to the Downfall of the Empire.*
- Vol. I.—Sects. 1 to 5. Outbreak of Hostilities to Battle of Gravelotte. Price 26s. (Out of print.)
- Vol. II.—Sects. 6 to 9. Battle of Gravelotte to Downfall of Empire. Price 22s. (Out of print.)
- SECOND PART.—*History of the War against the Republic.*
- Vol. I.—Sects. 10 to 13. Investment of Paris to re-occupation of Orleans by the Germans. Price 26s.
- Vol. II.—Sects. 14 to 18. Events in Northern France from end of November. In North-west from beginning of December. Siege of Paris from commencement of December to the Armistice. Operations in South-east from Middle of November to Middle of January. 1893. Price 26s.
- Vol. III.—Sects. 19 and 20. Events in South-east France from Middle of January to termination of Hostilities. Rearward Communications. The Armistice. Homeward March and Occupation. Retrospect. 1894. Price 31s. 6d.
- Analytical Index. By Colonel LONSDALE HALE. 1890. Price 1s. 6d.
- Section *Also separately in paper covers.*
- 1.—Events in July. Price 3s.
  - 2.—Events to Eve of Battles of Worth and Spicheren. Price 3s.
  - 3.—Battles of Worth and Spicheren. 1882. Price 5s. (Out of print.)
  - 4.—Advance of Third Army to the Moselle, &c. Second Edition. Revised and corrected. Price 4s. (Out of print.)
  - 5.—Operations near Metz on 15th, 16th, and 17th August. Battle of Vionville-Mars-la-Tour. Second Edition. Price 6s. 6d.
  - 6.—The Battle of Gravelotte—St. Privat. Price 5s. (Out of print.)
  - 7.—Advance of Third Army and of Army of the Meuse against Army of Chalons. Price 6s.
  - 8.—Battle of Sedan. Price 3s. (Out of print.)
  - 9.—Proceedings on German Coast and before Fortresses in Alsace and Lorraine. General Review of War up to September. Price 4s. 6d.
  - 10.—Investment of Paris. Capture of Toul and Strassburg. Price 6s.
  - 11.—Events before Paris and at other Points of Theatre of War in Western France until end of October. Price 5s. 8d.
  - 12.—Local Engagements with French Army of the Rhine. Price 4s. 6d.
  - 13.—Occurrences on Theatre of War in Central France up to re-occupation of Orleans by the Germans. Price 6s.



*WORKS prepared in Intelligence Division—continued.*

**FRANCO-GERMAN WAR, 1870-71—continued.**

- 14.—Measures for Investment of Paris. Price 4s.
- 15.—Measures for Protecting Investment of Paris. Price 2s. 6d.
- 16.—Proceedings of Second Army. Price 3s. 6d.
- 17.—Proceedings of First Army. Price 3s.
- 18.—Occurrences on South-eastern Theatre of War up to the Middle of January, 1871. Price 8s.
- 19.—Occurrences on South-east Theatre of War. Price 13s. 6d.
- 20.—General Retrospect of the War. The Results of the War. Price 5s.

**FRENCH ARMY. Handbook. 1901. Price 1s.**

**GERMAN ARMY. FIELD SERVICE. Regns. 1900. 6d.**

**GERMAN ARMY (Home and Colonial). Handbook. Price 1s. 6d.**

**GERMAN FIELD ARTILLERY. Drill Regns. 1899. Price 1s. 6d.**

**GOLD COAST. NORTHERN TERRITORIES OF. Report on. Compiled by the late Lieut.-Col. H. P. NORTHCOOT, C.B. Price 6s.**

**HOSTILITIES WITHOUT DECLARATION OF WAR. An Historical Abstract of the cases in which Hostilities have occurred between Civilised Powers prior to declaration or warning. From 1700 to 1870. By Lt. Lieut.-Colonel J. F. MAURICE, R.M. 1883. Price 2s.**

**ITALIAN ARMY. Handbook of the. Price 1s. 6d.**

**NILE AND COUNTRY BETWEEN DONGOLA, SUAKIN, KASSALA AND OMDURMAN. Report on the. By Captain COUNT GLEICHEN, Grenadier Guards. Price 4s. 6d.**

**RECONNAISSANCE IN LITTLE KNOWN COUNTRIES. Hints on. By Captain C. E. CALLWELL, R.A., Staff Captain. Price 1d.**

**RHODESIA, SOUTHERN. Précis of Information concerning. By Major C. T. DAWKINS, C.M.G. Jan., 1899. Price 2s.**

**RUSSIA. MILITARY FORCES OF. Handbook. Second Edition. Price 1s. 6d.**

**SUDAN ALMANAC. 1902. Price 3d.**

**SUDAN CAMPAIGN. History of. In Two Parts, with Case of Maps. By Colonel H. E. COLVILLE, C.B., Grenadier Guards. 1890. Price 15s.**

**SUDAN. Handbook. Part I., Geographical. Part II., Historical. By Captain COUNT GLEICHEN, Grenadier Guards. Price 2s.**

**DITTO. SUPPLEMENT TO. July, 1899. Price 2s. 6d.**

**SUDAN, RED SEA, AND EQUATOR. EGYPTIAN PROVINCES OF THE. REPORT ON THE. Revised up to July, 1884. Price 3s. 6d.**

**SURVEYS (GOVERNMENT) OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES. NOTES ON. With the Civil and Military Divisions of each Country, Measures of Length and Surface, Lists of Government Maps, Conventional Signs and Abbreviations employed, and useful Tables for Map Reading; to which is added a List of Colonial and extra-Continental Possessions, and a List of Map Agents. 1882. Price 6s.**

**DITTO. SUPPLEMENT. A Guide to Recent Large-Scale Maps, including both Surveys and Compilations, together with a List of Some Large Sheet Atlases. By A. KNOX, M.A. Price 5s. 6d.**

**SWEDEN AND NORWAY. ARMIES OF. Handbook. By Major J. H. V. CROWE, R.A. Price 1s.**

**SWISS ARMY. Handbook. By Major H. D. LAFFAN, R.E., D.A.A.G. 1898. Price 6d.**

**TACTICS. MODERN. Précis of. Second Edition. 1896. Price 3s.**

**TURKISH ARMY. Handbook. 1900. Price 4d.**

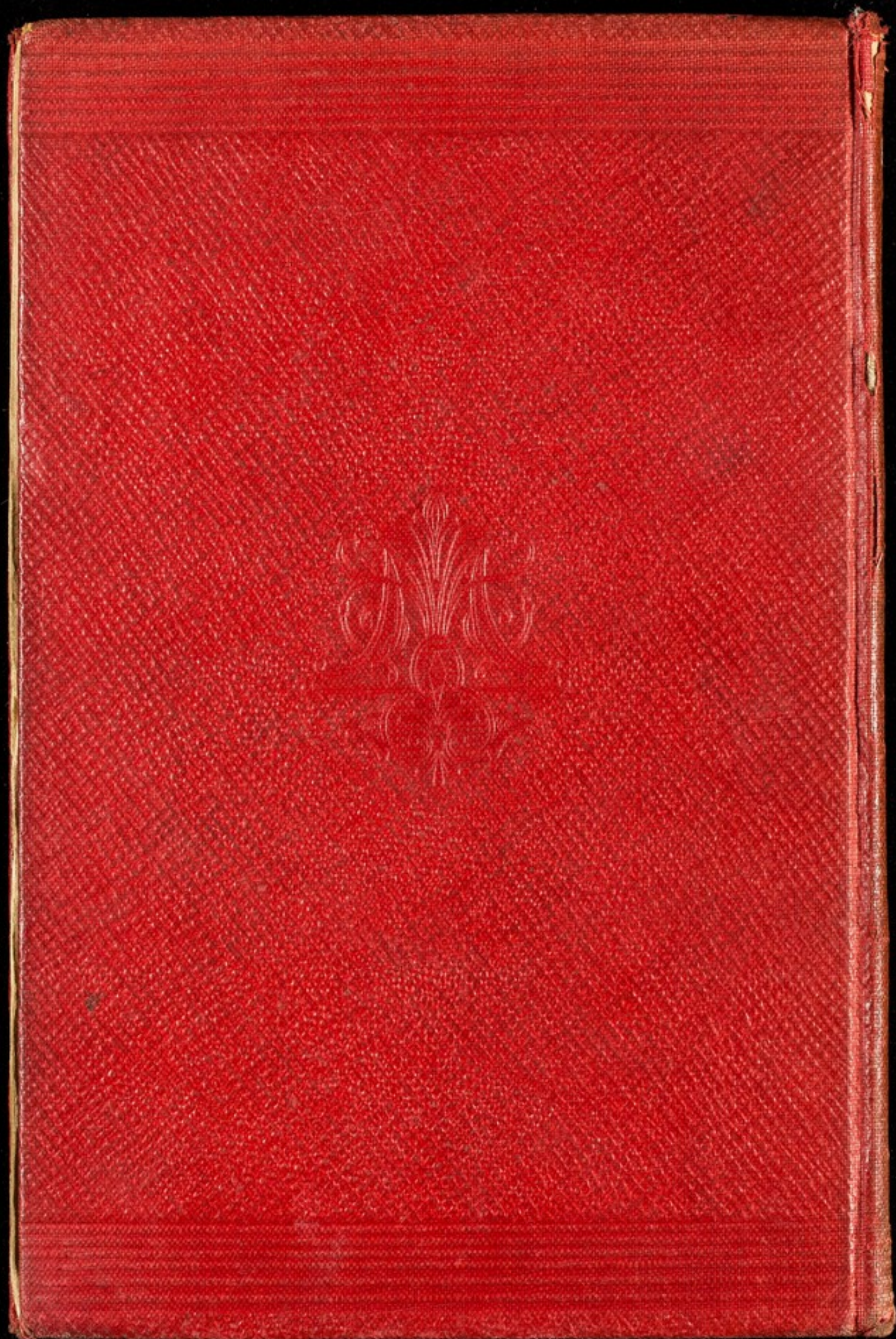
**URDU-ENGLISH PRIMER FOR THE USE OF COLONIAL ARTILLERY. Price 15s.**

**VALPARAISO. Capture of, in 1891. Reports on. Price 1s.**

**WAR GAME ON A MAP, CONDUCT OF. Rules for the. 1899. Price 3d.**

**ZULULAND. Précis of Information concerning. Dec., 1894. Price 4s.**







IMPERIAL ARMY SERIES  
BASED ON OFFICIAL MANUALS

**CEREMONIAL**  
**BILLETS CAMPS COOKING**

SANITATION  
ORGANIZATION  
ROUTINE  
GUARD DUTIES  
INSPECTION  
BIVOUACS

LONDON  
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

1914

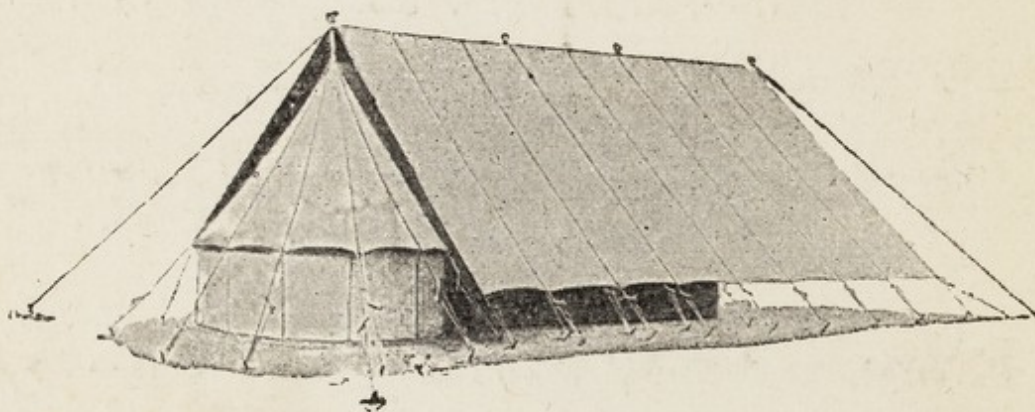
1/- NET



**GRAHAM & LATHAM, LTD.**  
MILITARY ENGINEERS

## **FIELD EQUIPMENT**

BELL TENTS :: BIVOUACS :: RIDGE  
TENTS :: HOSPITAL MARQUEES



Ridge Tent with Bath Room

**TENT FURNITURE**  
**COOKING EQUIPMENT**  
**MESSING UTENSILS**

104, VICTORIA ST., WESTMINSTER, S.W.



RAMC 2049  
4/2

CHARING CROSS  
**Turkish Baths**

NEVILL'S

**Northumberland Avenue**

PRONOUNCED TO BE THE FINEST IN EUROPE

---

*Are the last word in Comfort and Luxury*

**Cure**  
**Rheumatism, Lumbago, Sciatica,**  
**Colds, Strains, Stiffness,**  
**Etc.**

THEY MAKE AND KEEP YOU FIT

---

. . . And at . . .  
**LONDON BRIDGE, BROAD STREET, CITY,**  
**EDGWARE ROAD, Etc., Etc.**



# ARMY AND NAVY GAZETTE

## The Leading Service Journal.

*Published every Friday in time for the foreign mails.*

Subscription : Inland, 28/- ; Foreign, 32/6 ; single copies, 6½d. post free.

¶ The writers of all sections of the paper being closely in touch with Service questions of the day, the views and opinions expressed can be taken as authoritative. Exclusive sources of information are drawn upon for all intelligence.

¶ On the first Saturday in each month a Special Supplement is published giving the latest Stations of the Navy and Army.

*A specimen copy of the paper will be sent post free to any address in the world on application to the Publisher.*

"ARMY AND NAVY GAZETTE," 22, Essex Street, Strand, London, W.C.

## WITHERS'

### CUT GOLDEN BAR DE LUXE

Blended from the original receipt.

1 lb., 6/4 ;  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb., 3/3 ;  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb., 1/9.

### EDGEWORTH CUT PLUG,

$\frac{1}{4}$  lb., 2/7 ;  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb., 5/- ; 1 lb., 9/10.

All Post Paid.

**E. M. WITHERS, 59, Bull Street, Birmingham.**

ESTABLISHED 65 YEARS.



CEREMONIAL

BILLETS   CAMPS   COOKING



THE JOURNAL OF  
JAMES W. BECK

1880-1881  
MONTANA

THE JOURNAL OF  
JAMES W. BECK

1880-1881  
MONTANA

THE JOURNAL OF  
JAMES W. BECK

1880-1881  
MONTANA

THE JOURNAL OF  
JAMES W. BECK

1880-1881  
MONTANA

THE JOURNAL OF  
JAMES W. BECK

1880-1881  
MONTANA

THE JOURNAL OF  
JAMES W. BECK

1880-1881  
MONTANA



IMPERIAL ARMY SERIES

BASED ON OFFICIAL MANUALS

# CEREMONIAL

BILLETS CAMPS COOKING

SANITATION  
ORGANIZATION  
ROUTINE  
GUARD DUTIES  
INSPECTION  
BIVOUACS

Written by an Officer of the Regular Army

AND EDITED BY

E. JOHN SOLANO

LONDON

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

1914



IMPERIAL ARMY SERIES

BASED ON OFFICIAL MATERIAL

# CEREMONIAL

BULLETS CAMPS COOKING

SANITATION

ORGANIZATION

ROUTINE

GUARD DUTIES

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

BY J. O. U. A. C. E.

Written by an Officer of the Regular Army

and Editor of

K. JOHN SOLANO

LONDON

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

1904



## PREFACE

THIS book is intended for the newly-raised units of the Regular Army, and for the Territorial Force and the Military Forces of the Dominions. It contains subjects, grouped in a convenient manner, which are dealt with in various Official Training Manuals, including the *Manuals of Ceremonial, Military Hygiene and Sanitation, Military Cooking, Infantry Training, 1914, Field Service Regulations*, and the *Field Service Pocket-Book*. The instruction and directions throughout this book are consistent in principle with the official manuals. The chapter on Ceremonial includes the amendments to the Manual of Ceremonial issued in 1914.

The book contains much general information which will be useful to both officers and men, including rules regarding the vitally important subject of the preservation of health, which among other subjects refer to water-supply; the inspection of food; preserving food, milk, and water from contamination; personal cleanliness and sanitation in billets, camps, and bivouacs. The directions for movements with the sword in saluting and marching past, together with information regarding the organization of billets and camps, and the daily duties and routine of officers and N.C.O.'s of different ranks in quarters will be useful to leaders. Instruction on cooking in mess-tins,



with a number of recipes, is contained in Chapter VII. In the Appendix will be found information on miscellaneous subjects, including bugle-calls, directions for hoisting the national flag, for mending, cleaning, and washing clothes, and for making useful knots.

This book is also intended for the instruction of Officers' Training Corps and Cadet Corps. Special consideration is given to the problems of organizing cadet camps, and suggestions are made as to arrangements for accommodating cadets in billets when equipment and facilities for camps are not available. Practical suggestions for the guidance of cadet officers are also made with regard to the problem of transport, the cost and hire of equipment, the important question of diet, and arrangements for messing. Careful attention is paid to military instruction and routine in camps, while recreation is treated as a useful and valuable feature of cadet camps.

The Editor desires to express his thanks and due acknowledgments to the Military Authorities and to His Majesty's Stationery Office for permission to reproduce illustrations and extracts from official manuals in this book. Each edition will be kept abreast of the latest developments in the various subjects with which it deals. Amendments to the various manuals on which it is based notified in Army Orders will apply to this book so far as they concern the instruction contained in it.

E. JOHN SOLANO.

LONDON,  
1914.



# CONTENTS

## PART I

### *CEREMONIAL—INSPECTION—SENTRY AND GUARD DUTIES*

#### CHAPTER I

##### CEREMONIAL

SECTION	PAGE
1. General Remarks . . . . .	I
2. Movements with Officers' Swords . . . . .	2
3. Movements with the Rifle . . . . .	9
4. The Colour . . . . .	12
5. The Company on Ceremonial Parades . . . . .	12
6. The Battalion on Ceremonial Parades . . . . .	19

#### CHAPTER II

##### INSPECTION

7. General Remarks . . . . .	27
8. Inspection of Training and Interior Economy . . . . .	31
9. Inspection by Commanding Officers con- nected with Units . . . . .	34



## CHAPTER III

## SENTRIES AND GUARD MOUNTING

SECTION	PAGE
10. Sentries . . . . .	36
11. Guards . . . . .	40
12. Pickets in Camps and Billets . . . . .	46

## PART II

*QUARTERS*

## CHAPTER IV

## BILLETS, CAMPS, AND BIVOUACS

13. General Information . . . . .	48
14. Billets . . . . .	51
15. Camps and Bivouacs . . . . .	55

## CHAPTER V

## SANITATION

16. General Remarks . . . . .	58
17. Clothing and Equipment . . . . .	60
18. Water, Food, and Milk . . . . .	64
19. Disposal of Excreta . . . . .	73



## CONTENTS

ix

SECTION

PAGE

20.	Kitchens . . . . .	81
21.	Disposal of Refuse . . . . .	84
22.	Ablution-Places, Waste Water, and Horse- Lines . . . . .	86
23.	Sanitation in Billets . . . . .	87
24.	Personal Cleanliness and Care of Feet . . . . .	91

## CHAPTER VI

### ORGANIZATION IN CAMP

25.	General Information . . . . .	94
26.	Miscellaneous Hints—Training and Recrea- tion . . . . .	105
27.	General Rules for organizing Camps . . . . .	117
28.	Preliminary Duties . . . . .	119
29.	Pitching and Striking Tents . . . . .	123
30.	Transport . . . . .	126
31.	Journey to and from Camp . . . . .	130
32.	Arrival in Camp . . . . .	132
33.	Return of Equipment . . . . .	134
34.	General Arrangements for Cadet Billets . . . . .	135
35.	Routine . . . . .	138



SECTION	PAGE
36. Routine in Cadet Billets . . . . .	155
37. Grocery Store, Canteen, and Refreshment Tent . . . . .	157
38. Messing . . . . .	159

## CHAPTER VII

## RATIONS AND COOKING

39. Inspection of Rations . . . . .	162
40. Cadet Rations and Diet . . . . .	164
41. Cooking in Mess-Tins . . . . .	169

## APPENDIX

I. Directions for Hoisting the Union Jack . . . . .	176
II. Infantry Bugle Calls . . . . .	178
III. Specimen Copies of Orderly Officers' Reports . . . . .	191
IV. Charges for Purchase or Hire of certain Camp Equipment . . . . .	193
V. Specimen—Marching in State . . . . .	194
VI. „ „ Morning State . . . . .	195
VII. Mending, Cleaning, and Washing Clothes . . . . .	197
VIII. Useful Knots . . . . .	200



## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
1.	POSITION OF THE SWORD AT ATTENTION . . . . .	5
2.	DRAWING THE SWORD—"ONE" . . . . .	5
3.	" " "TWO"—THE RECOVER . . . . .	5
4.	" " "THREE"—THE CARRY . . . . .	5
5.	THE SLOPE . . . . .	5
6.	OFFICERS' SALUTE ON THE MARCH PAST—FIRST POSITION . . . . .	7
7.	" " SECOND POSITION . . . . .	7
8.	" " THIRD POSITION . . . . .	7
9.	" " FOURTH POSITION (SIDE VIEW) . . . . .	7
10.	A COMPANY MARCHING PAST . . . . .	17
11.	A BATTALION IN LINE . . . . .	19
12.	A BATTALION IN CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES . . . . .	20
13.	BIVOUAC SHELTER . . . . .	57
14.	" " . . . . .	57
15.	" " . . . . .	57
16.	FRAME FOR DRYING CLOTHES IN CAMP . . . . .	61
17.	LATRINE TRENCHES . . . . .	76
18.	LATRINE TRENCHES . . . . .	76
19.	PLAN OF CAMP URINAL . . . . .	80
20.	GREASE-TRAP . . . . .	82
21.	GREASE-TRAP FOR CAMPS. INSET SHOWS METHOD OF CUTTING SPOUT . . . . .	82



FIG.	PAGE
22. GREASE-TRAP FOR CAMPS . . . . .	83
23. A SQUARE . . . . .	120
24. LINES MARKING THE POSITION OF TENTS . . . . .	121
25. ARRANGEMENT OF MESS-TINS FOR COOKING . . . . .	172
26. THE UNION JACK . . . . .	176
27. FLAG FOLDED READY FOR BREAKING . . . . .	177
28. METHOD OF SEWING ON A LINEN BUTTON . . . . .	197
29. DARNING: MAKING WARP THREADS . . . . .	199
30. „ MAKING WOOF THREADS . . . . .	199



# CEREMONIAL

BILLETTS      CAMPS      COOKING

## PART I

### *CEREMONIAL—INSPECTION—SENTRY AND GUARD DUTIES*

#### CHAPTER I

#### CEREMONIAL

##### Section 1.—General Remarks.

1. The instruction laid down in this chapter is written for soldiers, but it is also applicable to cadet corps. In the case of the latter, however, it may be found necessary to make modifications to suit the degree of drill efficiency attained by individual corps, and the weapon and equipments with which they are supplied. The instruction in ceremonial is based on the Amendments to the *Manual of Ceremonial* issued in 1914.

2. Secs. 5 and 6 of this chapter deal with a company and a battalion taking part in ceremonial parades. In these sections reference is made to certain movements required to be executed by officers with the sword, and by N.C.O.'s and men with the rifle, which, as they are movements employed almost exclusively for ceremonial purposes, have not been mentioned in the *Drill and Field Training Manual*



of this series. The following sections explain the more important of these movements, and also the method of carrying the colour.

3. In this chapter the title of the drill movements is printed in **large thick type**, and the caution or word of command in **small thick type**, or in *italics* when the caution or command occurs in the text of a paragraph.

## Section 2.—Movements with Officers' Swords.

1. **General Instructions.**—On ceremonial parades, officers will draw their swords after inspecting their companies; the commander of a parade will not draw his sword unless a senior officer be present on parade. An officer reporting to a superior, with or without sword drawn, will, prior to saluting, halt and come to the position of attention. Officers' swords will be carried as follows:

(a) *At the Halt.*—At the *carry* on all occasions when their men are with sloped arms. On all other occasions at the *slope*.

(b) *On the Move.*—At the *slope*, with the following exceptions, when swords will always be at the *carry*, save when saluting—

- (i) On the saluting base;
- (ii) When taking post and returning, and when advancing in review order;
- (iii) During guard mounting and at the trooping of the colour;
- (iv) When marching past in column of route.

## 2. Position of the Sword at Attention\* (Fig. 1).

**Attention.**—(i) *With the Sword in the Scabbard.*—The sword will be held upright by the side, the shoe of scabbard resting on the ground close to the left foot and just in front of the heels. The grip will be grasped between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, elbow to the rear.

\* When the sword is worn with slings.



(ii) *With the Sword at the Slope* (Fig. 5).—The mouth of the scabbard will be grasped between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, elbow to the rear, the scabbard being in the same position as when standing to attention with the sword in the scabbard.

### 3. The Quick—March.\*

**Quick—March.**—Raise the sword smartly with the left hand at the first pace, without stooping or disturbing the position of the body, and grasp the scabbard at the point where the sword balances when held at an angle of 45 degrees, the thumb and fingers round the scabbard, the arm fully extended, the hilt touching the back part of the arm, scabbard rings towards the ground.

*Note.*—With the sword drawn the scabbard will be held in a similar position.

### 4. The Halt.

**Halt.**—Lower the sword to the ground, and assume the position of *attention*.

### 5. Drawing Swords.

**Draw Swords—One.**—Take hold of the scabbard of the sword with the left hand below the hilt; then bring the right hand smartly across the body and grasp the hilt; raise the hand the height of the elbow, the arm being close to the body (Fig. 2).

*Note.*—When the sword is worn with slings, the hilt should be raised as high as the hip before the right hand is brought across the body, and the hilt when grasped should be turned to the rear.

**Two (The Recover).**—Draw the sword from the scabbard, the edge being to the rear, turn the point upwards and lower the hand until the upper part of the hilt is opposite the mouth, the blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow close

\* When the sword is worn with slings.



to the body, which forms the position of *recover swords* (Fig. 3).

*Note.*—When the sword is worn with slings, the sword is drawn from the scabbard with its edge to the rear.

**Three (The Carry).**—Bring the sword smartly down until the hand is in front of the elbow and little finger in line with it, the elbow close to the body, blade perpendicular, edge to the front, which forms the position of *carry swords*; the left hand resumes the position of *attention* directly the sword is drawn (Fig. 4).

*Note.*—When the sword is at the *carry* mounted, the position is with the hilt resting on the right thigh, the blade perpendicular, the wrist rounded so as to incline the edge slightly to the left, the grasp of the lower fingers slightly relaxed, the little finger in rear of the hilt.

## 6. Sloping Swords (Fig. 5).

**Slope—Swords.**—Release the grasp of the last three fingers, and, without disturbing the position of the hand, allow the back of the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder midway between the neck and point of the shoulder.

## 7. Standing at Ease.\*

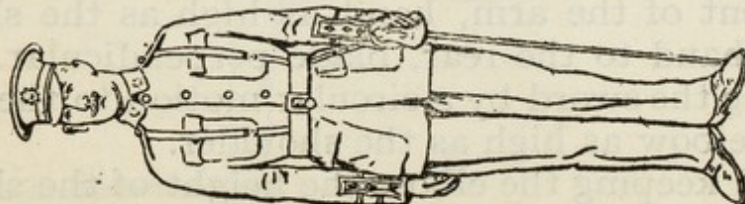
**Stand at—Ease.**—(i) *With the Sword in the Scabbard.*—Both legs to be kept straight. The left foot to be carried about one foot-length to the left, the scabbard being carried off with the left leg. The shoe of the scabbard will rest on the ground close to the left foot, and just in front of the heel. The palm of the left hand will rest on the top of the hilt, which will be pushed to the front, the right arm hanging by the side.

(ii) *With the Sword drawn.*—Both legs to be kept straight. The left foot to be carried about one foot-length to the left, the scabbard being carried off with the left leg, and allowed to fall to the front. Sword to be sloped.

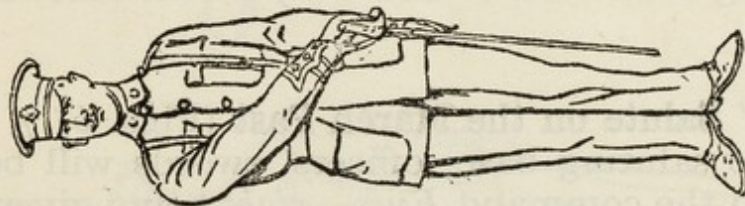
\* When the sword is worn with slings.



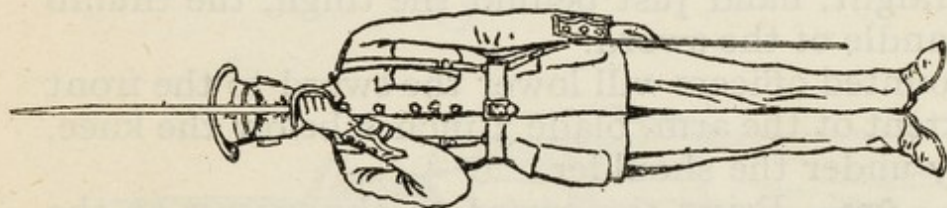
## DRAWING SWORDS



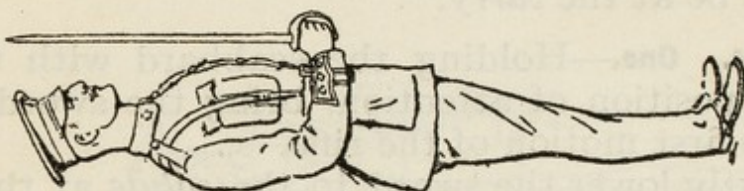
**Fig. 1.—Position of the Sword at Attention.**



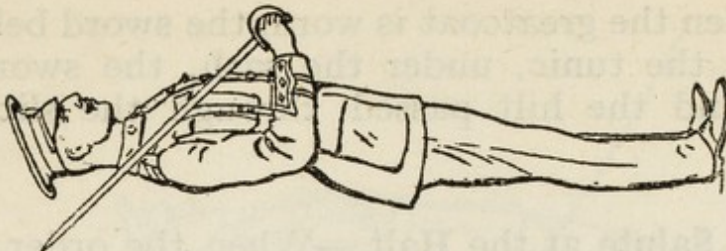
**Fig. 2.**



**Fig. 3.—The Recover.**



**Fig. 4.—The Carry.**



**Fig. 5.—The Slope.**

NOTE.—Figs. 1 to 4 inclusive show the different movements of *Drawing Swords*.  
Fig. 5 illustrates *Sloping Swords*.



*Note.*—When the greatcoat is worn, the sword belt will be worn outside the tunic, under the sash, the sword being hooked up and the hilt passed through the slit in the greatcoat.

**8. Officers' Salute at the Halt.**—When the order is given to present arms, the men will be at the *slope*; officers' swords will therefore be at the *carry*.

**Present—Arms. One.**—Holding the scabbard with the left hand at the position of attention, bring the sword to the *recover* at the first motion of the rifle.

**Two.**—Smartly lower the sword to the *salute* at the third motion of the rifle, the point of the sword to be 12 inches from the ground and directed to the front, edge to the left; right arm straight, hand just behind the thigh, the thumb flat on the handle of the sword.

*Note.*—Mounted officers will lower the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm, blade 3 inches below the knee, hand directly under the shoulder.

**Slope—Arms. One.**—Bring the sword to the *recover* at the first motion of the rifle.

**Two.**—Bring the sword to the *carry* at the second motion of the rifle.

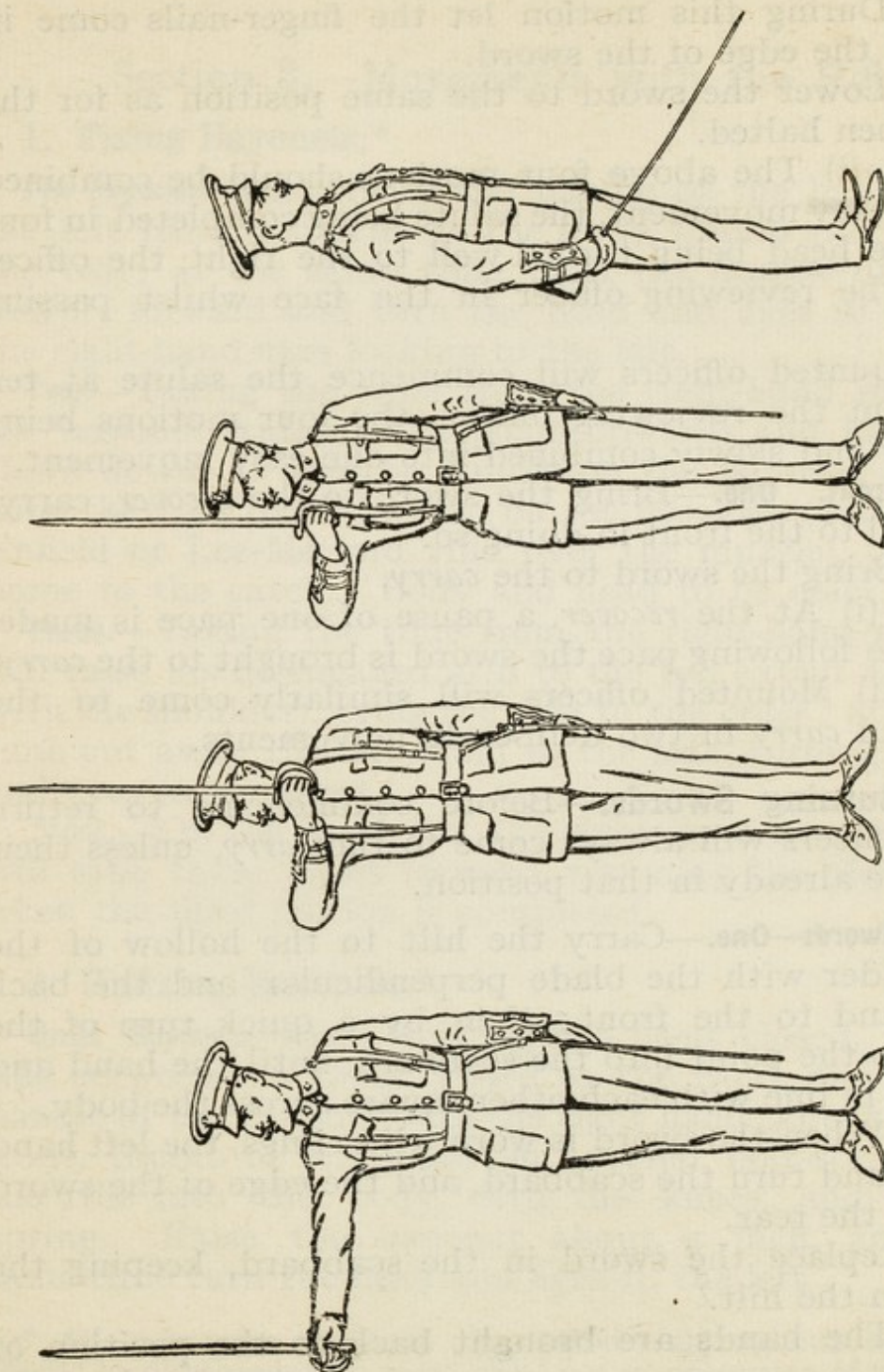
**9. Officers' Salute on the March Past** (Figs. 6, 7, 8, 9).—Being on the saluting base, officers' swords will be at the *carry* prior to the command *Eyes—right* being given.

**Eyes—Right. One.**—Carry the sword direct to the right to the full extent of the arm, hand as high as the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear, blade perpendicular.

**Two.**—Bring the sword by a circular motion to the *recover*, keeping the elbow as high as the shoulder.

**Three.**—Still keeping the elbow the height of the shoulder, bring the hilt to the right shoulder, hand as high as the





OFFICERS' SALUTE ON THE MARCH PAST.

Fig. 6.—First Position.

Fig. 7.

Fig. 8.

Fig. 9.—Side View.]



elbow. During this motion let the finger-nails come in line with the edge of the sword.

**Four.**—Lower the sword to the same position as for the salute when halted.

*Note.*—(i) The above four motions should be combined into one easy movement, the salute being completed in four paces, the head being turned well to the right, the officer looking the reviewing officer in the face whilst passing him.

(ii) Mounted officers will commence the salute at ten paces from the reviewing officer, the four motions being gradually and slowly combined into one easy movement.

**Eyes—Front. One.**—Bring the sword to the *recover*, carrying it well to the front in doing so.

**Two.**—Bring the sword to the *carry*.

*Note.*—(i) At the *recover*, a pause of one pace is made, and on the following pace the sword is brought to the *carry*.

**Two.**—(ii) Mounted officers will similarly come to the *recover* and *carry* in two deliberate movements.

**10. Returning Swords.**—Before commencing to return swords, officers will always come to the *carry*, unless their swords are already in that position.

**Return Swords—One.**—Carry the hilt to the hollow of the left shoulder with the blade perpendicular, and the back of the hand to the front; then by a quick turn of the wrist drop the point into the scabbard, until the hand and elbow are in line with each other square across the body.

*Note.*—When the sword is worn with slings, the left hand will raise and turn the scabbard, and the edge of the sword will be to the rear.

**Two.**—Replace the sword in the scabbard, keeping the hand upon the hilt.

**Three.**—The hands are brought back to the position of *attention*.



### Section 3.—Movements with the Rifle.

#### 1. Fixing Bayonets.\*

**Fix Bayonets—One.**—Seize the handle of the bayonet with the left hand, knuckles to the front, thumb and fingers to the rear; at the same time push the muzzle of the rifle sharply forward and turn the head and eyes to the right, the right-hand man looking to the left.

**Two.**—Taking the time from the right-hand man, draw the bayonet, turning the point upwards and keeping the elbow down. Place the handle on the bayonet standard, with the ring over the stud on the nose-cap (with the Lee-Enfield or Lee-Metford rifle, over the muzzle), pressing it home to the catch. Body and head to be erect.

**Three.**—Taking the time from the right-hand man (who will raise his disengaged arm to the full extent and in line with the shoulder), bring the rifle to the *order*; at the same time cut away the left hand to the side, turning the head and eyes to the front.

**Note.**—On the word *Fix*, the right-hand man of the unit will take three paces forward, resuming his place in line when the third motion is completed.

#### 2. Unfixing Bayonets.\*

**Unfix Bayonets—One.**—Keeping the heels closed, place the rifle between the knees, guard to the front, and grasp the handle of the bayonet with the right hand, knuckles to the front, thumb of left hand on bayonet bolt-spring; draw the rifle into the body with the knees, and press the spring. Raise the bayonet about 1 inch, and at the same time turn the head and eyes to the left.

\* All references made to the bayonet throughout this chapter should be disregarded by cadet units not in possession of this weapon.



**Two.**—Taking the time from the left-hand man, raise the bayonet off the bayonet standard, drop the point to the left side, ring to the rear, and, raising the right hand, seize the scabbard with the left hand and guide the bayonet into it.

**Three.**—Taking the time from the left-hand man (who will look inwards and raise his right arm), force the bayonet home, and bring the right hand to the band (Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifle, to the lower band).

**Four.**—Taking the time from the left-hand man, cut away the left hand to the side and return to the *order*, turning the head and eyes to the front.

*Note.*—On the word *Unfix*, the left-hand man of the unit will take three paces forward, resuming his place in line when the fourth motion is completed.

### 3. Sloping Arms from the Order.

**Slope Arms—One.**—Give the rifle a cant upwards with the right hand, catching it with the left hand at the back-sight and the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb to the left, elbow to the rear.

**Two.**—Carry the rifle across the body, and place it flat on the left shoulder, magazine outwards from the body. Seize the butt with the left hand, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the upper side of the butt, the thumb about 1 inch above the toe, the upper part of the left arm close to the side, the lower part horizontal, and the heel of the butt in line with the centre of the left thigh.

**Three.**—Cut away the right hand to the side.

### 4. Presenting Arms from the Slope.

**Present Arms—One.**—Seize the rifle with the right hand at the small, both arms close to the body.

**Two.**—Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, sling to the left; at



the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to the forefinger, point of the thumb in line with the mouth; the left elbow to be close to the butt, the right elbow and butt close to the body.

**Three.**—Bring the rifle down perpendicularly close in front of the centre of the body, guard to the front, holding it lightly at the full extent of the right arm, fingers slanting downwards, and meet it smartly with the left hand immediately behind the back-sight, thumb pointing towards muzzle; at the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight. The weight of the rifle to be supported by the left hand.

### 5. Sloping Arms from the Present.

**Slope Arms—One.**—Bring the right foot in line with the left and place the rifle on the left shoulder, as described in the second motion of the *slope* from the *order*.

**Two.**—Cut away the right hand to the side.

### 6. Ordering Arms from the Slope.

**Order Arms—One.**—Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the left arm, at the same time meeting it with the right hand between the back-sight and the band (at the lower band, Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifle), arm close to the body.

**Two.**—Bring the rifle to the right side, seizing it at the same time with the left hand round the nose cap (at the upper band, Lee-Enfield and Lee-Metford rifle), butt just clear of the ground.

**Three.**—Place the butt quietly on the ground, cutting the left hand away to the side.



### Section 4.—The Colour.\*

1. **Method of Carrying.**—When at the halt the colour will never be sloped; it will be carried at the *carry* or the *order*, according as the men are at the *slope* or the *order*.

2. When on the move, the colour will always be carried at the *slope*, except when marching on to or off the parade ground, when on the saluting base, and when taking post in review order. At these times it will be at the *carry*.

3. At the *carry* the colour will be carried perpendicularly, the end of the pike being in the belt, which will be worn over the left shoulder, the right hand grasping the pike level with the forehead.

4. At the *slope* the end of the pike will be removed from the belt, and the pike allowed to rest on the right shoulder.

5. At the *order* the colour will be placed perpendicularly on the ground at the right side.

### Section 5.—The Company on Ceremonial Parades.

1. **Formation.**—On ceremonial parades the four platoons of a company will not be kept intact as distinct units, but the cadets of the whole company (including section commanders below the rank of sergeants and signallers) will be formed in two ranks, regardless of the platoons to which they belong, the tallest being on the flanks, and the shortest in the centre. This is termed sizing the company (see para. 2 below). When the company has been sized, it will be numbered from right to left; it will then be told off into platoons, which will be numbered from 1 to 4 within each company, and not from 1 to 16 throughout the battalion,

\* Directions regarding the colour must be modified to suit cadet formations which have one colour only. See also note to Sec. 5, para. 5.



as is normally the case. The method of telling off or proving a company is given in para. 3.

## **2. Sizing a Company.—**

### **Tallest on the Right, Shortest on the Left. In Single Rank—Size.—**

The whole will break off and arrange themselves in single rank according to their size, the tallest on the right and the shortest on the left, carrying their rifles at the short trail, and will take up their dressing by the right.

**Number.**—From right to left of the whole company.

**Slope—Arms. Odd Numbers One Pace Forward. Even Numbers One Pace Step Back—March.**—The odd numbers will take one pace forward, and the even numbers will step back one pace.

**No. 1 Stand Fast. Ranks Right and Left—Turn.**—The odd numbers, with the exception of No. 1, will turn to the right, the even numbers to the left.

**Form Company. Quick—March.**—The whole will step off, the even numbers wheeling round to the right and following the left-hand men of the odd numbers. No. 3 will form up two paces in rear of No. 1; No. 5 on the left of No. 1; No. 7 in rear of No. 5; No. 9 on the left of No. 5; and so on. The leading men of the even numbers will always form in the rear rank, and the next man in the front rank. As the men arrive in their places, they will turn to the left, order arms, and take up their dressing.

**Note.**—If space is limited, a company may be sized in two ranks, tallest on the flanks, shortest in the centre.

**3. Telling off or Proving a Company.**—(i) A company will be told off into platoons by calling out the numbers of the left-hand men of platoons. When the number of files is not divisible by four, the outer platoons should be the stronger. The method is made clear by the following commands and directions. These are based on the assumption that there are 42 cadets in the front rank (*i.e.*, 42



files), but the same system holds good whatever the strength of the company may be.

(i) **Company—Number.**—The company will number off from right to left.

(ii) **Eleven.**—No. 11 of the front rank will *prove* by extending his left forearm horizontally, elbow close to the side.

(iii) **Left of No 1 Platoon.**—No. 11 will drop his arm to the side.

(iv) **Twenty-One.**—No. 21 of the front rank will *prove* in the same way as No. 11.

(v) **Left of No. 2 Platoon.**—No. 21 will drop his arm to the side.

(vi) <b>Thirty-One</b>	(vii) <b>Left of No. 3 Platoon.</b>	} As above.
(viii) <b>Forty-Two.</b>	(ix) <b>Left of No. 4 Platoon.</b>	

(ii) The company commander will then see that the men know their numbers and the platoons to which they belong by forming fours and such other preliminary tests as he may consider desirable.

**4. Position of Officers and N.C.O.'s in Line.**—The company commander, who will not be mounted on ceremonial parades, will be ten paces, the officer second in command three paces, in front of the centre of the company. Platoon commanders, when officers, will be three paces in front of the centre of their platoons. If there are less than four officers commanding platoons, the officer second in command and the platoon commanders will divide the company frontage equally between them. The company sergeant-major and company quartermaster-sergeant will be respectively on the right and left flanks of the front rank, acting as guides. Sergeants, whether temporarily commanding platoons or not, will be two paces in rear of the company at equal intervals apart, forming what is termed the supernumerary rank. All other N.C.O.'s will be in the ranks.



**5. The Colour Party.\***—When a colour is to be borne on a ceremonial parade, a selected cadet, usually a non-commissioned officer, will be detailed to carry it. The colour party will consist of this cadet and two others, who will march one on each side of him. The cadet who carries the colour will command the colour party.

**6. Marching on the Colour.**—(i) The company being drawn up in line, the company commander gives the order : *Nos. 1 and 2 platoons three paces right close ; Nos. 3 and 4 platoons three paces left close—march.* A space for the colour party is thus left in the centre of the company.

(ii) The colour party, having received the colour at the place where it is kept, marches to the parade-ground, and halts at some distance from the company. The company commander then gives the order *March on the colour*, when the colour party will take up its position in the centre of the company, level with the front rank, the colour being held at the *carry*. When marching to its position, the colour party will advance towards the front of the company or along the front of the front rank; it will never move into place from the rear of the company.

(iii) When the colour party approaches the company, the company commander will give the orders *Slope arms* and *Present arms*. When the colour party is in position, he will order the company to slope arms, and, if the company is to be inspected by a reviewing officer, he will order arms and await his approach.

\* In units other than cadet units the colours (*i.e.*, the King's colour and the regimental colour) are not ordinarily carried when a single company parades, unless such company is acting as escort to the colours. When carried, each of these colours is borne by an officer, the King's colour on the right and the regimental colour on the left, with a sergeant between them and two N.C.O.'s or selected privates covering them in rear. This and the following paragraphs have, however, been adapted so as to be applicable to cadet companies parading with a single colour.



**7. Marching off the Colour.**—On the conclusion of the parade the colour will be marched off before the company is dismissed. The company commander will give the order *March off the colour*, and as the colour party moves off he will order the company to present arms. He will then give the order *Slope arms*, and will close Nos. 1 and 2 platoons three paces to the left, and Nos. 3 and 4 platoons three paces to the right, before dismissing the company.

**8. Inspection by Reviewing Officer.**—When the reviewing officer nears the company arms will be sloped, officers, swords being at the *carry*, and he will be received with a general salute.

(i) **General Salute. Present—Arms.**—On the command, *Present—arms*, which will be given when the reviewing officer is about thirty paces from the company, cadets will present arms, and all officers will salute as laid down in Sec. 2, para. 8. The supernumerary rank and guides will present arms with the remainder of the cadets.

(ii) **Slope—Arms.**—Cadets, including supernumerary rank and guides, will slope arms, and officers will bring their swords to the *recover* and *carry*, as described in Sec. 2, para. 8.

Arms will then be ordered, and the reviewing officer will pass down the ranks, accompanied by the company commander on his right.

**9. A Company marching past.**—(i) Arrangements :

For this practice the company will be formed in line; arms will be at the *order*. The posts of officers and N.C.O.'s are given in para. 4 of this section.

Four points, numbered 1, 2, 3, and 4 (Fig. 10), will be placed, marking the angles of an oblong, of which the long sides should, if possible, be 160 paces in length, and the short sides 80.

The company will be in the centre of one of the long sides—the side opposite to the saluting base.



	Battalion commander.		Battalion quartermaster-sergeant.
	Senior major.		Armourer-sergeant.
	Adjutant.		Company sergeant-major
	Company commander.		Company quartermaster sergeant
	Company second in command.		Platoon sergeant.
	Platoon commander.		Bandmaster.
	Quartermaster.		Band sergeant.
	The King's colour.		Bandsman.
	Regimental colour.		Sergeant-drummer.
	Sergeant-major.		Drummer.
			Private, rear rank.

## Key to Figs. 10, 11, and 12.

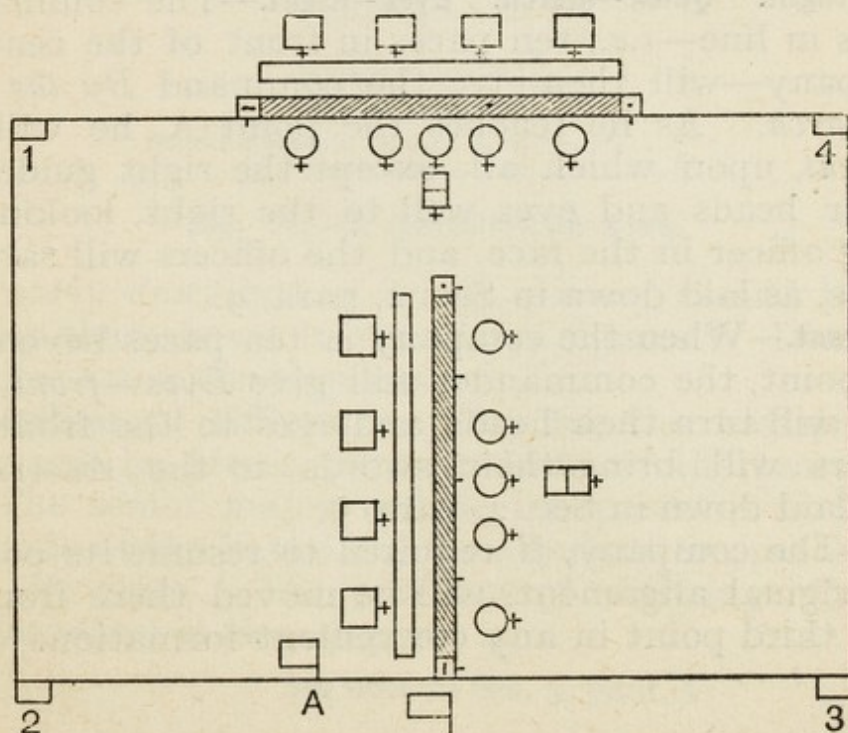


Fig. 10.—A Company marching past.



A point, termed the saluting point, will be placed ten paces outside the centre of the saluting base, turned towards the company; and a point, lettered A, turned in like manner, on the saluting base, at ten paces to the left of the saluting point. As a rule all these points should be marked by camp colours, but if necessary cadets may be posted to mark them.

(ii) The company will then march past as follows:

**Fix—Bayonets. Slope—Arms. Form—Fours. Right. Quick—March. Left—Wheel.**—The company will step off, and will change direction to the left round the first point.

**Company—Halt. Left—Turn. Right—Dress.**—When the right of the company arrives on the saluting base, the commander will order it to *Halt, left turn*; the company having turned to its front, the right-hand man of the front rank will immediately align himself on the right guide, and on the command *Right—dress*, the right guide will dress the company, and give the command *Eyes—front*.

**By the Right. Quick—March. Eyes—Right.**—The commander, posted as in line—*i.e.*, ten paces in front of the centre of the company—will then give the command *By the right, quick—march*. As he reaches the point A, he will give *Eyes—right*, upon which all, except the right guide, will turn their heads and eyes well to the right, looking the reviewing officer in the face, and the officers will salute in four paces, as laid down in Sec. 2, para. 9.

**Eyes—Front.**—When the company is ten paces beyond the saluting point, the commander will give *Eyes—front*, upon which all will turn their heads and eyes to the front, and the officers will bring their swords to the *recover* and *carry*, as laid down in Sec. 2, para. 9.

*Note.*—The company, if required to resume its position on the original alignment, will be moved there from the second or third point in any convenient formation.







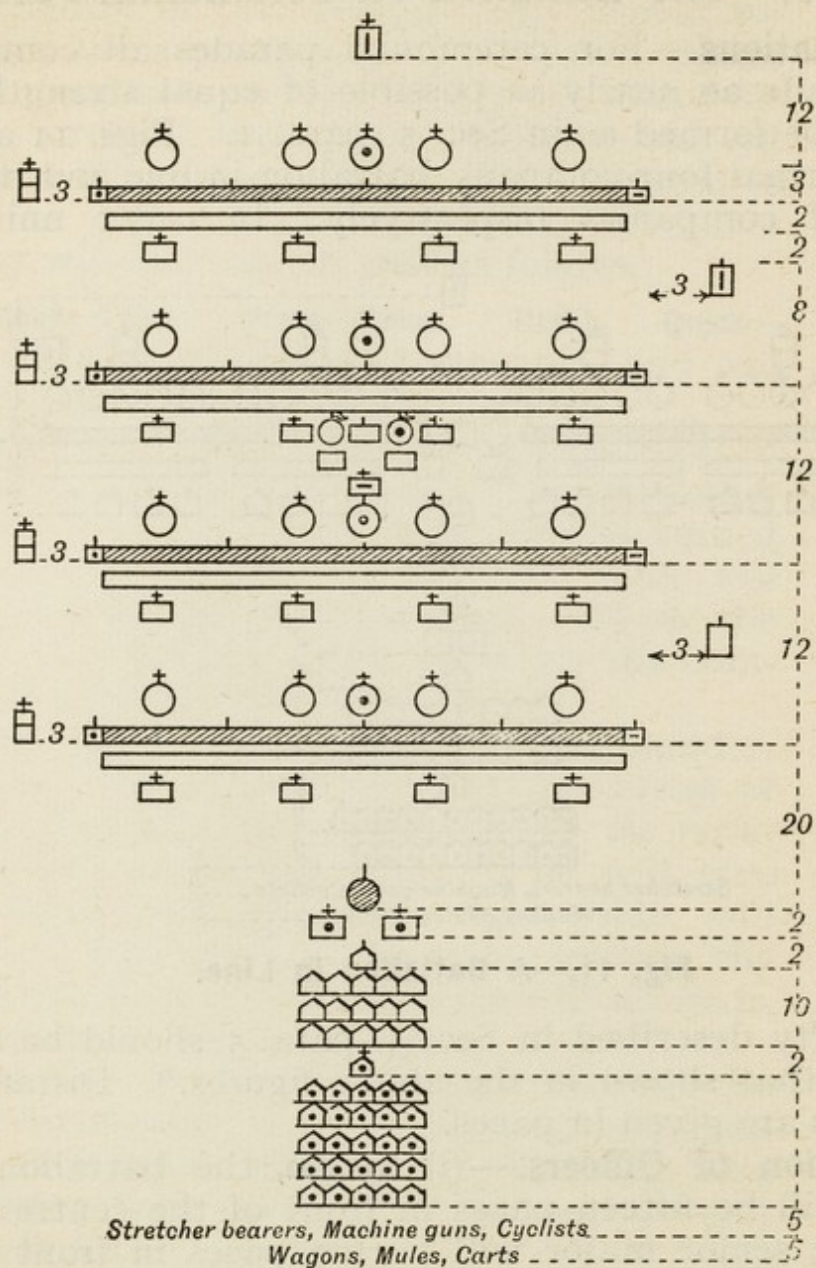


Fig. 12.—A Battalion in Close Column of Companies.



(ii) **In close column of companies**, which for ceremonial will be at twelve paces distance, measured from the heels of the front rank of one unit to the heels of the front rank of the next, the battalion commander will be fifteen paces in front of the centre of the leading company. The senior major will be on the right flank of the battalion, three paces from a point midway between the first and second companies, the adjutant immediately in rear of him, between the third and fourth companies, except that when the battalion is on the move it will be the adjutant's duty to place himself in a position from which he can best superintend the direction of the advance and the covering of the guides on the directing flank. Company commanders will be three paces from the left flank of their companies. Officers second in command of companies will be three paces in front of the centre of their companies, officers commanding platoons three paces in front of the centre of their platoons.

If there are less than four officers commanding platoons in any company on parade, the officer second in command and the platoon commanders will divide the company frontage equally between them.

**3. Inspection.**—A battalion may be formed up for inspection by a reviewing officer either in line or in close column of companies. The former is the more usual, and the detail of procedure is as follows: The battalion will be drawn up in line as in Fig. 11; bayonets will be fixed and arms sloped. When the reviewing officer reaches a point about sixty paces in advance of the centre of the battalion, the battalion commander will order—

(i) **General Salute.\* Present—Arms.**—The cadets will present arms, the band (or bugles), if present, playing the first

\* If the reviewing officer is the Sovereign or a royal personage, *Royal salute* will be substituted for *General salute*. The band will play the National Anthem, and the colour will be lowered to the front on the command *Present arms* till the head of the pike rests on the ground.



part of a slow march. All officers will salute with the battalion commander (Sec. 2, para. 8).

(ii) **Slope—Arms.**—Cadets will return to the slope, and officers will bring their swords to the *recover* and *carry* (Sec. 2, para. 8).

(iii) **Order—Arms.**—Cadets will come to the order, and officers will **slope** swords (Sec. 2, para. 6).

(ii) The reviewing officer, accompanied by the battalion commander, who will ride on the farther side from the troops, will then pass down the line from right to left, returning along the rear, the men standing with ordered arms.

The band will play a march until he returns to the right of the line.

The reviewing officer will then give orders for the march past.

**4. Marching past by Companies.**—(i) Points having been placed as described in Sec. 5, para. 9, the battalion will first change from line into close column of companies in rear of the right-hand company (No. 1) (para. 2 [ii] of this section).

**Slope—Arms. On the Right form Close Column of Companies. Remainder, Form—Fours. Right. Quick—March.**—The whole line will slope arms. All but the right-hand company (No. 1), which will stand fast, will then form fours, turn to the right, and move into the formation of close column of companies in rear of the original right-hand company (No. 1).

(ii) The battalion will then be moved into position on the saluting base.

**Move to the Right in Fours. Form—Fours. Right, No. 1 will direct. Quick—March.**—The whole will form fours, turn to the right, and march towards the first point, the left of the original right-hand company (No. 1) being directed on that point.



**Change Direction Left. Left—Wheel. Forward by the Left.**—On the command *Left wheel*, which will be given when the battalion reaches the first point, a left wheel will be made, the battalion moving forward on the command *Forward* as soon as the change is completed.

**Halt. Left—Turn. Battalion Right—Dress.**—On the command *Halt*, which will be given when the battalion reaches the saluting base, the right guides will turn about and be covered by the adjutant, who will give the command *Steady*. On the word *Steady* the right guides will turn about, and the right-hand man of the front rank of each company will immediately correct his dressing by the right guide. On the command *Right—dress*, the right guides will dress their companies and give the command *Eyes—front*.

(iii) The march past will then commence.

**March Past by Companies by the Right.**—The commander of No. 1 will give the command, No. 1, *By the right, quick—march*, the remaining companies following in succession at forty paces' distance, or as ordered, and acting as in the last portion of Sec. 5, para. 9 (ii).

**5. Position of Officers when marching past by Companies.**—The battalion commander will be fifteen paces in front of No. 2 platoon of the leading company, the senior major in front of No. 3 platoon, in line with the battalion commander. The adjutant will follow ten paces behind the centre of the rear company. Company officers will be in the position laid down in Sec. 5, para. 4.

**6. Officers' Salute when marching past by Companies.**—Mounted officers will salute when they arrive at point A. Company officers as in Sec. 5, para. 9 (ii). The battalion commander, after he has saluted, will move out and place himself on the right of the reviewing officer, and remain there



until the battalion has passed, the senior major assuming command.

**7. The Band.**—The band (or bugles), if present, will move up to fifty paces in advance of the leading company. It will commence playing as soon as the leading company advances on the saluting base. When it arrives in front of the saluting point it will turn to the left, change direction to the right, and halt and turn to the right opposite to the saluting point, continuing to play until the rear of the battalion has passed. The bandmaster will face the saluting point.

**8. Marching past in Close Column of Companies.**—This movement is usually carried out after the completion of the march past by companies, and is then executed as follows:

When, during the march past by companies, the leading company has moved to thirty-eight paces beyond the third point, the senior major will order—

(i) **At the Halt Close—Column.**—The commander of the leading company (No. 1) will at once halt his company, and each of the remaining companies will be halted by its commander when it is twelve paces from the company in front of it.

*Note.*—The order to form close column is given by the senior major, as the battalion commander will be with the reviewing officer (see para. 6 of this section). The senior major will also give commands ii, iii, and iv.

(ji) **About—Turn.**—The whole battalion will turn about.

(iii) **Order—Arms.**—The whole battalion will come to the order, officers sloping swords.

(iv) **Left—Dress.**—The left guide of each company will dress his company and give the command *Eyes—front*.

The battalion commander now leaves the reviewing officer and takes command of the battalion. He gives the orders—

(v) **Slope—Arms.**—The whole battalion will slope, officers bringing their swords to the *carry*.



(vi) **Advance in Close Column by the Left. Quick—March.**—The whole battalion will move off together.

(vii) **Eyes—Left.**—The battalion commander gives this order when he arrives at ten paces from the saluting point. All, except left guides, will turn head and eyes well to the left, looking the reviewing officer in the face.

(viii) **Eyes—Front.**—The battalion commander will give the command *Eyes—front* when the rear company has passed the reviewing officer.

*Note.*—If required to resume its position on the original alignment, the battalion will be moved there from the second or third point in the most convenient and quickest formation. The senior major, company commanders, and adjutant, will resume their respective posts in close column.

**9. Position of Officers when marching past in Close Column.**—When marching past in close column of companies, the battalion commander will be fifteen paces in front of the centre of the leading company. The senior major and the adjutant will be ten paces in rear of the centre platoons of the rear company, the senior major nearest the saluting base. Company commanders will be three paces from the outer flank of their companies. Officers second in command of companies and officers commanding platoons will be as in line, but dividing the frontage of their companies equally between them.

**10. Officers' Salute when marching past in Close Column.**—When marching past in close column the battalion commander only will salute.

**11. The Colour Party when marching past.**—When marching past, both by companies and in close column of companies, the colour party will be in rear of the centre of the second company, aligned with the supernumerary rank.

**12. Other Movements on Inspection Parades**—(i) **Advancing in Review Order.** This movement will seldom be required of cadet battalions. It is executed as under:



**Advance in Review Order. Quick—March.**—The battalion having been formed into line, with bayonets fixed and arms sloped, will advance by the centre, the band and drums playing, till within thirty paces of the reviewing officer, when it will be halted and ordered to salute in the same manner as when receiving him; after which it will be directed to order arms, and will wait for orders.

(ii) **Marching past in Column of Route.**—On the completion of a parade the reviewing officer may direct the battalion to march past him in column of route. This, being the ordinary formation of fours in which a battalion marches along a road, hardly comes within the scope of ceremonial drill; but attention is called to the following points:

The battalion commander, with his adjutant, rides at the head of the column, and the senior major in rear of it. The company commander and company sergeant-major march at the head of each company, the second captain and company quartermaster-sergeant in rear. Platoon commanders march in front, and platoon sergeants in rear, of their respective platoons. In no case will more than four individuals march abreast.

**13. Address by Reviewing Officer.**—The battalion may be halted and turned about on the conclusion of the march past in close column of companies, or may be moved in close column to its original position as detailed in the Note to Command viii of para. 8, in order that it may receive any address or remarks which the reviewing officer may wish to make.



## CHAPTER II

### INSPECTION

#### Section 7.—General Remarks.

**1. The Value of Inspection.**—The principle which underlies the whole science of military training in every branch and for every arm is that training must be carried out on a homogeneous and consistent system throughout the British Army. This rule is also laid down as a fundamental principle of Imperial defence, and applies not only to the British Army, but to the military forces of the whole Empire. The need for this principle is obvious, for, unless the various units of the Imperial forces which are scattered in different parts of the World are organized and trained upon a consistent system, it will not be possible for them to be organized quickly and easily for effective combined action for the defence of the Empire in a supreme emergency.

**2.** The principles upon which British troops are trained in all branches of instruction are very clearly laid down in the various official textbooks. This is done so that there may be no confusion or mistake regarding the methods to be employed or the exact nature of the instruction. But this alone is not sufficient to insure that the principles of instruction in any branch are being applied in practice correctly and consistently to the training of troops by the officers of all the different units of the army in various places. It is to insure that this is being done that periodical inspections are carried out at convenient times every year while troops



are actually under instruction—generally during the period of their field training.

**3. Inspection of Cadet Corps.**—The function of officers who inspect cadet camps will not differ materially from that of officers who inspect troops, and in a sense their duties will be no less important; for cadet corps are now recognized as part of the military system of the Empire in the Mother Country and in the Dominions. The training of the soldier is commenced in these corps in those parts of the Empire in which instruction in them is obligatory, and this may also be the case in other parts where instruction is voluntary. It is therefore essential, if trouble, delay, expense, and confusion, are to be avoided when cadets join the regular and citizen forces of the Empire as soldiers, that their training as cadets in every part of the Empire should be carried out upon principles strictly consistent with those laid down in the official textbooks of the British Army, upon which the manuals of this series are based. It will be the important duty of officers inspecting cadet corps to guide cadet officers and instructors so as to insure that in every stage of their training the instruction of cadets, so far as it goes, is being carried out upon consistent principles and correct methods.

**4.** Inspections, therefore, should form a regular part of the training of cadet corps. The place and time for carrying out inspections must depend upon circumstances in each case, and no general rule regarding them can be laid down. It is clear, however, that the camp training period affords a good opportunity for carrying out inspections, because various units, which might otherwise have to be inspected separately in different places, may be assembled together in camp and can be inspected together.

**5. Hints for Inspecting Officers.**—(i) A thorough inspection, carefully carried out by an efficient inspecting officer who is ready and able to point out where and how



improvement can be made, should provide most valuable instruction to both officers and cadets. A casual inspection has no military value. The inspecting officer must recognize what are the salient points to look into, and not allow himself to waste time on small matters which are easily remedied and are of less importance. At the same time, he must not neglect details, however small. He should make up his mind, before he commences, as to what he wants to see and find out. Faults which require correction should be pointed out, and information as to the best method to remedy them should be given.

(ii) **Faults.**—If faults arise from carelessness, laziness, or want of discipline, they should certainly be criticized severely; but any faults arising from want of either experience or training which it has not been possible to obtain should be treated leniently, and corrected in such a manner that those inspected feel that instruction is being imparted and experience gained—not that they are being censured for what they are not wholly to blame. Inspecting officers should do all in their power to make their inspections really helpful and instructive to those whom they inspect.

(iii) **Praise and Blame.**—It is a mistake to give praise where it is not really deserved. On the other hand, criticism must never be unduly harsh. Officers inspecting cadet corps must remember that both cadet officers and cadets, however earnest they may be in learning their work as soldiers, may have to be trained to some extent under disadvantages, such as a limited time for instruction and more or less inadequate facilities in the shape of ground and equipment. Under these circumstances, unmerited praise will not encourage cadets, while unduly harsh criticism regarding imperfections, due partly or wholly to want of opportunities for training, will be unjust and calculated to dishearten them.



(iv) **Unnecessary Inspections.**—Though inspections are essential for the efficiency of units and the value of cadet corps as a whole, unnecessary inspections will prove irksome, and should be avoided. The better trained and more efficient cadets are, the less wearisome inspections will prove, for in this case no special preparations are necessary to prepare for inspection, because an efficient corps is always fit to be inspected at any time. Special preparations for an inspection are only necessary when cadets are not thoroughly trained, and are to some extent inefficient and unready.

**6. Inspection of Cadets in Camps and Billets.**—The inspection of cadets in camps and billets should be carried out by an officer who is not connected with the units he inspects. He should, if possible, be a Regular or Territorial officer of experience. If the services of such an officer cannot be obtained, the inspection may be carried out by the officer commanding the units quartered in camps or billets. When an officer is not connected with any of the units he inspects, the inspection will probably be completed in a day. If, on the other hand, units are inspected by their commanding officer, it will not be necessary to arrange a special occasion for the inspection, as he will have opportunities for a more or less continuous inspection of units without the need of inspecting them at any particular parade (Sec. 9).

**7. Ceremonial Inspection.**—If time is available, the inspecting officer should certainly hold a ceremonial parade, however small the number of cadets in camp may be. He will have a good opportunity on this parade of noting the physique, steadiness, and general appearance, of the cadets as a whole; and by passing down the ranks he will be able to make a close inspection of each cadet. Moreover, a ceremonial parade appeals strongly to the soldiery instinct, and serves to arouse a natural feeling of pride in each individual taking part in it. Detailed instruc-



tions for carrying out the more ordinary movements executed on ceremonial parades by the company and battalion are contained in Chapter I.

### Section 8.—Inspection of Training and Interior Economy.

1. The inspection of cadets quartered in camps or billets should be devoted to matters which may be classified under two heads—namely, *Training* and *Interior Economy*. Under the head of *Training* will come all matters relating to the instruction of cadets in military duties, both in the field and in the camp. Under the head of *Interior Economy* come all matters affecting the management of the camp—for example, equipment, questions relating to sanitation, food and water-supply, etc.

2. The method of carrying out the inspection of the training of the cadets must naturally depend entirely on the nature of the work being carried out in the camp. If it is a large camp at which a comprehensive scheme of training is being carried out, it will be best for the inspecting officer to arrange a tactical exercise in attack and defence, which will give him an opportunity of testing the cadets and their leaders as fully as possible. On the other hand, if the camp is a small one, at which it has not been possible to go in for such an extensive form of training as described above, the inspecting officer may arrange for something more simple, such as simple exercises in the duties of outposts. No definite rule, however, can be laid down, and inspecting officers must use their discretion in carrying out their inspection as thoroughly as possible.

3. **Points for Criticism.**—The following points, apart from the general scope of the training and its consistency with the principles of the army textbooks, upon which emphasis has already been laid, are suggested as a rough



guide to officers inspecting cadet corps, as subjects for criticism and remark:

- (i) The discipline of cadets.
- (ii) Their intelligence, smartness, and general appearance.
- (iii) The ability of the officers and cadet N.C.O.'s to command and instruct.
- (iv) The physique and condition of cadets.
- (v) Their efficiency in military duties.

The discipline of cadets may be judged by the manner in which the guard turns out and the sentries salute, and by their general bearing, as, for instance, whether they slouch or move in a brisk and soldierly way. The manner in which they perform their military duties, especially in the case of field exercises, will also enable inspecting officers to judge of the discipline in cadet corps.

**4. Intelligence and Smartness.**—The general intelligence of cadets may be tested by asking them questions, by listening to them passing verbal messages, by watching them in their conduct and movements during the training. Their smartness and general appearance may be judged by a short ceremonial parade, at which the inspecting officer can walk down the ranks and examine the cadets closely. He should note how they handle their arms on parade and their steadiness in the ranks during the march past.

**5. Military Efficiency.**—The efficiency of officers and cadets in military duties should be judged by practical tests. These tests, when possible, should consist of simple tactical schemes in field exercises. In watching such exercises, inspectors should particularly note the ability of officers and N.C.O.'s to command and lead their cadets. He should note carefully whether both officers and cadets carefully apply under practical conditions the principles which govern the more important principles of field training, as, for instance, the use of ground and cover, forma-



tions, methods of advance, co-operation between different units, and fire direction and control.\* Simple tactical schemes in outpost duties by night as well as by day give an inspecting officer good opportunities for testing the knowledge, initiative, and resource, of officers, N.C.O.'s, and cadets. Elementary night operations also constitute an admirable test of discipline as well as of military efficiency, as absolute silence, implicit obedience to orders, thorough comprehension of orders, and skilful leadership, are all essential for success.

6. As a guide to inspecting officers as to points for criticism in a field exercise consisting of a tactical scheme, the following may be mentioned as faults which are most likely to be committed by cadets in outpost exercises:

- (a) Too many sentries and pickets are employed.
- (b) Isolated sentries are posted too far from the groups to which they belong.
- (c) Patrols are sent out with no definite mission to perform.
- (d) Positions chosen for pickets are not suitable for defence.
- (e) Men of pickets do not know the positions they are to occupy in case of alarm.
- (f) Supports are too far from the pickets.
- (g) There is too much shouting, talking, and movement in the picket line.
- (h) Sentries have not been properly instructed as to section of the ground in front of them which they are to watch.

7. **Special Classes.**—If there are any special classes of instruction being carried on—for instance, signalling or first aid—the inspecting officer should make a point of seeing them at work, to ascertain whether the instruction is in accordance with the regulations on the subject, and if the progress of the cadets is satisfactory.

\* See chapters vi. and vii. of the *Drill and Field Training Manual* of this series. See also the *Musketry Manual* of this series.



**8. Inspection of Interior Economy.**—If the inspecting officer is not connected with the units inspected, he should take note of the following points with reference to the interior economy of camps:

(i) The general appearance of the camp, the suitability of its site; the pitching of tents, correctness and alignment of poles and tent-pegs.

(ii) The sanitary arrangements, position and sufficiency of latrines, general cleanliness of the camp lines, disposal of refuse and rubbish.

(iii) Feeding arrangements, kitchens, quality and quantity of food.

(iv) Hospital arrangements; care of the sick.

(v) Recreation and refreshment tents for cadets and staff sergeants' mess.

(vi) Officers' mess; arrangements and cost of messing.

The inspecting officer should go round some of the lines during the dinner-hour and satisfy himself that the cadets are sufficiently fed and are contented with the feeding arrangements.

### **Section 9.—Inspection by Commanding Officers connected with Units.**

1. When the inspections are carried out by battalion commanders or officers commanding camp, the inspecting officer will make it his business to ascertain and report on all the different points which are mentioned in Sec. 8. He will be able to make a more thorough and continuous inspection than an officer who may be sent to the camp especially to inspect it. Besides the points already mentioned, he should note whether the cadet officers are carrying out their instructional duties in a satisfactory manner and in accordance with regulations.

2. At least once during the training he should inspect the



lines of each battalion or company under his command. The commanding officer should endeavour to do this every morning. For this inspection the tents should be completely cleared, the kits and blankets laid out in regular lines, the cadets in line behind them. The commanding officer should walk along each row of tents, see that all ground in the vicinity of each tent is clean and swept up, and also all roads between battalions and companies for the cleanliness of which the companies under his command are responsible.

3. Cutlery, cups and saucers, plates, washing pots, mess tins, must all be laid out and spotlessly clean; and any spare rations, such as bread, jam, etc., which is being kept over for another meal, should be put away in a dry, clean receptacle provided for the purpose. The commanding officer should also make a point of often visiting his lines during meal hours, to ascertain that the food is sufficient, of good quality, and well served.

4. He must pay particular attention during each inspection to the condition of the rifles of cadets if they bring these to camp, unless, of course, they are mere dummy rifles used only for the purpose of drill, and not for firing.



## CHAPTER III

### SENTRIES AND GUARD MOUNTING

#### Section 10.—Sentries.

**1. General Remarks.**—The duties of outpost sentries, which are dealt with in the *Drill and Field Training Manual* of this series, are entirely different from those of sentries furnished by the guard which is mounted daily in camps and barracks. The orders to such sentries are to walk about their post in a brisk and soldierly manner. Their chief duty is to prevent any irregularities in or near the camp or barracks. In carrying out his duties, a camp sentry has the opportunity of helping very materially towards maintaining the good name of his regiment. The state of the discipline in a regiment can fairly accurately be gauged by the manner in which its guard duties are performed, and by the smartness with which the sentries walk their posts and salute.

**2. Number of Posts.**—(i) The number of posts for which sentries are to be found in cadet camps or billets will be decided by the adjutant or camp commandant. In large camps, where battalion lines are side by side, the flank battalions will generally find three posts : one on the front, one on the rear, and one on the exposed flank of the camp. Two posts, one on the front and one on the rear, will usually be sufficient for each of the battalions in the middle.

(ii) A battalion or detachment camped by itself will require the front, rear, and both flanks to be watched. The number of sentries which will be required to do this will depend on the size of the camp. If a small one, two sentries will probably suffice, as one sentry could watch the front



and one flank of the camp, while the other sentry could watch the rear and the other flank. If the camp is a large one four sentries will be required.

**3. Duties of Sentries.**—(i) A sentry should never stand easy. If he does stand at ease, he should always do so properly and at one end of his beat. He must keep a keen watch about him, and make sure that he does not neglect to pay the proper compliments. A sentry must be smart in appearance, intelligent, and well informed. He must be able to recognize the badges of rank worn by officers both of the navy and army. He must know his orders thoroughly and understand them clearly. The orders for a sentry posted in cadet camps or billets will be made out by the adjutant of the battalion or camp commandant. In general the sentry's duties will be—

(a) To take care of all camp property in view of his post, and to allow none to be removed or touched except by an authorized person.

(b) To inquire the business of anyone not connected with the camp who may try to enter the lines, and, if necessary, direct the latter to the guard-tent or call the commander of the guard.

(c) To allow no one to loiter about on his beat.

(d) To allow no man to leave camp improperly dressed.

(e) To report to the commander of the guard if he sees any suspicious characters enter the lines.

(f) To challenge all persons approaching his post after dark, and not to allow them to pass unless he is satisfied that they have a right to be there.

(g) To take the name of any man passing his post to go to the latrine after dark, and report to the commander of the guard if the man is away an unnecessarily long time.

(h) If there is a fire or any disturbance in camp, to immediately alarm the guard.

(i) If there is any talking or noise in any of the tents after



*Lights out*, except in the tents of those who have special permission, to report the matter to the commander of the guard.

(j) To pay proper compliments.

(k) To turn out the guard on the different occasions already specified.

(l) When posted over the guard-tent he will, if there is time, warn the guard that they must turn out, by saying in a low tone of voice, *Stand by the guard*. He will then give the order: *Turn out the guard*, in a loud voice. This will help to insure that the guard turns out together.

(m) When posted over special places, such as the officers' lines or near water-taps, etc., he will receive special orders.

(ii) When a sentry is visited by the captain or subaltern of the day he must be prepared to be able to repeat his orders and know what his duty is. A sentry's front is away from the camp or property which he is guarding. When turning about at the end of his beat, a sentry will turn outwards—i.e., towards his front.

**4. Sentries Challenging.**—(i) When it becomes dark, the sentries will challenge in the following manner: On the approach of a person, the sentry will call out in a sharp tone: *Halt! Who comes there?* When on a post where a sudden rush could be made upon him, he will at once come to the engage,\* but without drawing back the right foot. If the person approaching gives a satisfactory reply, the sentry will say, *Pass, friend; all's well*, remaining at the engage till he has passed. If the person approaching answers, *Visiting rounds*, the sentry, if there is no countersign, will say, *Pass, visiting rounds; all's well*. But if there is a countersign he will say, *Stand, visiting rounds; advance and give the countersign*, at the same time coming down to the engage. In this position he will receive the countersign, and if it is correct,

\* In coming to the *engage* from the *slope*, seize the rifle with the right hand at the small, and come to the *engage*.



will say, *Pass on, visiting rounds ; all's well*, and proceed as above described.

(ii) If the sentry is on or near the guard-room door he will proceed according to the directions for turning out the guard at night for visiting rounds. See p. 45.

**5. Sentries Saluting**—(i) **Armed Sentries**.—(a) Armed sentries salute by presenting arms to all officers in uniform above the rank of captain and to armed parties between reveille and retreat.

(b) By standing facing the front, with the rifle sloped, the right hand on the small of the butt, forearm horizontal, back of the hand to the front, fingers extended. This salute is given to all officers under the rank of major.

(c) By standing facing the front with the rifle sloped but with the right arm at the side. This is done after retreat.

(ii) **Unarmed Sentries**.—Unarmed sentries will salute by turning to their front, placing the cane under the left armpit in a horizontal position, ferrule to the front, and saluting with the right hand.

(iii) Sentries will not present arms to any officer or armed party after retreat; but as long as they can discern an officer they will come to their front on his approach and stand steady with the rifle at the slope till he has passed.

(iv) Between reveille and retreat sentries will present arms when armed, or salute with the right hand when unarmed, to all officers above the rank of captain, and all armed parties. They will halt and turn to the front to all other officers in uniform and to unarmed parties. Unarmed sentries will salute.

**6. Relieving and Posting Sentries**.—(i) On the approach of the relief, the sentry, with rifle at the *slope* will place himself at the end of his beat nearest to the advancing relief. The corporal of the relief will proceed as follows:

**Relief, halt**—at about six paces from the sentry.

The new sentry will then move out from the relief and fall



in on the left of the old sentry, facing in the same direction; the old sentry will then give over his orders, the corporal seeing that they are correctly given and understood.

**Pass.**—The old sentry will move to his place in the relief and the new sentry will close two paces to his right.

**Relief Quick March.**—The relief will be marched off.

(ii) When a sentry who is to be posted in a new place has reached the post assigned to him, he will be ordered to halt and face in the required direction. The corporal will then read and explain the orders to him.

(iii) The object for which he is posted, the front of his post, and the extent of his beat, will be clearly pointed out to a sentry when first posted. Sentries must not quit their arms, lounge, or converse with anyone on any pretence. Sentries moving about on their post will always turn outwards when turning about.

**7. Marching Reliefs.**—Reliefs of fewer than four men will be formed in single rank, when of four men or upwards they will be formed in two ranks (in streets or narrow places reliefs should always be marched in single rank). When marching in line, the corporal will be on the right, when in file (or as in file) he will be on the right of the rear file (or man).

## Section 11.—Guards.

1. It will rest with the Brigadier or camp commandant whether guards are formed by day and night in cadet camps or billets. They may be necessary by night, and may be advisable by day as well. Although training in guard duties is good for cadets from a disciplinary point of view, they should, as already stated, be reduced to a minimum, together with the sentry duties\* they involve, to set cadets

\* This remark does not apply to the duties of outpost sentries, which form are an important part of their field training by day and night.



free for more important branches of instruction for which training in camp affords valuable opportunities.

The hour at which guards will mount will also rest with the Brigadier or camp commandant or his staff officer or adjutant. In cadet camps when time is available the evening is the best hour for guard mounting.

**2. Detailing for Guard.**—(i) A sentry belongs to the guard which is mounted daily. His company is detailed by the sergeant-major to find a given number of N.C.O.'s and men for the guard. The company orderly sergeant keeps what is called a roster. This is a roll of the company. Whenever a man does a guard, fatigue, or any other duty the date on which he performed the duty is placed against his name. Each man takes his turn of guard if he is what is called a duty man. A duty man is one who does not fill any special post, and is qualified to go on guard. If he is a clerk, an officer's servant, a company cook, or storeman, or is otherwise employed, he is not taken for guard, and is thus not reckoned as a duty man.

(ii) As soon as the sergeant-major says that a certain company will find a number of N.C.O.'s and men for the guard, the orderly sergeant looks down the roster and details the duty men on his roster who come next for guard. In the army when in barracks men are warned for any duty for which they are detailed by means of a list posted on the company's notice-board. The men themselves are held responsible for finding out each day what duty they are detailed for on the following day. In cadet camps, where notice boards are not available, cadets may be warned personally for duties.

(iii) When a man knows he is for guard duty on the following day, he generally sets about getting his accoutrements and clothes cleaned rather more carefully than he would perhaps for an ordinary parade, as the adjutant and sergeant-major make a much more complete inspection of the men at guard



mounting than the captain of a company would have the time to do.

**3. Guard Mounting.**—(i) At a fixed hour on the following day the men for guard duty fall in under the orders of the sergeant-major. There is no regulation way for a guard to fall in for inspection.

(ii) As soon as the guard has fallen in, and the men composing it have been reported present or otherwise by the company orderly sergeants to the sergeant-major, they are called to attention, and ordered to right-dress. Bayonets are then fixed, the men stand at ease, and wait for the arrival of the adjutant. On the approach of the latter, the sergeant-major orders the guard to slope arms, and then reports the guard present or otherwise to the adjutant.

(iii) The adjutant then gives the command *Order arms*, and proceeds to inspect the guard. This inspection is a very minute one, and any man dirty or improperly dressed is severely dealt with. Bayonets are then unfixed, and the rifles are inspected. It is generally the custom for the cleanest man detailed for guard to be picked out. On being selected, the clean man falls out, and moving round to the rear, falls in on the left of the waiting man. As soon as the guard is marched off, the clean man goes to his room or tent, puts away his rifle, and then takes up his post at the orderly room, as commanding officer's orderly for the day. This is a coveted duty to be selected for. A good soldier will naturally be proud of himself for being picked out as a clean man. His duties are light, and he escapes sentry duty. It is recommended that this selection of a clean man is also carried out on cadet guard mountings.

(iv) After the clean man has fallen out and the adjutant has completed his inspection, the commander of the guard is ordered to tell off his guard. He steps to the front, and



the corporal in the rear rank steps forward and takes his place. The guard is again dressed, and the commander tells off each man, either as first relief, No. 1 post, or second relief, etc. He then falls in in rear of the guard.

(v) The sergeant-major then calls on the commander to report whether all is correct, salutes adjutant, and reports *Guard correct, sir*. The adjutant calls the guard to attention, fixes bayonets, and slopes arms. The guard is then marched off. The dress for guard mounting is usually review order, with or without greatcoats, as ordered. If the greatcoats are not worn on guard mounting, they are taken down to the guard-room or tent along with the men's bedding, etc., for the night. In camp the guard wears marching order.

(vi) The way in which guard mounting is carried out varies slightly in different battalions, but the above procedure is sufficiently simple, and is recommended for cadet corps. If the corps are unarmed, the cadets should carry canes, and go through the same drill except the arm drill described above.

**4. Relieving Guards.**—(i) The following directions laid down for infantry should be followed as closely as possible by cadet corps, armed or unarmed:

(ii) **General Rules.**—(a) When guards turn out, they will fall in with sloped arms and fixed bayonets if armed; if unarmed, the commander only will carry a cane, which will be placed under the left armpit in a horizontal position, ferrule to the front.

(b) The non-commissioned officer in command will fall in on the right of the guard.

(c) Guards, including reliefs, rounds, and patrols, will march with sloped arms and bayonets fixed. In wet weather arms will be carried at the secure. Armed sentries are to patrol with sloped rifles; unarmed sentries will carry a cane in the right hand at the trail—*i.e.*, in a horizontal



position at the full extent of the right arm and grasped at the point of balance.

(d) Guards will not turn out after retreat or before reveille, except at tattoo, on the approach of an armed party, in cases of alarm, or to receive visiting rounds, nor will they during their period pay any compliments.

(iii) **Honours and Salutes.**—The following honours and salutes will be paid by guards:

Between reveille and retreat (a) the guard will turn out and present arms, and the bugler will sound the salute to a general officer in uniform passing in front of the guard. If he passes behind, the bugler will not sound nor will the guard present arms.

(b) To the battalion commander, when in uniform, the guard will turn out and present arms once by day.

(c) To all armed complete units—*i.e.*, a cavalry regiment, a battalion of infantry, a battery of artillery, a cadet battalion passing the guard. By day the guard will present arms between retreat and reveille, and it will stand with sloped arms.

The guard will not present arms by day to unarmed parties, and will not turn out between retreat and reveille to unarmed parties.

(d) The guard will turn out both by day and night when visited by the captain of the day or the subaltern of the day. The guard will not present arms unless the captain of the day is a major in rank, and will not do so to him after retreat.

(e) Guards will turn out at the commencement of the call for reveille, retreat, and tattoo being sounded. The commander will carefully inspect them and then dismiss them.

(iv) **Relieving or Posting a Guard.**—(a) When the ground admits, a new guard will advance in line towards the front of the old guard, and will be drawn up when possible



fifteen paces in front, or, when not possible, six paces from the left of the old guard.

(b) As soon as this is completed, the old guard will present arms, and the new guard will return the salute. Commanders of guards will present arms at the same time as the men.

(c) Both guards will in like successive manner slope arms, order arms, and stand at ease.

(d) The guard will then be told off, and the first relief sent out. When the first relief of a new guard is sent out, a corporal belonging to the old guard will accompany it, to bring in the relieved sentries. If the relief moves in line, he will be on the left flank; if in file (or as in file) he will be at the head of the front rank of files (or rank). As soon as all the sentries are relieved, the two corporals will change places, and the corporal of the old guard will assume command. While the relief is marching round, the commander will take over the property in charge of the guard according to the list in the old guard report.

(e) When the reliefs have returned, and all the cadets of the old guard have fallen in, both guards will be called to attention and ordered to slope arms.

(f) The old guard will then move off in fours or file, the new guard presenting arms.

(g) When the old guard is clear of the ground, the new guard will slope arms, and, if not already there, will move on to the same alignment occupied by the old guard. Arms will then be ordered, and the commander of the guard will read and explain the orders of the guard to his men; these orders will also be read and explained to the cadets forming the first relief when they come off sentry. The men of the guard will then be dismissed to the guard tent.

**5. Guards turning out at Night—Visiting Rounds.**—The following form will be observed when a guard is visited by



the captain of the day or subaltern of the day, on visiting rounds:

(i) On their approach the sentry at or near the guard-tent door will challenge: *Halt! Who comes there?* The officer will reply: *Visiting rounds.* The sentry will then call: *Guard, turn out.* The guard will fall in with bayonets fixed and arms sloped, and, if there is no countersign, the commander will call out: *Advance, visiting rounds; all's well.* To visiting rounds he will remain at the slope.

(ii) If there is a countersign to be given, a corporal or sergeant with a flank file of the guard will double out, and, when about ten paces from the rounds, will order the file to halt, bring them to the *engage*, and will then repeat the challenge: *Who comes there?* The reply will again be: *Visiting rounds.* The non-commissioned officer calling, *Stand, visiting rounds. Advance one, and give the countersign.* Rounds will then in a low voice give the countersign, which the non-commissioned officer alone will carry in double time for verification to the commander of the guard. If correct, the commander of the guard will call out: *Advance, visiting rounds; all's well.* The file will then double back to the guard, and rounds will advance to the guard.

### Section 12.—Pickets in Camps and Billets.

1. A picket from each battalion is always detailed for duty in camp and barracks in the case of troops. Whether pickets are detailed or not in cadet camps or billets is a matter for the camp commandant to decide. If possible, the time of cadets should not be occupied in this work.

2. The principal duties of the picket in camp or barracks are to find sentries over the canteen when it is open and sentries on posts which do not require armed sentries. The picket is always on duty, and is useful to reinforce the guard in case of emergency or to send out into the streets



if there is a disturbance going on in which soldiers may be engaged. In stations abroad it patrols the lines during the night on the lookout for thieves or other suspicious characters.

3. In cadet camps, if a picket is detailed, its duty would be to patrol the lines and prevent any lights or talking in the tents after lights out has sounded. It would fall in at once and assist the guard in the event of any general disturbance in the camp. The picket mounts with the guard and parades for inspection at last post.\*

\* A picket in camp or barracks must not be confused with a picket forming part of an outpost-line, the duties of which form an important part of the field training of soldiers by day and night (see the *Drill and Field Training Manual* of this series).



## PART II

### QUARTERS

#### CHAPTER IV

##### BILLETS, CAMPS, AND BIVOUACS

#### Section 13.—General Information.

1. QUARTERS take the form of billets, close billets, bivouacs, and camps. Camps admit of concentration, and are more healthy than bivouacs, but will only be used on service by troops engaged in field operations under exceptional circumstances. When not in proximity to the enemy, the health and comfort of the troops are the first considerations. Camps may still be used in uncivilized or sparsely-inhabited theatres of war, and when they cannot be dispensed with owing to climatic and other reasons. Camps will also be employed generally throughout the British Empire for the peace training of soldiers.

2. Billets are the usual form of quarters in civilized countries when not in immediate proximity to the enemy. They allow of proper rest and give shelter from the weather, but usually cause dispersion of the troops. This disadvantage may be overcome partially by resorting to *close billets*, when as many men as possible sleep in houses, the remainder bivouacking. Billets give concentration and readiness, but are trying to the health of men and horses, and should only be resorted to when tactical considerations make it imperative to do so.



**3. Tactical Considerations.**—*In the presence of an enemy, tactical considerations—e.g., favourable ground for deployment in the event of attack, concealment, facilities for protection, and economy in outposts, are of the first importance.* Under these circumstances the time which it will take to get the troops under arms and in position to meet the enemy, determines the form of quarters to be adopted. Thus, it will often be possible to billet the main body of an army, its covering force being placed partly in close billets and partly in bivouac.

**4.** If a force is halted for a single night only, dismounted troops should not be quartered at a greater distance than from one to two miles from their line of march next day. Dismounted units should be nearest the water-supply. Staffs and hospitals have the first claim on buildings. Officers must be close to their men.

**5. General Arrangements on the Arrival of Troops.**—

(i) Before the troops are dismissed, all necessary defensive precautions must be taken, guards mounted, police posts established, and water, fuel, and forage parties detailed. The arrangements of the brigade area, the boundaries of the unit's area, and other matters of a similar nature will also be explained to the men.

(ii) Units, on their arrival, should be halted on their alarm posts. Everyone must be made to understand clearly what he has to do in case of alarm, and should know the names of all prominent features of ground near the area, and where the roads in the immediate neighbourhood lead to. Names should be invented for such features if none exist.

(iii) No troops, other than orderlies and parties for water, wood, forage, etc., under proper control, are to quit their areas until leave has been given by the commander of the brigade area.

(iv) Each commander of a unit will, without delay, send



an orderly who knows the position of the unit's headquarters to report himself at the brigade office.

(v) If a state of *constant readiness* is ordered, troops will remain accoutred and will sleep with their arms handy, and it may even be necessary that horses should be kept always saddled and harnessed. In billets, lights must in this case be kept burning in houses, stables, and streets; and doors must be kept open.

**6. Discipline.**—(i) The daily duties mount as a rule immediately a new halting-place is reached. When a force remains halted for some time, and in standing camps, the hour for duties to mount will be notified in orders. In each regiment, battalion, or similar unit, an officer of the day will be detailed. In each company an orderly non-commissioned officer will be appointed.

(ii) Regimental officers of the day, and orderly non-commissioned officers are responsible that orders for the preservation of good order, the sanitation, and the internal defence of the district are observed.

(iii) **Inlying Pickets.**—Inlying pickets are mounted under the orders of the commander of the brigade area, when required for internal security, or they may be ordered by the commander, who appoints the commander of the outposts to act as a reserve to the outposts. In the latter case the picket stands to arms one hour before sunrise. Should the inlying picket be required to leave an area, its commander should at once notify the fact to the field officer of the day, with a view to a fresh inlying picket being mounted.

(iv) **Alarm.**—The alarm will be sounded only by order of the commander of a brigade area or of superior military authority, unless an actual attack is impending, when it may be sounded on the responsibility of any officer or of the commander of a guard. On the alarm sounding, troops fully armed and equipped fall in by companies on the



alarm post of their unit, draught animals are to be at once harnessed in and pack animals saddled up, and an officer from each unit is to be sent for orders to the brigade office.

### Section 14.—Billets.

**1. General Arrangements.**—The allotment of billeting areas to armies, divisions, brigades, and smaller units are made by the staff, arrangements being carried out by the quartermaster-general's staff, assisted by the commanders of billeting areas. Representatives of units will proceed with billeting parties to the localities apportioned to them, so far as tactical considerations admit, and take over their areas, when they will in turn send back to meet and guide their units to their billets.

**2. Regimental Billeting Party.**—A regimental billeting party should, if possible, consist of an officer or non-commissioned officer, and one rank and file per company, etc., for each unit concerned. Before starting for his allotted area, each officer or non-commissioned officer should receive a statement showing the number of officers, men, and horses for whom accommodation and food, if this is to be demanded, is required, and, if possible, the topography of the locality should be explained.

**3.** On arrival in the locality to be occupied, the officer or non-commissioned officer in charge of the party will proceed direct to the mayor, chief officer of police, or other official holding an equivalent position, to whom the billeting demand will be handed, together with any instructions to be observed by the inhabitants. The mayor or other official will at the same time be notified of the hour at which the troops may be expected, and will be requested to supply information as to the existence of any infectious disease, to designate the house or locality affected, and



to notify any special precautions to be taken in respect of water-supply, sanitation, fire, etc.

4. If time permits, a billeting order will be prepared by the local authority for presentation by the billeting party to each inhabitant on whom men and horses are to be quartered. This order will show the number of men and horses to be received, and whether food and forage is or is not to be supplied.

5. On receipt of the billeting orders, the officer or non-commissioned officer in charge of the billeting party will issue them in proper proportion to the representative of each company, who will be given instructions regarding the posting of warnings outside infected buildings, special arrangements for watering, etc., and the place to meet the officer or non-commissioned officer when the billets have been inspected. The men of the party will then proceed to the houses and stables allotted to their respective formations, will inspect and mark the billets, and will hand the billeting orders to occupiers. They will mark clearly with chalk on the door the names of officers, the number of men, and of horses the building is to hold, and the command—*e.g.*, company—to which it is allotted, official abbreviations being used. The marks must be removed before marching off.

6. In the meantime the officer (or non-commissioned officer) will select and mark the position of the regimental headquarters, guard-room, alarm-post, sick inspection room, gun and transport parks, etc., and will ascertain the most suitable lines for communicating with neighbouring units, and the best roads into and out of the billeting area. This completed, he will if possible prepare for the information of the regimental commander a sketch showing the allotment of billets to the unit, and giving details regarding roads and communications.

7. On reassembling his men, he will notify them of the



positions of the headquarters, guard, etc., and a proportion will be despatched to convey this information to companies, and to guide them to their billets. In allotting billets, regard will be had both to the comfort of the men and the interests of the inhabitants. Both sides of a street should be allotted to the same unit to prevent confusion in case of alarm. Roads and communications must never be blocked. Staff offices should be on main communications and easily found. Billets may have to be readjusted after the troops have settled into them.

8. When time is not available for the above procedure, the troops will be halted outside their billeting areas. Meanwhile a party from each brigade area will proceed to the mayor or other official, to whom a billeting demand will be presented, and whose co-operation in the allotment of billets will be requested. The local authority will then take steps to notify to the inhabitants that troops will be billeted on them, and will promulgate any military orders to be observed. At the same time the billeting party will roughly allot the accommodation, areas being assigned to the larger units, and these in their turn allotting certain streets or groups of houses to their units.

**9. General Rules in Billets.**—(i) **Officers' Rounds.**—Officers will visit the billets of their men and their horses' stables at irregular intervals, at least once by day and once by night.

(ii) **Control of Inhabitants.**—If necessary, the inhabitants should be disarmed and forbidden to leave their houses after a certain hour; the streets should be patrolled to see that this order is obeyed. It may be necessary to take hostages for their good behaviour. Inhabitants who have leave to be out after dark should carry lights.

(iii) From the moment the advanced billeting parties enter a village or farm, precautions must be taken to prevent the inhabitants conveying information to the enemy. The local telephone system must be at once controlled.



(iv) All ranks should be warned against talking on military matters in the presence of inhabitants, against leaving letters or papers about, and of the importance of taking every possible precaution against any leakage of information. Military tribunals should be established to deal with any infractions by the inhabitants of the orders issued concerning them, and with any offences committed against the troops.

(v) **Liquor, Arms, Fire.**—All houses where liquor is obtainable must be placed under control. In every house occupied by the troops, at least one man must be specially detailed to guard the arms. Arms are not to be piled or left outside. As a precaution against fire, and also to prevent signalling to the enemy by means of lights, directions should be issued controlling the use of fires and lights, both by the troops and by the inhabitants. It may sometimes be necessary to establish special fire pickets.

(vi) **Defence.**—When the enemy is within striking distance, the villages in the front line should be prepared for defence against surprise, and a portion of the troops in them kept in a state of constant readiness, so that the defences may be rapidly occupied. As troops in billets are usually dispersed over a wide area, an *alarm signal* should be arranged for use in the event of the troops being required to turn out suddenly.

**10. Close Billets.**—Close billets are adopted when a greater state of readiness is required than is possible in ordinary billets. For this reason, tactical considerations invariably have precedence over considerations of comfort in close billets, and arms and units should never be mixed. In allotting close billets, every form of shelter should be fully utilized. It should be remembered that a bad billet is preferable to the best bivouac. Close billets will, normally, be used for short periods only, and it is not, therefore, necessary to consider the interests of the inhabitants to the same



extent as in ordinary billets. Where close billets have to be occupied for any length of time, as in the case of sieges, it is advisable to remove the inhabitants, and accommodate them outside the immediate zone of operations. In other respects the instructions for billets apply to close billets.

### Section 15.—Camps and Bivouacs.

**1. Site.**—The site for a camp or bivouac should be dry, and on grass if possible. Steep slopes must be avoided, but gentle slopes facilitate drainage. Large woods with undergrowth, low meadows, the bottoms of narrow valleys, and newly-turned soil, are apt to be unhealthy. Clay is usually damp. Ravines and watercourses are dangerous sites, as a sudden fall of rain may convert them into large streams. Sites of old camping-grounds should, if possible, be avoided.

**2.** A good water-supply is essential, but considerations of safety may necessitate a camp, or bivouac, being placed at some distance from it. Other points to be considered are, the facilities which a site offers for obtaining shelter, fuel, forage and straw.

**3. Arrangements at the End of a March.**—(i) A staff officer, usually accompanied by some mounted police, will be sent forward to select, in conjunction with an engineer and a medical officer, and with due regard to tactical considerations, water-supply (Sec. 18), etc., the ground where the force is to pass the night. He will make all necessary arrangements for the reception of the troops on their arrival.

(ii) When the column arrives within two or three miles of its destination, staff officers of brigades, etc., accompanied by representatives of their units, will ride ahead, receive instructions concerning arrangements for the night, lead their units on arrival direct to the ground allotted to them, and explain the arrangements to commanders of units.



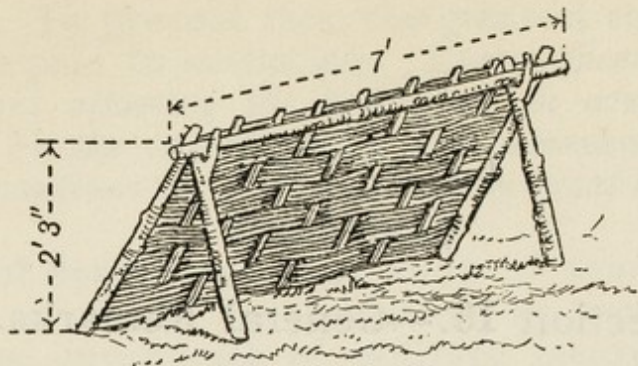
(iii) When ground is allotted, each commander must be informed of any localities or depots outside his own area on which he may draw for water, fuel, forage, straw, and other supplies. Each commander should be informed, also, which roads he is at liberty to use, and what special defensive, police, or sanitary measures he is to take.

**4. Camp Organization and Routine.**—Information under these heads, applicable to camps for a battalion or smaller units, will be found in Chapter VI. of this book and in the Appendix.

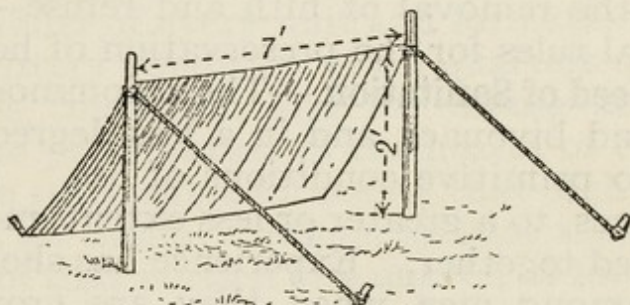
**5. Bivouacs.**—(i) By day infantry pile or ground arms on the alarm posts, articles of equipment being laid by the arms. By night men will invariably rest with their arms and equipment by them, and may, if necessary, sleep fully equipped.

(ii) **Bivouac Shelters.**—When no other materials than earth and brushwood are available, a comfortable bivouac for twelve men can be formed, in dry weather, by digging a shallow circle in the earth, with a diameter of 18 feet or thereabouts, and piling up the earth displaced so as to form a wall 2 feet or 3 feet high all round the circle excavated. The men lie down like the spokes of a wheel in this walled hollow, with their feet towards the centre. Branches of trees, or brushwood firmly stuck upright into the earthen wall, improve the shelter. Other types of bivouac shelters are shown in Figs. 13, 14, and 15.

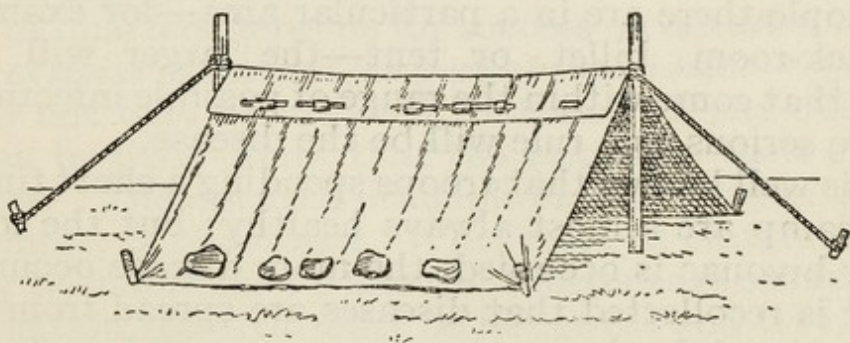




**Fig. 13.**—Two forked sticks are driven into the ground, with a pole resting on them. Branches are then laid resting on the pole, thick end uppermost, at an angle of about 45 degrees, and the screen made good with smaller branches, ferns, etc. A hurdle may be supported and treated in a similar way.



**Fig. 14.**—A waterproof sheet, blanket, or piece of canvas, secured by poles and string.



**Fig. 15.**—A *tent d'abri*, for four men, formed with two blankets or waterproof sheets laced together at the ridge, the remaining two blankets being available for cover inside.



## CHAPTER V

### SANITATION

#### Section 16.—General Remarks.

**1. Definition of Sanitation.**—The true definition of sanitation means the *preservation of health*, or, in other words, the *prevention of disease*. This chapter, therefore, is not confined to those subjects with which the word sanitation is usually associated—namely, scavenging, conservancy, and the removal of filth and refuse—but also deals with general rules for the preservation of health.

**2. The Need of Sanitation.**—The accommodation of troops in camps and bivouacs, and in a less degree in billets, is a reversion to primitive conditions of life. Under all these circumstances, to a greater or less extent, men are unavoidably crowded together. Experience has shown that disease increases among men when they are crowded together. Whether the infection is spread through the air, by personal contact, by water, by food, by insects, or from latrines, the more people there are in a particular area—for example, in a barrack-room, billet, or tent—the larger will be the number that come within the range of possible infection, and the more serious as a rule will be the disease.

**3.** It is well known that troops spending a short time only in any camp are almost always healthy; but the longer a camp or bivouac is occupied, the more disease occurs in it. When it is recollected that diseases are spread from person to person by defective conservancy, personal contact, and infected food and water, it is evident that the conditions of life in quarters are almost ideal for encouraging their dis-



semination. To prevent this, the greatest care and attention must be paid to sanitation. *Every officer is responsible that all orders affecting the health of an army are rigidly carried out by the troops under his command. Neglect of sanitary precautions inevitably results in great loss of life and efficiency.*

**4. Study of Sanitation.**—*The study of sanitation and the preservation of health is incumbent on every officer and soldier.* The importance of sanitary measures, whereby health is preserved, cannot be over-estimated. Successful prevention of disease demands the co-operation of every individual, whether officer or man, and forms an essential part of every scheme designed with that object. The sanitary organization of the army is based on the principle that the commander of every unit and formation is responsible for the sanitary condition of all quarters or localities occupied by his command, and for taking all measures necessary for the preservation of the health of those under him. He is also responsible for seeing that each officer and soldier observes all sanitary orders, and for the good order and cleanliness of that portion of a quarter or locality under his charge, irrespective of the period for which the latter may be occupied.

**5.** It is desirable to emphasize the fact that the sanitary control of quarters depends for success on *attention to details and the exercise of care on the part of individuals.* These are required not only of the men, but also of the officer; for there can be little doubt that the men take their cue from the officer. The essential principle of sanitation in quarters, as elsewhere, is *cleanliness.* This state of cleanliness must not only be maintained while the quarters are occupied, but on evacuation the area must be left sweet and tidy, so that those coming after may not suffer from a heritage of filth. *The absence of flies is the surest index of cleanliness, for if there is no filth to feed upon flies will not be present.*



**6. Training of Cadets.**—(i) It is clear from the foregoing paragraphs that knowledge of the laws of hygiene and sanitation, and practice in applying them to various conditions, is an important part of the training of both officers and men. These subjects therefore should form part of the training of cadet officers and cadets, and the conditions of life in camps and billets afford a good opportunity for carrying out practical training in them. This instruction should not be confined to observing the rules of hygiene and sanitation, but should include lectures on these subjects, given, if possible, by the medical officer attached to the corps. In all well-trained corps sanitation and hygiene will, of course, form part of the annual course of instruction, and not be reserved as special subjects for training in camps and billets.

(ii) **Special Classes and Examination.**—Owing to the vital importance of these subjects, special classes of instruction in hygiene and sanitation should be arranged for cadets who are attending camp for the first time, and their practical knowledge should be tested by oral or written examinations *before* they are allowed to attend camp.

### Section 17.—Clothing and Equipment.

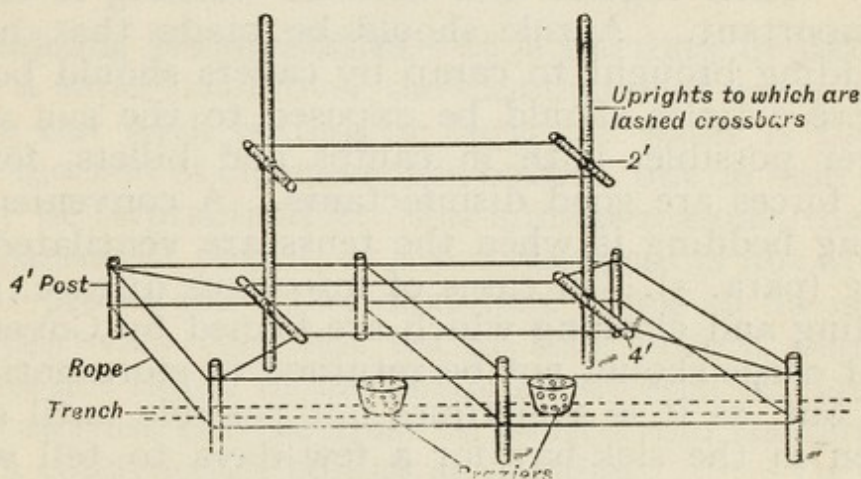
**1. Clothing.**—Clothing should be adapted to the temperature, and when instruction involves physical exertion the garments worn should be light, and not too tight in any part. Whenever possible, clothing which has become saturated with perspiration after hard exercise or in hot weather, or which has become wet from rain, should be changed. This is especially important with regard to socks and underclothing. Clothing worn by day should not be worn by night.

**2. Cleaning and Care of Clothes.**—Clothes should be brushed regularly to remove dust, mud, and dirt. Both clothes and boots should be cleaned outside tents and outside



rooms in billets when possible. Kits may with advantage be aired and spread out in the sun periodically with bedding when possible. Underclothing should be changed at least once a week, and more frequently in hot weather. If damp from perspiration, it should be hung up to air or dried before being folded up. Clothes should never be folded up and put away if they are damp or dirty. Directions for repairing and washing garments, removing stains, and for darning socks, will be found in the Appendix.

**3. Drying Clothes.**—(i) In the absence of sun or wind, clothes may be dried in camp by the following methods:



**Fig. 16.—Frame for drying Clothes in Camp.**

Pitch as large a tent as is available; dig one or more holes, some 2 feet deep and 3 feet in diameter, within the tent, sufficiently far from the poles and canvas to minimize the risk of fire. Line the holes with fairly large stones, and carry them up so as to make parapets round the hole, to a convenient height. If a fire be lighted in the hole and carefully tended, the stones will soon radiate a good deal of heat. The wet clothing should be hung round the hole as well as the appliances on the spot will allow, and the tent shut up.



In place of a tent, a rough shelter can be built, or use made of some outhouse on a farm.

(ii) An alternative plan is to rig up a simple framework, as shown in Fig. 16, by means of ropes, cords, or wire. This should be erected either within a large tent or under some shelter, and one or more braziers, improvised from buckets or tins, full of glowing coke or charcoal, placed at suitable intervals near to the wet clothing.

**4. Blankets and Bedding.**—Blankets and bedding very quickly become dirty under the conditions of life in camps and billets. These articles retain infection for considerable periods. Their regular and efficient washing is therefore very important. A rule should be made that blankets and bedding brought to camp by cadets should be clean, and these articles should be exposed to the sun and air whenever possible, both in camps and billets, for these natural forces are good disinfectants. A convenient time for airing bedding is when the tents are ventilated every morning (para. 5). In cases of infectious disease, articles of bedding and clothing which are loaned by Government to cadet corps should not be returned to store until disinfected; but, as it is sometimes not possible until a cadet has been in the sick-bay for a few days to tell whether the disease is an infectious one, the clothing of all cadets admitted to the sick-bay should be kept separate until it is known that they do not require disinfection.

**5. Ventilation in Tents.**—In the bell tent ventilation is provided by three small openings at the top. These, however, are not sufficient to change the air in the tent sufficiently often to keep it pure. It must be remembered that a bell tent with its full complement of fifteen men allows only 12 square feet and 32 cubic feet for each man, against 60 square feet and 600 cubic feet of space which he is allowed in barracks. Thus, tents must be kept as well ventilated as possible. Tent-flies are to be looped up the



first thing every morning—in wet weather on the leeward side only.

**6. Striking Tents.**—In a standing camp tents will be struck periodically, and the ground underneath well swept and left exposed for some hours at least, the tents being eventually replaced on their former sites. Tents should never be pitched for occupation in the intervals of ground between these sites.

**7. Food in Tents.**—Whenever it can be avoided, food should not be eaten in the tents, for fragments always collect on the ground, where they decompose and attract flies.

**8. Cleansing Water-Bottles.**—It is the duty of officers to exercise a supervision over the cleanliness of water-bottles. Washing out with boiling or very hot water is the most rational method of cleansing the bottles, but on field service this may be impracticable. For similar reasons, the use of permanganate of potash or other chemical is not always a practical procedure. The next best thing to do is to fill the bottles with very hot tea at least once a week, and leave this hot liquid in the bottle for at least an hour; but to be of any use the tea must be poured into the bottles in as near a condition of boiling as possible.

**9.** The practice of attempting to scour out the inside of a bottle by placing stones, sand, or gravel, in it, and then shaking, followed by washing out with water, should be discouraged; the sand or stones are usually dirty, and the last state of the water-bottle will be worst than the first. In circumstances where there is an ample supply of clean water, the ordinary washing out with three or four fillings of this water is a reliable procedure, but this and similar methods must be carried out under intelligent supervision. Water should never be kept in the bottles when the water-bottle is not in daily use.



### Section 18.—Water, Food, and Milk.

**1. Daily Allowance of Water.**—The following information will guide officers in estimating the minimum quantity of drinking water which will be required daily for their commands. A man, to make up the loss of fluid from the body, requires from  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 5 pints of water daily, of which about one-third is contained in solid food. Half a gallon, therefore, will be required for drinking, and the same amount for cooking—that is to say, a gallon a head should be the daily allowance for men. In tropical countries this amount will not be sufficient, and may be increased.

**2. Sources and Protection of Water.**—Water lends itself readily as a medium for carrying various dangerous diseases. The water-supply of camps, therefore, must be the subject of the strictest attention and care. Pure water is usually procurable locally in Great Britain, but occasionally it may have to be carried from a distance. It may be drawn from wells, springs, streams, rivers, lakes, ponds, or rain-water tanks. In all these cases it may be polluted at its source, during carriage, during temporary storage, and during its distribution in cooking-pots, water-bottles, jugs, etc.

**3. Water-Supply.**—The following general rules are laid down for the guidance of officers in regard to water-supply:

(i) From whatever source the water is drawn, it must be protected from contamination.

(ii) Drinking must not be allowed from the taps, rims, or spouts, of any drinking-water receptacle.

(iii) **Marking Water-Supply with Coloured Flags and Notice Boards.** Where more than one source of supply is to be used, the best should be set apart for drinking and cooking water, and marked with *white* flags. Watering-places for animals must be marked with *blue* flags, and washing and bathing places with *red* flags. Alternatively,



the object for which the water is to be used may be denoted clearly on notice boards. *Washing must never be allowed at springs or wells used for drinking purposes.*

**4. Stand-Pipes** from which water can be drawn from a pure source provide the best water-supply.

**5. Rainwater.**—Rainwater is seldom used in the army for domestic purposes. The uncertainty of the rainfall and the difficulty of collecting it free from impurities, except from specially-prepared surfaces, makes it quite unsuitable unless other sources are not available.

**6. Wells.**—Artesian or deep wells are generally protected, and are probably safe sources. Wells are generally divided into two classes, shallow and deep, a *shallow well* being one which taps the subsoil or ground water above the highest impermeable stratum; a *deep well*, one sunk through an impervious stratum to reach water held up by a deeper impervious layer.

**7.** Contamination may reach wells and springs by being washed or dropped into them from the surface, or it may reach them through the subsoil; hence any source of contamination on the area drained by them is a possible danger. As in other cases, it is human contamination that is to be feared, and the nearer this is the greater the danger.

**8.** The actual distance or area through which contaminating material can travel or spread in the subsoil water varies within wide limits with the nature of the soil, and, in the case of wells, with the amount of water drawn from them; but it is never safe to regard this area, in the case of wells, as less than a circle 25 yards in diameter. In very porous or fissured ground it may be more. The soil acts as a filter, and the number of bacteria found in it diminishes the further one gets from the surface, very few being found at a depth of 5 feet; and the further water travels through the soil, the more complete is the filtration. It is obvious, then, that the greater the distance from any source of con-



tamination, the less the danger; and that deep wells, the water of which must have come from some distance, are less likely to be contaminated than shallow wells.

9. In Europe, among the commonest sources of contamination of wells are cesspits and midden closets, which are holes sunk in the ground to receive sewage. Besides these, any foul matter on the ground round a well or spring may get into the water by soakage through the soil. All wells and springs, unless properly protected and closed, are liable to pollution by foul surface water flowing directly into them. Another very common danger is the use of any casual vessel for drawing water. Such vessels, if coming from dwellings in which there are cases of cholera, enteric fever, dysentery, or diarrhœa, can easily infect the water with the germs of these diseases.

10. All wells should be protected by a fence enclosing an area not less than 25 yards in diameter. In the case of springs on a slope, protection need be only at the sides and above. To protect a well from contamination—(a) the mouth should be one or two feet above the level of the ground, and the ground round the mouth should be sloped outwards; (b) if the well is a small one, the mouth should be closed with a tightly-fitting cover with a manhole in it; and (c) a pump should be provided at the side, and not directly over the well, the water being pumped to a tank outside the fenced area, and drawn off by taps.

11. **Surface Water.**—The suitability of surface water can best be judged by the amount and proximity of any possible sources of human contamination on the land which drains towards them. Small collections of water, such as ponds and streams *in inhabited places*, are never fit for drinking purposes without purification, as any contamination which they contain is likely to be of recent origin, and will be but little diluted. Lakes of large size generally provide a safe water, for any contamination which they



receive is much diluted. Contamination by the troops themselves must be particularly guarded against, special care being taken that the drainage of latrines, urinals, washing-places, trenches in which night-soil or refuse are buried, and of animal lines, does not flow into the lake.

**12. If Running Water** is not available, a rough barbed-wire fence or some other form of fencing should be placed round the water-supply, to keep out animals, which should in this case be watered by bucket or nosebag.

**13. When Ponds, Tanks, or Lakes,** are used as sources of water-supply, the place selected for drawing drinking and cooking water should be where it is least likely to be contaminated, and preferably where there is a good depth of water, so that mud will not be stirred up. Another spot will be set apart for watering animals. Bathing and washing of any description in the lake or pond must be prevented. Water for these purposes must be taken away in empty biscuit tins or other receptacles to selected places, from which the drainage will not flow back to the source.

**14. Rivers** vary enormously in the purity of their water. This can best be judged of by the character of the country through which they flow, and by their size. It may safely be said that no river water can be considered safe for at least five or six miles below any town the drainage of which enters it. When it is necessary to use such water it should be purified in some way.

**15. Streams.**—If water is obtained from a stream, horses will be watered below the place where troops obtain their drinking water, but above bathing and washing places. Patrolling by mounted men will often be necessary for some distance above the spot where the drinking water is drawn. The spot selected for drawing water for drinking and cooking purposes should be well above the camp. It should be at a place where the current is good and the depth considerable, and the same precautions should be



adopted for marking and safeguarding it as have already been described. A place lower down stream will be marked off for watering animals, and another still farther down for ablution and washing of clothes. If other troops are using the river lower down, special arrangements for washing and watering animals away from the river, similar to those described for ponds and lakes, are often necessary.

**16.** Whatever the source of water-supply, if many animals have to be watered and the frontage is small, hours for watering and the route to and from watering-places will be laid down for each unit. Three to five minutes may be taken as the average time for watering an animal.

**17.** The water from small streams must be collected as near their source as possible. If the valley forming the collecting area is a small one, the part above the water-supply should be put out of bounds, and animals kept from grazing on it. In all cases the stream should be examined as high up as possible to discover any possible sources of pollution, and any carcasses or filth should be cleared from the collecting area and stream.

**18.** If the stream is very small, a dam should be made, and the water led over a weir into vessels or pumped out from above the dam. When dippers are used there is much danger of contaminating the water. The dipper is usually left on the muddy soil by the side of the dam, and may thus pollute the water with dirt from men and animals.

**19.** When drinking water is obtained from a running stream, no washing should be allowed above the place where the drinking water is drawn.

**20. Springs.**—Springs frequently issue from the side of a hill, and the flow of water is not very rapid. The water usually comes from a number of crevices, and the ground for some yards round should be fenced off, and a basin cut in the face of the hill to collect the water, which may then be led into vessels by means of an extemporized spout.



**21.** Springs should be protected in a similar way to wells. The water from a spring should be conducted directly into a closed tank, and drawn off by taps. Failing this or some similar improvised arrangement, a spout or spouts should be arranged so as to obtain the water from the spring. In no case should it be collected in open vessels or in hollows scooped out of the ground, for if this is done the water is certain to be fouled either by drainage from above or by persons, who come to draw water, washing in it or dipping infected vessels into it. If for want of time or for other reason springs and wells cannot be adequately protected, a special water party should be detailed to fill the vessels, all other persons being kept at a distance.

**22. Distribution of Water.**—Water may be contaminated not only at its source, but during distribution or storage. Water should never be distributed through camps in open channels. In quarters, water is distributed in carts, iron tanks, and barrels, in all of which dust and dirt are liable to accumulate. Water-carts, tanks, and barrels, must be frequently cleaned and periodically disinfected. To enable this to be done, they must have sufficiently large openings to allow of every part being reached, and these openings must have dust-proof covers.

**23. Receptacles for storing Water.**—Tanks or vessels in which drinking water is stored should be raised off the ground and provided with taps. In barracks, tanks used by troops will be periodically cleaned out.

**24. Cleaning Receptacles.**—All receptacles in which water is distributed or stored must be thoroughly cleansed at frequent intervals. The following directions for cleansing vessels in which drinking water is stored are taken from the *Field Service Pocket-Book*: Use mixture of 16 grains of permanganate of potash to 1 gallon of water, or, roughly, 1 teaspoonful to 3 gallons. If after rinsing the mixture comes out discoloured, it shows cleansing was necessary.



The process of rinsing should be repeated till the mixture comes out with pink colour not destroyed.

**25.** Both potassium permanganate and chlorinated lime, being relatively non-poisonous, are very useful for disinfecting tanks, water-carts, or other receptacles, when they have contained water which is suspected of being contaminated. Sufficient should be added to make a solution of 1 in 500 of permanganate or 1 in 1,000 of chlorinated lime; every part of the interior should be thoroughly wetted with the solution, and after an hour the water may be run to waste.

**26. Purification of Water.**—Different methods of purifying water and the description of various kinds of filters will be found in chapter v. of the *Manual of Elementary Military Hygiene* (1912). If necessary, measures for the purification of water must be taken in camps and billets, under the advice and supervision of the medical officer or of a doctor attached to cadet corps. A simple and effective method of purifying water is to boil it. Care, however, must be taken to see that it is subsequently kept in clean receptacles, and protected from contamination by dust or in any other way while it is being stored or distributed for the purpose of drinking or cooking.

**27. Inspection of Food** (Sect. 38).—Both disease and poison may be conveyed into the system of human beings by food if it is not quite wholesome or fresh. The means of prevention are to insure that food has come from a reliable source, and to inspect it carefully for any signs of decomposition. Although cooking is a safeguard against those forms of food-poisoning in which bacteria are the cause, it is not a certain one, for the temperature in the middle of a joint while being cooked is not always high enough to kill the bacteria, besides which cooking will not destroy the poisons already formed in the meat, and the bacteria may even have got into it after cooking.



**28. Tinned Foods.**—Tinned food may be especially dangerous to health, and needs careful inspection. In examining tinned foods, it should always be noted if the tin is *bulged* or *blown*; this is the result of gases formed by putrefaction of the contents. The processes by which most tinned provisions are prepared involve one, or sometimes two, holes in the tin; if there are three holes in it, it is an indication that putrefaction has occurred, and a third perforation has been made to allow the gas to escape. The third hole is often near the rim, and can be felt under the label. A fresh-looking label does not prove that the contents are necessarily fresh. Tins are readily perforated by rust, especially if crushed and exposed to the action of sea-water. Such tins should always be looked upon with suspicion.

**29. Contamination of Food.**—Diseases such as enteric fever, dysentery, cholera, and diarrhoea, may be transmitted by means of food contaminated by water, flies, dust, or infected persons. Uncooked foods, generally speaking, are more dangerous than cooked. The preventive measures consist of the protection of food from any of these forms of contamination before, during, and after preparation. To give effect to these measures, the strictest supervision over food-supplies is necessary, not only over those supplied as part of the ration, but also those produced in bakeries, dairies, and mineral-water factories, those sold in canteens or refreshment tents, or supplied by contractors or hawkers.

**30. Rules for preventing Contamination of Food.**—The following rules for preventing the contamination of food should be observed in camps and billets:

(i) Food should not be stored, kept, or eaten, in tents or rooms in billets. If this for any reason is temporarily unavoidable, it should be placed in a covered jar, tin box, or other receptacle.



(ii) The hands and clothes of all persons who handle food or cooking utensils should be scrupulously clean.

(iii) All bread and meat stores should be clean, well ventilated, and inaccessible to flies.

(iv) Kitchens and their fittings, such as tables, shelves, as well as cooking utensils, should be kept clean and tidy.

(v) Flies, which carry minute portions of filth and germs on their feet, contaminating all they touch, should as far as possible be prevented from gaining access to kitchens. They breed only in filth, and *where there are many flies it is a certain sign that there is filth and dirt in the near neighbourhood.*

(vi) Cooks and their assistants must be personally clean, and wear clean, washable overclothing.

(vii) Anyone recently recovering from any infectious disease, more especially from enteric fever, should not be allowed to act as cooks, mess-orderlies, or in any capacity connected with the serving of food.

**31. Milk.**—Milk, if contaminated, is particularly dangerous to health, as it is an excellent culture medium for bacteria, and may convey various serious diseases. The commonest ways in which milk is contaminated are from contact with infected persons employed in dairies, from infected water used either for cleaning dairy utensils or for adulterating milk, and by flies. The preventive measures consist of insuring that milk comes from a reliable source, that it is stored in clean receptacles, and carefully protected from dust, flies, and as far as possible from any contact with persons handling it during storage and distribution. Milk may be sterilized and rendered safe by being boiled. Care, however, must be taken, as in the case of water purified by boiling, to see that the milk is not subsequently contaminated in any way.



### Section 19.—Disposal of Excreta.

**1. General Remarks.**—The proper disposal of excreta is of vital importance to health, and presents fewer difficulties than might be expected. It has been pointed out that, as soon as a unit occupies the bivouac or camp site selected for it, it is the duty of the sanitary personnel to prepare latrines and urinals without delay in the area allotted for these places. If the construction of latrines is unavoidably delayed, selected places should be marked off for the reception of excreta, to which men should be directed to go. At the earliest opportunity all excrement so deposited must be buried or covered with earth by the sanitary personnel.

**2. Latrines.**—Latrines, as already stated, should be located to leeward of the bivouac or camp, and in such a position that no possible fouling of the water-supply can result. The assistance of the sanitary officer, or such other officer of the medical service as may be exercising sanitary supervision of the command, should be obtained when the exact position of these places is being selected. Latrines and urinals should be as far removed from the part occupied by the men as is compatible with convenience—under ordinary conditions this may be put at 100 yards. The latrines must be placed as far as possible away from the kitchens and other places where food is prepared or stored. They must never be placed in or near gullies which, when it rains, discharge into the water-supply, nor in any situation the drainage or filtration from which may possibly reach, and so pollute, the water-supply.

**3. Accommodation.**—The extent of latrine accommodation provided will vary according to whether the area is for temporary or permanent occupation. For ordinary camps it should be 5 per cent. These figures may be taken to represent either yards or actual seats, according to circum-



stances. The multiplication of latrines is undesirable, as one or two fairly large latrines are easier of control than several smaller ones, and the pollution of the soil is more localized.

**4. Types of Latrines.**—For temporary quarters the usual latrine is a trench with or without a seat. These trenches may be either long and deep or short and shallow. The latter are always preferable, but the former may be required if there is not enough ground for shallow trenches, as, for example, when the minimum camp space has to be occupied for several days, or when additional latrine accommodation is required in billets, and space is restricted.

**5. Long and Deep Trenches.**—(i) If the long and deep trench system be used, a trench 5 yards long, 3 feet deep, and 16 inches wide, is the necessary allowance for each hundred men. The greatest care should be taken to prevent the water-supply being fouled by these trenches, either directly by soakage, or indirectly by surface water, in wet weather, flowing from the trench or its immediate neighbourhood. With this system the contents of latrine trenches should be covered with 2 inches of dry earth daily. The use of kerosene-oil and lime will assist in keeping flies away.

(ii) **Disadvantages.**—The great disadvantage about latrines of this kind is the fact that the front edge of the trench soon gets wetted with urine, and the front of the latrine rapidly becomes a urine-sodden quagmire, the mud from which gets carried back into the lines or tents on the men's boots, which may give rise to the danger of infection.

**6. Short and Shallow Trenches.**—(i) This system whenever possible should be adopted in preference to the long and deep trench. It consists of a series of short parallel trenches, across which the user straddles, and readily directs both solid and liquid excreta clear into the cavity without soiling the sides. Each trench on the short and shallow system should be 3 feet long, 1 foot deep, and 1 foot wide,



and the interspace between these trenches not more than 3 feet—preferably  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet, if the nature of the soil permits—so as to preclude the men using the trench otherwise than in the straddling attitude. The interspace of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet is ample when the soil is firm, and allows plenty of room for another trench to be dug in it. A 3-foot interspace gives more room between trenches, but entails a longer frontage and a correspondingly greater length of screen. In stiff clay the interspace cannot be used on the second day, as the urine, not being able to soak away, keeps the ground soft. It may generally be used a week later if necessary.

(ii) **Advantages.**—These short trenches are far cleaner than the long type, they entail less labour to dig, and are more efficiently filled up and renewed. If available, a seat in the form of a stout pole can be laid at right angles to the trenches, supported on forked uprights. A back-rest may be formed by a similar pole, but is often omitted.

(iii) **Number.**—It is usual to allow five short and shallow trenches for every hundred men; but when the numbers of men are 500 or upwards, 3 per cent. of trenches suffice—that is, 500 men need no more than fifteen trenches. As a rule a trench lasts only one day. A trench can be made to last longer if the contents, which tend to get heaped up in the centre, are levelled off, and if the earth used for covering the excreta be finely broken up.

(iv) **Method of Construction.**—The method of laying out these short and shallow trenches will be gathered from Figs. 17 and 18. Supposing the number of men for whom latrine trenches are required is 200, and the probable length of occupation is seven days, for this small number we must allow 5 per cent., or ten trenches daily. The frontage in yards required daily may be taken to be six times the number of hundreds of men present—that is, 200 men will need 12 yards of latrine frontage. The depth for latrine area is two-thirds the number of days' stay. In this



case, the occupation being only seven days, the required depth will be two-thirds of seven, or 4 to 5 yards.

(v) Next, suppose *B* (Fig. 17) is the base line of the camp, measure off 20 yards at right angles to *B*, and drive in a peg at *C*. From *C* take the line *CD* parallel to the base of the camp, and 12 yards long. This line *CD* equals the line of the first row of trenches. From *C*, along *CD*, measure off 1 foot and  $2\frac{1}{2}$ -foot spaces alternately, marking the spots with a spade till there are ten 1-foot spaces. From *C* measure 3 feet, *CE*. From *E*, and parallel to *CD*, mark

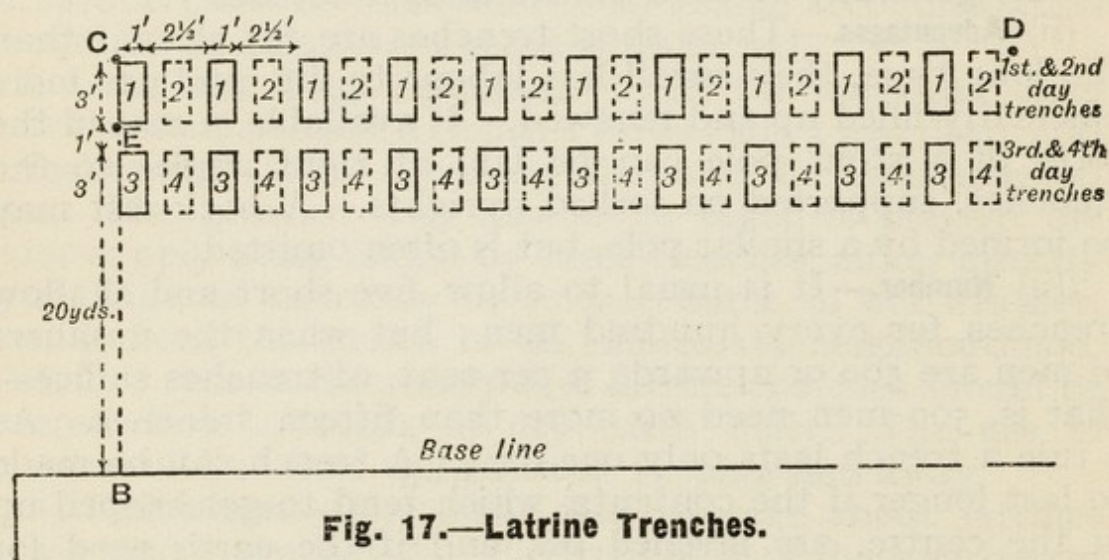


Fig. 17.—Latrine Trenches.

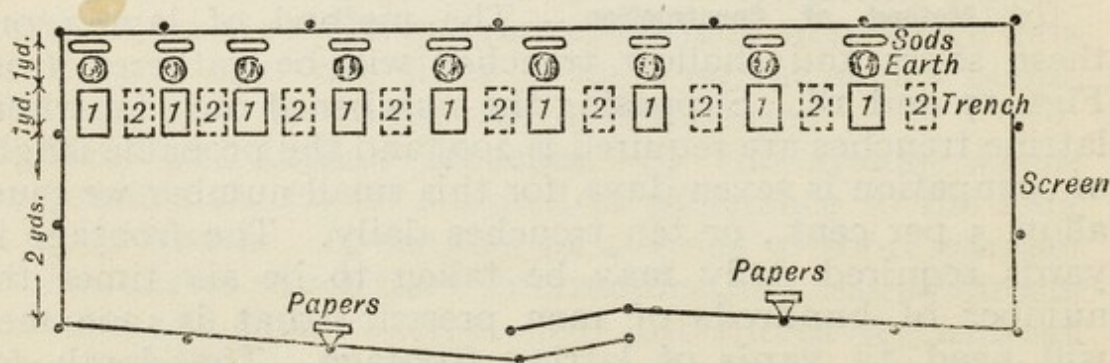


Fig. 18.—Latrine Trenches.



off alternate spaces as before, and join up. This outlines the first row of trenches. Next remove the upper sod of each trench, in one piece as far as possible, and put it about 3 feet behind the trench (Fig. 18). Excavate the trenches till they are 1 foot deep, keeping the sides vertical, and placing the excavated earth immediately behind the trenches, between it and the sod. This earth must be finely broken up.

**7. Screens.**—The latrines should, if possible, be surrounded with a canvas screen, the back being 3 feet behind, and the fore-part at least 6 feet in front, of the trenches, with an entrance in the centre of the front having a 6-foot overlap (Fig. 18). The length of screening necessary for 1,000 men on a 5 per cent. basis will be 130 yards; if twenty-five trenches are used, they will require 70 yards.

**8. Daily Arrangement.**—(i) On the second day fill in the trenches with the remaining excavated earth, replace the sods, tread and beat down firmly. Dig the second day's trenches in the interspaces of the first row. On the third day dig a row of trenches similar to and parallel with the first row, and 1 foot in front of them. Move the screening forward so as to surround them properly. Repeat the construction of trenches on the subsequent days in a precisely similar manner.

(ii) **Drainage.**—After the latrine has been prepared, examine the slope of the ground, and if necessary dig a shallow drain to divert surface water from the trenches, taking care that it does not flow on to the ground in front of the trenches which will have to be used later on. This precaution applies also to urinals.

**9. Administration of Latrines.**—The proper administration of the latrine system is a most important factor in the preservation of the health of men living in quarters. There is one rule for the successful working of these places, and that is that all excreta must be covered up as soon as



possible with earth, not only for mere purposes of deodorization, but to preclude the access to it of flies, which are one of the chief means of conveying the germs associated with this filth to men and their food. In bivouacs or camps, where the ordinary trench latrine only exists, a satisfactory solution is not an easy matter. In the first place, the available soil is inconveniently placed, the provision of a sufficiency of spades or scoops is not always practicable, and the surroundings of the place conduce to hurry on the part of the individual.

**10. Inspection.**—The remedy lies in educating the men to realize the necessity for covering up their own excreta with earth, and in placing a sanitary patrol, drawn from the unit as a whole, over the latrines, with orders to inspect them at short intervals, and see that a sufficient quantity of earth is being used. The condition of all latrines should be verified personally by the orderly officer of the day at least once during each twenty-four hours.

**11. Deodorization.**—For covering the deposited excreta with earth, some kind of implement, such as a spade, scoop, empty tin, or tin-lid, should when possible be provided near each trench. Kicking the earth in with the foot is certain to be a failure, and should be discouraged.

**12. Precautions on Disuse.**—As soon as the latrine trenches have been filled in to within 6 inches of the ground-level their use should be discontinued, earth thrown in, and the turf or sods replaced. On the abandonment of a camp or bivouac all latrine trenches must be filled in, and the site marked with the letter L, made with staves or other suitable means.

**13. Removal System.**—At some large camping-grounds contracts for the removal of soil are made, and the system known as the "removal system" is carried out. The Government supply buckets, and the contractor removes the soil and supplies dry earth, which must invariably be



used. No trenches are dug when the removal system is carried out.

**14. Urinals.**—(i) Urine may spread infection. Men are on no account to urinate elsewhere than in the latrine trenches, or in urinals or pits set apart for the purpose. For day use these urinals are best placed adjacent to the latrine trenches, and within the screen, if supplied. Given a reasonably absorbent soil the urine soon disappears; but if this is not the case care must be taken to make supplementary pits. In any case, the urine-sodden soil must be covered at least three times a day with clean dry earth to protect it from flies. In all bivouacs and camps where receptacles are not provided, pits or trenches must be dug for the purposes of urination.

(ii) For night use, when urine-tubs of some sort cannot be provided, or when the day urine-pits are some distance from the tents or sleeping-places, it may be necessary to dig shallow urine-pits near the cadets' lines into which they can micturate at night; but this practice should be resorted to as rarely as possible, and the pits must be carefully filled in at dawn. Urine-tubs can easily be extemporized from empty biscuit or oil tins, which may with advantage be partly filled with grass, sawdust, earth, or any other absorbent material. These tins should be mounted on heaps of earth or stones on boxes, or on rough wooden trestles, to reduce to a minimum all chance of splashing or spilling.

**15. Camp Urinals.**—The best type of camp urinal takes the form of one or two shallow trenches, at least 2 feet wide, leading into a pit filled with large stones, the trenches being for urinating into, and the pit to take the excess which fails to soak into the soil. Roughly, two trenches, each 8 feet long, will suffice for a battalion of full strength. The trenches should have a fall of 1 inch to the foot. The catch-pit will vary in depth and size according to the soil and the



number of men using the trenches—one 3 feet deep and 8 feet in diameter in a moderately porous soil should suffice for 800 to 1,000 men. Fig. 19 shows an example of one of these urinals. The trenches will last about two days, and the pit some eight days. When foul, new trenches can be dug as radii from the pit, and the old ones filled in. If feasible, the pit should be screened off to prevent men

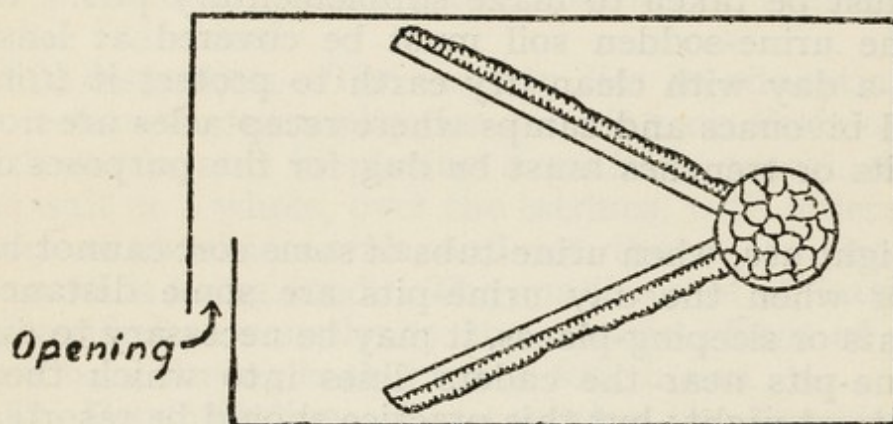


Fig. 19.—Plan of Camp Urinal.

actually micturating into it. The ground around a urinal should be burnt when another has to be dug or the quarters evacuated.

**16. General Precautions.**—Well-managed latrines and urinals in both camps and billets should be devoid of smell and free from flies, even in warm weather. *The presence of flies in these places is a sure sign that something is wrong.* All men engaged in the handling of urine-tubs, or in the care and cleaning of urinals, closets, or latrines, must remember that they are handling dangerous material capable of giving infection to either themselves or others, often both. To reduce these risks to the lowest point, men engaged on these duties should carefully wash their hands immediately on



completion of the work, and certainly before they handle food. *No men employed in cook-houses or as mess-orderlies should ever be allowed to have anything to do with the removal of urine-tubs, or with the care and cleansing of urinals or latrines.*

### Section 20.—Kitchens.

1. Kitchens should be roped off, and no unauthorized person allowed to enter them. These places require constant supervision to insure the removal of remains of food and greasy water without delay. The most important details which need attention are—(1) That the kitchens and washing-places be so located as to be handy for water, but remote from latrines, urine-pits, or other receptacles for refuse and garbage; (2) that all sullage water be made to pass readily away.

2. **Soakage-Pits.**—The latter will usually be effected by passage into soakage-pits, or, if this does not suffice, by suitable trenches. This waste water is greasy, and if allowed to pass directly on to the soil soon makes a felt-like scum, which not only impedes the soaking in of the water, but also attracts flies. A good plan is to fill the reception-pits or the upper ends of the drainage channels with coarse brushwood, bracken, or gorse, which catches and holds the grease and other organic solids, allowing the clearer liquid to run freely away into a soakage-pit, the earth at the bottom of which has been loosened by a pick (Fig. 20).

3. **Grease-Traps.**—An alternative plan is the following: Take two large biscuit-tins, and place one inside the other, the inner one resting on two or three stones, so as to leave a space between it and the outer one (Fig. 21). The inner one serves as a coarse strainer, and the outer to direct the water over and into a small pit filled with grass, heather, or brushwood, which acts as a grease-trap. From this small



pit cut a shallow trench leading to a large soakage-pit. The lower tin can be given a spout, conveniently made by cutting an inverted U- or V-shaped flap from one of the sides, turning down, and rounding off.

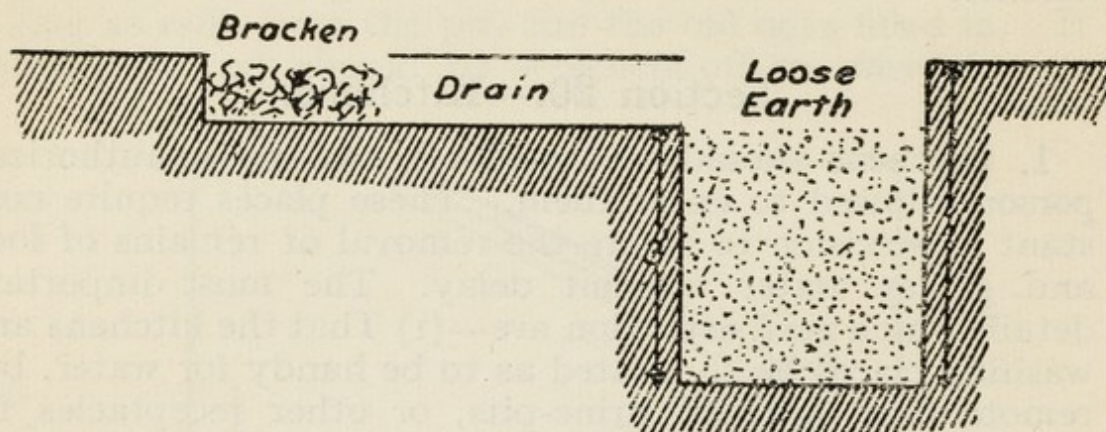


Fig. 20.—Grease-Trap for Camps.

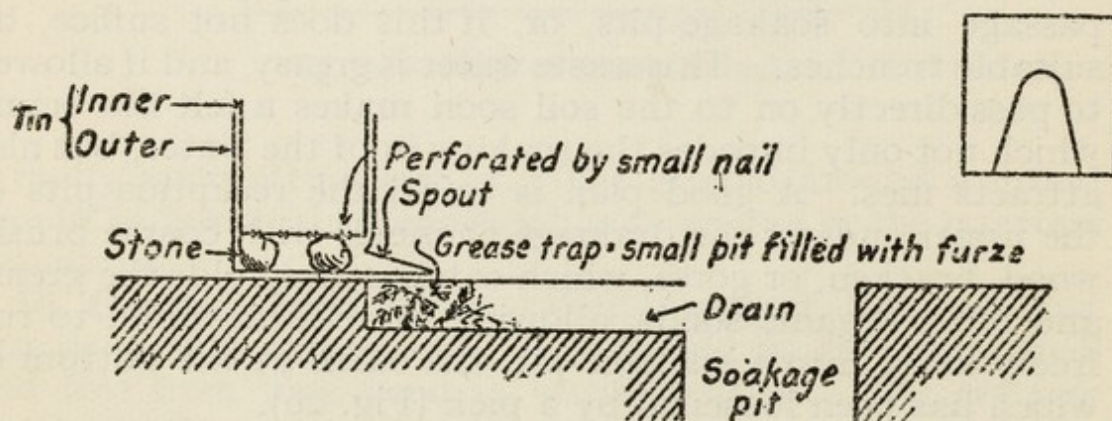


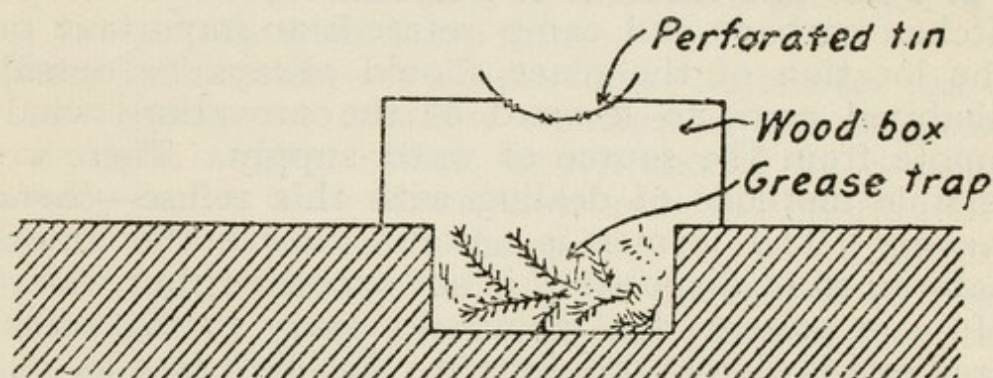
Fig. 21.—Grease-Trap for Camps. Inset shows Method of Cutting Spout.

4. A modification of the foregoing can be made by turning a box upside down over the pit or grease-trap, and cutting a hole in the bottom, into which is fitted a piece of perforated



tin (Fig. 22). In all cases the furze, grass, or brushwood, used to catch the grease must be burnt and renewed daily.

**5. Cleaning Utensils.**—At each kitchen or mess there should be a place provided for cleaning up utensils. This should have a table, or boxes to serve as a table, a straining-pit, a sufficiency of clean cloths, and a plentiful supply of hot water. If sand is used for cleaning vessels, it should previously be baked over a fire, and kept in a tin or box near the cleaning bench. Ashes from a wood-fire may be used



**Fig. 22.—Grease-Trap for Camps.**

in place of sand. The whole process should be supervised by one of the sanitary personnel.

**6.** A sufficiency of cloths for washing up should be provided, and all those used in the cook-house or sculleries should be washed daily and dried. All dishes, knives, and other utensils, used at meal-times or for food storage, should be cleaned on a table, and not placed on the floor or taken to outside taps. For scouring tea-cans, etc., clean bath-brick kept in a tin for the purpose should be used. The use of casually collected sand should be forbidden.



### Section 21.—Disposal of Refuse.

**1. Receptacles.**—In the absence of metal receptacles, such as covered dust-bins, dry refuse may be put in sacks hung on posts at the end of the lines; while kitchen garbage can be collected in tubs, barrels, or boxes, raised on stands close to the cooking-places. If it can be avoided, solid and liquid refuse should not be mixed.

**2. Place and Methods of Disposal.**—The final disposal of kitchen garbage and camp refuse is an important matter. The location of the place should always be outside the inhabited area, to leeward of the prevailing wind, and remote from the source of water-supply. There are two possible methods of dealing with this refuse—*burial* and *burning*. The former is suitable where the amount of material to be disposed of is not excessive; but when much refuse is present, the labour necessary to dig sufficiently large pits is almost prohibitive. In this case as much as possible should be destroyed by fire, and what is not burned must be buried.

**3. Removing Refuse.**—Carts or other vehicles used for the removal of refuse should be designed so as to prevent any escape of their contents. If removal is arranged for by civil contract, close supervision must be exercised to see that there is a sufficiency of suitable tubs or receptacles with covers, that the removal is made daily in proper carts, and carried out at definite times during daylight, when the movements of the scavengers can be followed. The supervision and management of all refuse receptacles is a part of the duties of the sanitary personnel.

**4. Burning Refuse.**—In theory, burning is the ideal mode of disposal in all cases, but in practice the natural dampness of the material makes it difficult. The methods for the cremation of refuse vary from the use of the com-



pany kitchen fire to the employment of specially-constructed incinerators. Where available, the use of a little mineral oil will much facilitate the destruction of garbage by fire. In other cases, the construction of a simple grate of iron rods placed on turf supports is often successful in maintaining a brisk fire when fed with camp refuse. In any devices of this kind, the great essential is to secure a draught of air under and through the material to be burnt; the damper the mass, the greater the need of air. Once the fire is started and a draught secured, it will burn, provided it is not fed too quickly with damp refuse.

**5. Camp Incinerator.**—A simple refuse destructor can be made by digging two shallow trenches intersecting each other at right angles. Each trench should be 9 inches deep, and 9 inches wide where they cross, getting gradually shallower and wider towards the ends. The length of each trench need not exceed 5 feet. Over the angles of intersection, a chimney, some 3 feet high and 3 feet in diameter, must be built of turf sods or bricks. To support the walls of the chimney where they cross the trenches, iron bands off bales or barrels may be used, or meat-tins with the bottoms knocked out. A fire can quickly be lighted with any dry material at the bottom of the shaft, and fed steadily by throwing rubbish and refuse down the top. Other types of incinerators are described in the *Manual of Elementary Military Hygiene*, 1912.

**6.** In places where boulders, or large stones, or broken bricks, are not procurable, a crematory can be made of empty tins of all kinds. The tins are stacked in heaps about 4 feet high, and on and around them is piled the miscellaneous rubbish, which is then set alight. The tins serve to keep an air-space and generate an under-draught, causing the whole heap to burn fiercely. They can be used over and over again. Ultimately all tins and broken hardware should be stacked, or preferably buried, and on no account



be left lying about to mark the site of an abandoned camping-ground.

7. The making of the above simple designs of incinerator presents little difficulty, and men should be taught their use and practised in their construction. An enormous amount of material can be disposed of in a few hours if the draught trenches or holes are kept clear, and the refuse added with ordinary care. Once a fire is well alight in one of these incinerators, even faecal material from the latrine-buckets can be destroyed by fire, provided it does not cause offence to anyone in the vicinity. Finally, when making these incinerators, care should be taken to cut and stack the turf in the form of sods, in order to facilitate its eventual replacement.

## Section 22.—Ablution-Places, Waste Water, and Horse-Lines.

1. **Ablution-Places.**—Ablution-places should be located conveniently near the tents, and soiled or soapy water drained away on similar principles to those indicated for kitchen sullage water. Ablution-places may be made round taps, or by the side of streams, etc. Canvas screens can with advantage be rigged up round them. Benches or foot-gratings may be supplied if available. Types of ablution-places fitted with baths, suitable for large military permanent camps, are described in the *Manual of Elementary Military Hygiene*, 1912.

2. **Disposal of Waste Water.**—This subject has already been considered in Sec. 20. Unless the soil and gradients favour rapid absorption and drainage of all waste water, it will be advisable either to shift the kitchens and washing-places every few days, or to collect this liquid in water-tight receptacles. Such receptacles should be placed on raised platforms, and the contents should be emptied daily



outside the camp area. Before being returned to use, they should be cleaned and rubbed with a cloth soaked in crude creosote.

**3. Horse-Lines.**—In camps at which some of the officers are mounted, horse-lines must be provided, which will require careful supervision. They must be situated at least 100 yards from, and when practicable to leeward of, the water-supply and kitchens. The horses should be picketed together in a straight line, and not scattered over the camping-ground. Excreta should be removed continually and placed in receptacles some distance outside the lines. Arrangements for their removal may be made with a contractor. A line orderly should be detailed daily and made responsible for the cleanliness and tidiness of the horse-lines and their surroundings.

### Section 23.—Sanitation in Billets.

**1. Ventilation.**—Next to overcrowding, the danger of which has already been discussed in Sec. 16, para. 2, ventilation is one of the most important points in connection with billeting accommodation. Ventilation may be defined as providing the inmates of houses with pure air. The results of careful research show that it is necessary to change the air of a room three times every hour in order to keep it pure, when a room has good means of ventilation, is fairly large, and not crowded. If the means of ventilation are defective, and rooms are small and crowded, the air must be changed more often every hour to keep it pure. No definite rule can, therefore, be laid down regarding ventilation. As large a superficial area as possible should, however, be allowed for each man in billets, and rooms should be chosen with large windows, to allow of a good supply of fresh air.



**2. Avoidance of Draughts.**—It is of great importance that it should be possible to ventilate rooms without subjecting the inmates to draughts, which may adversely affect their health. In addition to any other means of ventilation, such as fresh air inlets or chimneys, the windows should always be open on one or both sides of a room night and day as far as the weather and season admit. In this way a complete change of air can be effected. The windows should be open at the top, as the air will then enter above the heads of the inmates, who will not be subjected to draughts. As fresh air is generally colder, and therefore heavier, than the air inside a room, it tends to sink gradually and displace the warmer, impure air in the room, which rises to the top and escapes through the ventilators or windows.

**3. Cleanliness in Billets.**—Cleanliness in the barrack-room is another means of preventing disease. The infectious germs of some diseases can remain alive attached to particles of dust for a considerable time, and therefore the mere stirring up of dust by means of a dry duster or brush, for it either to settle again or be inhaled by the occupants of the room, is both useless and harmful. Dusting should be done with a damp cloth, rinsed out from time to time in water, and should never be done just before a meal is to be eaten in the room.

The sluicing of a quantity of water over floors should not be allowed; they can be cleaned with a wet mop or cloth rinsed out in a pail of water. Occasionally they will require scrubbing, but this should be done with soap and a minimum of water. The custom of putting blankets on a wet floor to save a few footmarks is a dirty and unhealthy practice, and should be forbidden.

**4. Disposal of Excreta and Refuse.**—As a rule water or dry earth-closets and dust-bins will be available on or near premises suitable as billets. When cadets are accommo-



dated in billets it will be the duty of the camp secretary, with the aid, if necessary, of a medical officer, to see that the arrangements for the disposal of excreta and refuse are satisfactory before he decides to hire or accept the loan of premises. When these arrangements are not available, they must be provided according to the directions laid down in Secs. 19 and 21, when the precautions relating to latrines and urinals in camps will also apply to them.

5. It is the duty of every user of water closets to see that the contents of the pan are properly washed away by pulling the chain of the flushing-tank. Another detail requiring attention is that of using paper torn or cut to a size not larger than that of an ordinary hand, which should be provided. Men must be taught not to use large sheets of paper, which will prevent the pan being properly cleaned, and facilitate rapid clogging up of the discharge pipe. For the same reason, pieces of cloth, rags, and other articles of the kind, must never be thrown into a water-closet. The proper place for such articles is the ash-bin.

6. **Earth-Closets.**—The usual arrangement for earth-closets is the provision of a pail or portable midden, placed under an aperture in a seat, with a box of dry earth, from which, by means of a scoop, the user covers over the excreta. Special care should be taken to throw a sufficiency of the dry earth over the filth in the pail, in order to obviate the smell and to prevent flies gaining access to this objectionable material. The pail contents must be removed daily. An adequate supply of finely-powdered dry soil and a sufficiency of scoops must always be available. The pails must fit closely under the seat. If there is a gap between the top of the pail and the seat, the floor is certain to be fouled. The floor must be suitably sloped, and made of some hard, impermeable material. Enough pails must be available to allow those which have been fouled to be cleaned.



**7. Cleaning Closets.**—No matter whether it be a water or dry earth closet, all woodwork and fittings must be kept scrupulously clean. The seats must be scrubbed daily with soap and water, the scrubbing including both the upper and under surfaces of the seat. The pans or pails must be kept clean. Dry earth-closet pails may be cleaned by first washing out the contents with water, drying and airing by exposure for a few hours to the sun, if possible, and then scrubbing over the inner surface with the creosol solution supplied for the purpose by the barrack department. The coating of these utensils with tar is objectionable, as it renders them unsightly, and tends to conceal rather than remove dirt.

**8. Urinals.**—Urinals should be managed on similar lines to latrines. Those of porcelain or glazed earthenware must be adequately flushed with water either automatically or by hand; while those made of slabs of slate must be wiped over twice a week with sufficient heavy oil to impart a greasy surface. Urine-tubs, if used for night convenience, must be cleaned in precisely the same way as closet-pails. Their contents need to be carefully emptied each morning, with special precautions taken to see that no splashing or spilling occurs on the landings or stairways. If such does occur, it should be immediately dusted over with dry earth, and the place swept clean.

**9. Disposal of Waste Water.**—Drains for the disposal of waste water will usually be provided on or near premises suitable for billets. The camp secretary of cadet corps should see that these arrangements are satisfactory before selecting billets. If special ablution-places have to be provided, because the baths or other facilities in billets are inadequate, unsatisfactory, or non-existent, they must be arranged for according to the directions already given for ablution places in camps.



**Section 24.—Personal Cleanliness and Care of Feet.**

**1. Personal Cleanliness.**—Personal cleanliness must be insisted on, not only with regard to the body, but also with regard to clothing, tents, and equipment. Every soldier should bathe at least once a day, and more often if necessary, washing his whole body thoroughly with soap and water. Bodily cleanliness is especially important with respect to the teeth, hair, and feet. The teeth should be brushed and the mouth cleansed twice a day—on rising in the morning, and on retiring to bed at night. The hair should be cut short, and well brushed frequently with a clean hair-brush. The head should be washed occasionally. Hair-brushes may be cleaned by combing out loose hairs, and then dipping them in cold water in which soda is dissolved. If possible, they should be dried in the sun. Hands should be washed and nails cleaned whenever possible before meals.

**2. Care of Feet.**—(i) It is important that the feet of soldiers should be kept in good condition. The essential conditions for the care of the feet are cleanliness, well-fitting boots, and good socks. Cadets should not bring new boots to camp, and both socks and boots should, if possible, be inspected and approved before starting for camp. Feet should be inspected frequently during camp by officers, who should see that they are clean, and that the nails are kept properly cut—namely, straight across, not rounded at the ends, and not too short. Cadets should be made to wash their feet at least once a day, preferably before retiring to bed. If facilities for washing the feet are not available, wiping them, especially the toes, with a wet cloth will suffice to remove dirt and grease.

(ii) **Socks.**—Thick wool or worsted socks should be worn. Sore feet are occasionally contracted through the sock shrinking and becoming shortened, so that the heel tends



to come under the sole of the foot and cause creases. Men should therefore be taught to stretch their socks when they take them off, and also at the end of a march. Having stretched them, they should shake them out; and if they put them on again, they should wear them on a different foot to that on which they were worn during the march. Two pairs of socks should be used every day, the second pair being put on after the day's work is over or at tea-time. Sore feet may be prevented by greasing the inside of the socks with soap, especially those parts of the sock which fit over parts of the foot that usually become sore from rubbing.

(iii) **Boots.**—Stout, well-fitting boots are necessary for marching. They should fit closely round the heel and ankle, and comfortably over the instep and across the points of the toes. They should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch longer than the foot, and square, not pointed, in the toe. The sole should be thick and studded with nails in groups of three, because boots without nails are slippery when walking over grass or heather, and soon wear out on hard roads. The heel of the boot should have an iron tip round the edge which receives most wear. Boots should on no account be blacked, but after dust and mud have been removed, they should be rubbed over with dubbin, which will clean them and tend to make the leather soft as well as water-proof.

(iv) **Tender Feet.**—Men whose feet are naturally tender and soft should be made to bathe them at night in tepid water in which a small quantity of soda or alum is dissolved. When drying after bathing, they may be dusted over with a fine powder made up as follows: Boracic acid (finest powder), 60 per cent.; powdered talc, 35 per cent.; salicylic acid, 5 per cent. Excessive sweating with the feet may be relieved by bathing them in a solution consisting of 1 ounce of formalin to 2 pints of water, or by soaking the feet in water coloured red with permanganate of potash.



v] PERSONAL CLEANLINESS, CARE OF FEET 93

(v) **Treatment of Blisters.** — Men suffering from blisters should be made to report to an officer or N.C.O., who should supervise the treatment of the blister by the man, and periodically inspect his feet until the blister is healed. He should inquire into the cause of the blister, and examine the boots and socks of the man with a view to preventing further injury. Blisters may be pricked with a needle sterilized by being held in the flame of a match for a few seconds, or left in boiling water for some minutes. When the fluid has escaped, the blister should be dusted over with absorbent powder, such as boric powder or oxide of zinc—preferably the latter. To protect the blistered part in subsequent marching, a dressing of antiseptic cotton-wool, kept in position with adhesive plaster, may be used. In this case care must be taken at the end of the march to remove the dressing, and if necessary, continue treatment. Blistered feet must be kept scrupulously clean.



## CHAPTER VI

### ORGANIZATION IN CAMPS\*

#### Section 25.—General Information.

1. *Information for organizing camps for the accommodation and training of a complete battalion is embodied in this book.* This information, with necessary modifications, will apply equally well to the organization of camps for the training of smaller units, such as companies or platoons, and to the organization of camps for cadet corps. For cadet training, camps or billets are undoubtedly preferable to bivouacs, which in Britain are generally unsuitable for boys for climatic and other reasons.

2. **Numbers in Cadet Camps.**—As regards the size of cadet camps and the numbers they should accommodate, no fixed rules can be laid down. These considerations must be governed by the circumstances of each case, and will depend upon a variety of factors, including the extent of facilities in the shape of ground and necessary equipment, the number of cadets able to attend camp, and the funds available for expenses. In Britain it will usually be easier to obtain ground for camp sites for small numbers than for large. For this reason, small company camps will perhaps be found more practicable than camps for battalions or larger numbers.

3. When ground cannot be obtained for a company camp, it may be possible to organize four separate camps for platoons close enough to one another to allow the cadets to

\* This chapter includes information regarding the accommodation of cadet corps in camps and billets.



be trained together as a company. This plan, however, should not be carried out unless it is unavoidable. It is more convenient, more economical, and simpler to organize a company camp for 200 cadets than to organize four separate camps to accommodate 50 or 60 cadets each. In the latter case the problems of transport, food and water supply, would be multiplied, greater expenses would be incurred, and the problems of routine and training would be complicated.

**4. Site of Cadet Camps** (Sect. 15, para. 1).—Many important factors affect decisions regarding the site of military camps, both in war and peace, which need not be taken into consideration in choosing sites for cadet camps. For instance, these sites need not be chosen with a view to defence, or for their proximity to a line of march, and their choice does not involve problems connected with the management and care of large numbers of horses and other transport animals, baggage trains, artillery parks, and aircraft; while the problems of sanitation, food and water supply, are immensely simplified.

**5.** When selecting a site, regard must be had to the length of time it will be occupied, the numbers it will accommodate, the nature of the ground and soil, the aspect and elevation, the vicinity of a road, together with ground suitable for training and a rifle-range if possible, and, finally, to the problems of food and water supply. A good site, if it meets other requirements, would be in rough, open country, with plenty of ground to work over without the danger of damage to crops. If such a site is close to the sea, it will have the further advantage of affording opportunities for sea-bathing and instruction in swimming. The vicinity of a small town or village will facilitate supply and transport arrangements, but the immediate neighbourhood of large cities is as a rule undesirable.

**6.** Whenever possible, the site should be near the head-



quarters of a cadet unit, so as to economize travelling fares and cost of transport. These expenses may be saved or reduced if cadets can march the whole or part of the distance between headquarters and camp, and if equipment, baggage, and stores can be transported partly or wholly by cadets themselves. *Camp sites that have been occupied previously should be avoided if possible. Such sites should not be used unless it is certain that every precaution has been taken to clean them thoroughly since they were last occupied, and unless the position of old latrines and rubbish-pits are clearly marked.*

**7. Public and Private Ground.**—(i) Private ground, if it can be obtained free of charge for hire, is greatly preferable to public land as a site for cadet camps. On private ground the camp will be more comfortable to live in, as it will not be overlooked. Discipline and order will be more easily preserved, and routine and training more easily carried out. Even where public land is available, it is very doubtful whether it will provide adequate facilities for organizing camps and carrying out training satisfactorily. It should not, however, be difficult for arrangements to be made with public-spirited persons to give facilities for cadet corps on private ground, provided the owners are secured against damage to property and inconvenience of any kind. This, again, is a matter capable of easy arrangement, and will depend to a great extent on the discipline and good behaviour of cadets themselves.

(ii) **Farms and Camps.**—Co-operation between farmers and cadet corps might provide a good solution of the twin problems of camp sites and ground for training. It might be possible to arrange for farmers to benefit pecuniarily through the sale of food-supplies to the camp, and through the hire of their horses and vehicles for transport, in return for their granting the use of the land for the camp and for training free of charge. Such an arrangement would solve



the problem of a good water-supply, and might help to solve the problems of transport and food-supply. Under ordinary circumstances, farms would also bring camps into touch with postal and telegraphic facilities. These suggestions may be worth the consideration of commanding officers who are unable to make other arrangements for the training of their corps in camp.

**8. Water-Supply.**—The water-supply must be good as well as ample. No site should be selected for a camp till the water has been tested and pronounced pure and fit to drink by a qualified medical officer, when this precaution is deemed necessary.

**9. Cadet Billets.**—Billets, as an alternative to a camp for cadet training, involve both advantages and disadvantages. Provided suitable accommodation can be found free of charge, billets materially reduce the expenses of training, for they do away with the necessity for the hire and transport of tents and other camp equipment. They render the problem of food and water supply easy of solution, and, if equipped with kitchens, may save the trouble and expense of providing camp kitchens with their equipment. In billets more time will be available for purely military instruction, as cadets will not have to perform numerous fatigue duties incidental to camps, such as laying out the camp, pitching and striking tents. Problems of camp sanitation generally, including the provision of latrines, and the disposal of large quantities of rubbish, refuse, and dirty water, either do not arise at all or are more easily solved in billets. Finally, in wet or inclement weather, billets are more comfortable, and perhaps safer from the point of view of health, than camps.

**10.** On the other hand, it may be more difficult to keep cadets under proper supervision and to maintain good discipline among them in billets, especially if they are distributed in small numbers among several houses. This, of



course, is a vitally important consideration. The training of cadets in camp duties will, of course, be curtailed appreciably in billets, because they cannot be instructed in laying out camps, in pitching and striking tents, in sanitation, cooking, and other duties incidental to camp life. Billets, moreover, afford less opportunities as compared with camps for the instruction of cadet officers and N.C.O.'s in various duties connected with the organization, management, and care of their commands. These are drawbacks, because the above duties, besides being useful from the point of view of military training, help to develop powers of organization in cadet officers, and help to form character in the qualities of resource and initiative. They further teach cadets to adapt themselves readily to circumstances—a faculty which they must possess before they can be made efficient soldiers.

**11.** As in the case of cadet camps, the problem of billeting cadets is extremely simple as compared with that of billeting soldiers in peace or war, the only considerations to be taken into account by cadet officers being those of health and general convenience. These considerations are much the same in principle as those which apply to cadet camps. That is to say, billets should be as near as possible to the headquarters of units, so as to economize railway fares and expenses of transport, and also near ground affording good facilities for training. Every care should be taken to make sure that billets are absolutely healthy as to locality, situation, and accommodation, especially with regard to drainage and water-supply.

**12. Number in Cadet Billets.**—(i) The general principles laid down for numbers in camps apply also to billets. It will as a rule be easier to obtain billets for small units than for large numbers. Accommodation will therefore be more easily found for platoons or companies than for battalions. On the other hand, for reasons already stated, the system of



accommodating cadets in small numbers in separate billets should be avoided if possible. Commanding officers should try to arrange for accommodation which will allow at least twenty-five to thirty cadets to be billeted together under the supervision of an officer. If this is not possible, cadets should be billeted in sections, each under its own non-commissioned officer. As in the case of camps, billeting accommodation should be arranged in a locality so as to allow of at least 150 to 200 cadets being trained together as a company.

(ii) **Accommodation.**—The subject of accommodation in billets is dealt with in Sec. 23 of Chapter V., under the heading of Sanitation in Billets. *Overcrowding must on no account be permitted, as being exceedingly injurious to health.* As a rough guide to cadet officers as to the number of cadets to be accommodated in rooms of various sizes, the following directions laid down for the housing of soldiers in billets, may be quoted from the *Manual of Elementary Military Hygiene*, 1912: "In distributing men to the rooms in houses, it is desirable that the following numbers be not exceeded—namely, in rooms over 15 feet wide and under 25 feet wide, not more than two men for every yard of length, and in rooms 25 feet wide and more, not more than three men for every yard of length." This space is considerably less than that allowed for each soldier in barracks in Great Britain, which is 60 square feet, or 600 cubic feet. The ventilation of rooms, however, as well as their size, must be taken into account in deciding the number of cadets to be quartered in them.

**13. Billets in Schools, Farms, etc.**—In the case of corps attached to schools, it may be possible for cadets to be billeted in their own school building free of charge for rent during the summer vacation—their accommodation, of course, being arranged, not under ordinary, but under strict military conditions. It may also be possible to arrange



with farmers for billeting cadets in suitable barns, sheds, and other farm buildings especially prepared for their reception, which may be available under conditions similar to those suggested in connection with camps on farm-lands, the various advantages of which will apply equally to farm billets. It might be possible to accommodate a whole platoon or company in farm buildings, if large enough, the officers being quartered in the farm-house or in tents.

14. It may also be possible, by arrangement with the persons or public authorities controlling drill-halls, national schools, and other suitable buildings, to allow them to be used for cadet billets during the summer vacation free of charge for rent. These suggestions should not prove impracticable if satisfactory arrangements can be made with cadet corps to meet any small expenses incurred, such as heating and lighting, for instance, and for the proper care and cleaning of buildings, for the prevention of damage to them, and for compensation in case of damage.

15.—**Equipment.**—All camp and personal equipment should be reduced to a minimum, and comprise only what is absolutely indispensable for health and comfort. The purchase and hire of necessary equipment, and the cost of transporting it to camp, is a question of expense, and therefore depends on the funds available. In Appendix V. will be found information regarding hire of camp equipment.

16. **Personal Equipment.**—Apart from his belt and cartridge-pouch, every cadet should bring with him to camp the following articles: Water-bottle, haversack or rucksack, service mess-tin, knife, fork, spoon, greatcoat or cape. Each cadet should also bring one complete set of spare underclothing, including shirt, socks, and a pair of spare boots, a spare uniform or a civilian suit, soap, tooth-brush, hair-brush and comb, nail-brush, clothes-brush, sponge,



cheap camp mirror, two bath towels, and pyjamas. Every article of equipment should, if possible, be marked plainly with the initials and name of their owner, and be packed in a separate hand-bag or kit-bag, clearly marked with the initials and full surname of the cadet to whom it belongs.

**17. Camp Equipment.**—(i) **Tents.**—The ordinary service “bell” tent or circular single linen tent is the most suitable for cadet camps. It is made of canvas, and weighs with pole when dry about 70 pounds, but its weight increases considerably if it becomes wet. It is 10 feet high, and has a base diameter of  $12\frac{1}{2}$  feet. It is issued packed in a valise containing forty-two pegs and two mallets for driving them into the ground. Each tent will accommodate twelve cadets, which number should not be exceeded.

(ii) **Bedding** should consist of one water-proof sheet and two blankets per cadet, pillows being improvised with clothes, or a bolster filled with straw. Wooden tent-bottoms, which cover the ground inside the tent in the manner of floor-boards, are sometimes issued instead of water-proof sheets, and are useful when the ground is wet. But they are weighty and cumbersome things, which are difficult and expensive to transport, and are not, therefore, ordinarily suitable for cadet camps.

(iii) **Miscellaneous.**—Tent lanterns to burn candles, arm-racks fixed to the pole of the tent to hold rifles, and canvas pails or buckets to wash in, practically complete the equipment necessary for cadet camps. If spades cannot be borrowed for digging trenches round the tents in wet weather, if required, a few entrenching tools must be included.

**18. Equipment in Billets.**—Equipment in cadet billets should, whenever possible, be confined to personal equipment and bedding. The former will consist of the articles mentioned as necessary for camp, and the latter of two



blankets and perhaps a pillow. Cadets should be made to sleep on the floor, and use their mess-tins for meals. It must be remembered that soldiers on active service have a right to shelter only in billets, unless arrangements are also made to supply them with food. Cadets, therefore, must not expect to enjoy the use of furniture, bedding, and other luxuries. If these are provided by the owner of the billet, they must be received by cadets as a favour, not as a right.

**19. Bounds.**—As a general rule towns and villages in the vicinity of camps should be placed out of bounds. This should also be done, if possible, when cadets are accommodated in billets in buildings outside towns and villages. In the case of billets in towns and villages, the problem of bounds will be more difficult to solve, but it may be done, if necessary, by placing all except certain well-defined quarters or streets out of bounds. All public-houses, shops, fields with growing crops, fruit orchards, railway-lines, rivers, lakes and ponds, except those authorized for bathing, should be placed out of bounds, and if necessary any other places, according to the discretion of commanding officers. If the routine of camps and billets is arranged so that the time of cadets is fully occupied with training and amusements, which give employment to all, it is unlikely that cadets will have opportunity or inclination to spend much if any, of their leisure away from their comrades and their quarters or training-ground.

**20. Visitors and Strangers.**—No stranger or persons other than members of units in camp or persons transacting business should be permitted to enter camps or billets without written permission, signed by the commanding officer. The sentries in camp, and the officer, N.C.O., or senior cadet in charge of each group in billets, may be made responsible for enforcing this order. Special arrangements may be made by commanding officers to enable cadets to



receive their friends in camp at certain hours or on certain days, or to witness prize competitions, athletic sports, and ceremonial parades. Cadets should be forbidden to make acquaintance with, or admit strangers into their company. They must limit their conversation with strangers to polite replies to questions, and then proceed upon their business.

**21. Punishments.**—If possible, punishments should be eliminated altogether from the routine of cadet camps and billets. Minor derelictions of duty and offences against discipline should be punished by withholding permission to leave camp in hours of leisure, and making cadets do close order drill, or attend other instructional parades, during the time devoted to amusements and prize competitions. Serious offences of any kind should be punished by instant dismissal from camp. Officers commanding camps or billets should make careful arrangements for dealing with breaches of duty, discipline, and good conduct.

**22. Medical Examination.**—A medical examination of cadets should, if possible, be carried out before they start, and should be enforced as a strict rule when there is any ground to suppose that a cadet is unfit, or if for any physical reason there is a doubt as to whether, in his own interest or that of his comrades, he should be allowed to attend camp. Cadets who show any sign of tuberculosis, and those who have been in houses where a person is suffering from contagious or infectious diseases, or have otherwise been in contact with such persons, should not be allowed to attend camp. These precautions are so obviously proper, and so clearly in the interest of all concerned, that parents, employers, and guardians, should co-operate with officers commanding cadet corps to insure that effect is given to them.

**23. Hospital Tent or Sick Bay.**—In organizing camps and billets, a hospital tent or sick-inspection room should be



provided for the reception of sick or injured cadets, under the supervision of the medical officer, if one attends camp. If no medical officer is attached to the camp, arrangements should be made to keep in touch with a local practitioner, so that his services may be procured as soon as possible if required.

**24. Infectious Diseases.**—(i) If an infectious disease breaks out in a cadet camp, it may spread rapidly among the boys. The first case must be isolated immediately. As soon as possible the sick cadet should be removed from camp to his home or some neighbouring hospital, under the supervision of a doctor, who will see that everything possible is done for his safety and comfort.

(ii) The uniform, clothes, equipment, bedding, and personal effects of the sick cadet should at once be removed for disinfection under the orders of the doctor. If necessary, the cadets sharing his tent, or brought directly in contact with him, should be isolated from their comrades or sent home after due notification to their parents or guardians. Finally, if the doctor deems it advisable in the interest of the cadets and the public welfare, the camp should be broken up. *In doing this, all necessary precautions must be taken to prevent further spread of infection.*

**25. Fatigue and Exposure.**—The dangers of over-fatigue in training and recreation must be guarded against. Cadets must be protected against the ill-effects of exposure to hot sunshine and cold or wet weather by regulating their head-gear and clothing, by changing clothes, socks, and boots, rendered damp by rain or perspiration; by serving cadets with hot coffee or beef-tea when necessary, and generally, by adapting their garments, diet, routine, and instruction, as far as possible, to suit the conditions of temperature and weather.

**26. Miscellaneous Hints.**—(i) Officers should watch their cadets carefully. If any one of them does not look fit, he



should, if necessary, be made to report himself for examination at the hospital tent or sick-inspection room.

(ii) No work should ever be commenced on an empty stomach. Arrangements must be made for cadets to be served with a cup of cocoa or tea before the morning parade, if it is held before the regular breakfast hour.

(iii) Care must be taken to prevent cadets drinking from brooks, streams, taps, or from any but authorized sources of water-supply in or out of camp. They must not be allowed to buy fruit from any but specially authorized sources of supply. They must be warned against the eating of unripe fruit.

## Section 26.—Training and Recreation.

**1. Value of Cadet Camps and Billets.**—In the case of cadet corps belonging to large cities, the annual training in country camps or billets may provide the best, and perhaps the only, opportunity for carrying out field training by day and night under suitable conditions, in the absence of good facilities in the shape of ground in or near their home districts. As a rule it will afford a favourable opportunity for bringing together a number of different corps in a locality which may in some cases consist of a single platoon each, and which are trained by themselves throughout the year, and organizing them into larger units for training as companies or battalions when such training is desirable, and can be undertaken conveniently and usefully.

**2. Training in cadet camps and billets** may thus give cadet officers experience in the art of command with larger numbers than usual. It will give officers valuable experience of practical, if simple, problems of organization. It will afford opportunities for developing character, and for training both officers and cadets in important military duties dealt with as subjects of instruction in this book,



which it may be difficult or impossible for them to learn under practical conditions except in camps or billets to which they are incidental. Finally, this training will afford a good opportunity for carrying out the annual inspection of cadet corps, and will economize the time and services of inspecting officers.

**3. Regular Attendance.**—Arrangements for training and organization will be simplified greatly if all the members of a corps attending camp or billets for training arrive and leave together in a body at predetermined times, and they will be complicated and rendered difficult if individuals or small parties arrive after the rest and leave before them at different times. Every effort should be made to avoid irregular attendance, not only on grounds of general convenience, but because it will interfere with training. The programme of training cannot be carried out satisfactorily, and the necessary continuity and progression of instruction cannot be preserved unless regular attendance is assured.

**4. Need of Tact.**—The success of the instruction carried out in camps or billets, as well as the smooth working of the arrangements for organization, depends largely upon the tact exercised by the commanding officer and senior officers in their dealings with junior officers and N.C.O.'s, especially when different corps or self-contained units are being trained together, and their officers have to work with, and perhaps under, officers belonging to other units, as, for instance, when platoons are trained together as companies, or companies trained together as battalions. It is of the greatest importance under these conditions to avoid all possibility of friction and unpleasantness.

**5.** Commanding officers must therefore make careful arrangements to have all questions which may give rise to friction between officers and cadets of different units referred direct to them, and must settle such questions with consideration and tact. Senior officers must take



scrupulous care to avoid undue interference with the methods employed by officers and N.C.O.'s under them in training their commands, especially if these officers belong to other cadet units, though they must, of course, exercise a judicious supervision over their work, and correct faults when necessary. They must, however, perform these duties with consideration, and must, above all, avoid correcting officers in the presence of their N.C.O.'s or cadets, as such action is calculated to damage the authority of officers, and to be prejudicial to good discipline.

**6. Scope and Progression of Training.**—(i) No fixed rules can be laid down regarding the scope and nature of the training, nor can a uniform scheme of instruction be drawn up which is suitable for all corps. These questions must be influenced by the special circumstances of each case, and depend to a great extent on the time, funds, and facilities available for training. Cadet officers must therefore use their judgment in drawing up a scheme of instruction to suit the conditions under which their commands are trained, and they must adapt it carefully, according to the strength and ability of cadets. A few broad rules regarding training in camps and billets may, however, be laid down for the guidance of instructors.

(ii) The temptation to attempt too much in the time available must be avoided. It is better to carry out thoroughly a moderate scheme of training, the subjects of which are well within the powers of cadets, than to hurry through a full programme containing subjects which are to any extent beyond their powers. Training should, however, consist of the more important and more advanced subjects of military instruction in preference to elementary subjects. Preference should be given to subjects which allow cadets to be trained together in large units, as in the case of company drill and schemes of attack, defence, or outposts. Such instruction, besides being valuable, is



more suitable for a scheme of training in camps or billets than the plan of dividing cadets into small classes for instruction on a variety of different special subjects.

(iii) In carrying out the details of a scheme of training, it is of the utmost importance to avoid overtiring cadets in mind or body. This rule is especially important with respect to the instruction arranged for the earlier part of each day. The principle of introducing elements of variety into instruction and making it thoroughly interesting to cadets, which is emphasized throughout the books of this series, must be observed with respect to the scheme of training in camps and billets. The hours devoted to instruction should not be too long, and should include intervals for rest. Whenever possible, subjects of instruction which necessitate physical exertion, and are likely to tire cadets, should be alternated in the scheme of training with subjects which do not necessitate physical effort. In the alternative, these subjects should be followed by time reserved for meals or for leisure.

**7. Fatigue Duties.**—All unnecessary fatigue duties should be abolished as tending to tire cadets and be irksome to them, and also because they take up time which would be better spent in military instruction. Absolute order and cleanliness in tents, camping-grounds, and billets, as well as personal cleanliness and tidiness, is, however, essential for the health of the camp as well as for the discipline and efficiency of cadets. The cleaning of arms and accoutrements is also essential for their care and preservation. If, however, rigid simplicity with regard to uniform, equipment, and rules of life is made a rule in cadet camps and billets, the necessary fatigue duties should easily be reduced to the minimum necessary for cleanliness, preservation of health, order, and efficiency.

**8. Elasticity.**—Schemes of training must be elastic, so as to be capable of modification in case of interruption



through bad weather. They must include plans for carrying on instruction indoors or under shelter when it is not possible to do so out of doors. The manner in which this may be done to the best advantage must be left to the discretion of instructors. Physical training exercises and active games should form part of these alternative arrangements to keep cadets fit, and compensate them for the loss of active exercises out of doors.

**9. Indoor Instruction.**—Indoor instruction may consist of lectures, illustrated, if possible, by lantern slides or landscape targets,\* dealing with the various military subjects, including sanitation and military hygiene. Classes may also be held for practical work in first aid, signalling, cooking simple rations in mess-tins under conditions approximating to those of service, and in subjects such as field - sketching, map - reading, military reports, and knotting. Conferences for the instruction of officers and N.C.O.s may also be held during bad weather.

**10. Subjects of Instruction.**—(i) *Camp duties* will necessarily form the basis of a scheme of instruction when cadets are under canvas instead of in billets. But these duties must be introduced into the scheme with care and discrimination, and should not occupy more time than is necessary. As a rule striking and pitching tents, loading and packing equipment with other transport duties, cooking in mess-tins, and sanitation should be classed as the more important subjects of instruction in camp duties. *Sentry* and *guard* duties, together with *ceremonial drills*, should be reduced to a minimum.

(ii) *Battalion drills*, even when there are sufficient numbers to carry them out, should be limited to movements for enabling the battalion to form up and march on parade, march off from parade, and march past on ceremonial occasions. The limited time available for training cadets

\* See *Drill and Field Training* of this series.



throughout the year, as well as in camp, will be better spent in company drill, field training, and the other special subjects contained in the various manuals of this series than in battalion drill.

(iii) *Field entrenching*, even in the form of elementary spadework, will as a rule lie outside the scope of cadet training. If, however, time and facilities are available instruction in this subject may be carried out.

(iv) With regard to instruction generally, subjects such as *physical training exercises*, which form part of the daily lessons in schools, should be reduced to a minimum, and perhaps disregarded in the scheme of training. The same remark applies to *close order drill*, which should be reduced to the minimum necessary for practising *company drill* or handling bodies of cadets. *Musketry* may be reserved for prize competitions if range facilities exist for cadets to carry out this branch of training throughout the year. If this is not the case, musketry, if possible, should be one of the most important subjects in the scheme of training. Advantage might also be taken of opportunities for training cadets in *swimming and life saving*, if camps or billets offer facilities for doing so when cadets are unable to be trained in these important subjects at home or at school.

(v) **Special Subjects and Competitions.**—With these exceptions training in special subjects which can best be taught during the year, such as those already mentioned, together with *signalling*, *first aid*, and *cooking*, may be omitted from the scheme of training. Prize competitions may, however, be organized in some of these special subjects, and others may be included in field exercises or in the alternative arrangements for training in bad weather.

(vi) **Field Training.**—Field training should be the principal subject of military instruction in cadet camps and billets. It is not only the most beneficial subject from the point of view of health, but the most attractive. It is full of variety.



and may be made to combine instruction in a great number of important special duties under practical conditions approximating to those of service. Instruction in the work of outposts by night and training in elementary *night operations*, including developing the sight and hearing for use by night, silent advances, etc., should be included in the scheme of training among its most important subjects.

**11. Hints to Instructors.**—The following suggestions regarding arrangements for training are made for the guidance of instructors. It will as a rule be best during the first few days of training, if there are sufficient numbers to form more than one company, for the companies to be placed entirely at the disposal of their captains for instruction in company drill. If a company has not had previous opportunities for working together as a company unit, care must be taken to make instruction progressive. The different movements in company drill should be thoroughly mastered. All cadet officers should be given the opportunity of commanding the company as well as their platoons. Non-commissioned officers should be practised in commanding sections and platoons.

**12.** The following suggestions may be made with reference to the routine table on p. 113. The hour before breakfast may be devoted to company drill, carried out with or without arms. The parades between breakfast and dinner, when this time is not spent in a tactical scheme of attack, defence, or outposts, may be divided into two periods, each of three-quarters of an hour or an hour's duration, with an interval of half an hour between them. These parades may be used for instruction in different subjects, such as practising the company in movements in extended order. If platoons have been thoroughly trained during the year in their drill and field training, according to the instructions laid down in Chapter IV. of the *Drill and Field Training Manual* of this series, they should very quickly



learn to work together as a company. When the company have been practised sufficiently in close order drill and extended order movements, the field training of cadets should commence, and consist as far as possible of simple and attractive tactical schemes carried out by day and night.

**13.** In carrying out these schemes full advantage should be taken of facilities in the shape of ground. Each scheme should be carried out if possible on ground over which cadets have not worked before. The ground chosen for these schemes should differ in nature and features as much as possible, so as to train cadets thoroughly in applying the principles of instruction to a variety of conditions. As a rule tactical schemes should be arranged so that they can be brought to a conclusion in the course of a single morning, afternoon, or evening, or at the most in the course of a single day. After important schemes have been carried out, the work of cadets should be made the subject of criticism and remarks by the commanding officer to officers and N.C.O.'s at conferences, and also in short lectures to cadets. These conferences and lectures may take place on the ground immediately after an exercise is concluded, or afterwards in camp during the evening or at some other convenient time.

**14. Table of Subjects.**—The various subjects of instruction which have been discussed in the foregoing paragraphs are set out in the form of a table for the convenience of instructors. They are arranged so that it is possible to see at a glance which are suitable for a scheme of training for cadets in camps and billets, which are suitable for alternative arrangements for instruction in the case of bad weather, or when the normal programme cannot be carried out for any reason, and which are suitable for military and other prize competitions. The arrangement of subjects in this table on p. 113 is not meant as a fixed classification, and may be modified as desired.



**15. Conferences.**—(i) Commanding officers should pay special attention to the training of officers and N.C.O.'s

TABLE OF SUBJECTS.\*

<i>Scheme of Training.</i>	<i>Special Subjects.</i>	<i>Prize Competitions.</i>
(a) Camp duties.	(a) Cooking.	(f) Cross-country races.
(a) Sanitation.	(e) Simple field entrenchments.	(d) Despatch carrying.
(a) Ceremonial.	(b) Field sketching.	(f) Flat races.
(b) Company drill.	(h) First aid.	(f) High and long jumping.
(a) Conferences.	(a) Knotting.	(c) Judging distance.
(b) Field training (attack, defence, outposts, night operations).	(d) Map reading.	(a) Loading and packing equipment for transport.
(b) Lectures.	(b) Military reports.	(f) Military obstacle races.
	(c) Musketry.	(c) Musketry.
	(d) Signalling (Morse and semaphore).	(a) Pitching and striking tents.
	(b) Bayonet fighting.	(d) Signalling.
		(f) \ Swimming and
		(g) / life-saving.
		(b) Bayonet fighting.

\* The subjects lettered (a) are contained in this book, and those lettered otherwise in other Manuals of this series, as follows: (b) *Drill and Field Training Manual*; (c) *Musketry Manual*; (d) *Signalling Manual*; (e) *Field Entrenchments*; (f) *Physical Training Manual* (Senior Course); (g) *Physical Training Manual* [(Junior Course)]; (h) *First Aid*.

while in camps and billets by means of conferences presided over by them personally or by a senior officer. At these



conferences various problems connected with training and organization can be discussed and settled. For instance, questions concerning routine or the details of the tactical schemes which are to be practised may be discussed and decided at such conferences, in which junior officers and N.C.O.'s will be invited to express their opinions. Conferences should also be held after tactical schemes have been carried out to enable the commanding officer to make suggestions for the guidance and information of those present.

(ii) Conferences to discuss general problems of cadet training and organization, or military subjects of practical interest to cadet officers and N.C.O.'s, may also be arranged to be held in wet weather or in the evenings. Apart from their educational value, these conferences will lead to a useful exchange of views between the officers of different corps, and help towards the solution of various difficulties connected with the work of organizing, equipping, and training cadet units. They should also help to preserve consistency in the method of cadet training, and make for the attainment of a higher general standard of efficiency in cadet corps.

**16. Discipline.**—Discipline is the fundamental principle of military training and an essential condition of military efficiency. The preservation of good discipline in cadet camps and billets is absolutely necessary, not only for their utility from an instructional point of view, but also because in the absence of good discipline it may be difficult or impossible to obtain facilities for either camps or billets.

**17.** The preservation of discipline and order in camps and billets also affords a good opportunity for training cadet non-commissioned officers to handle their commands. Non-commissioned officers should be made responsible for the good behaviour of their sections. Senior cadets in charge of squads and of groups of cadets in tents and



separate billets should similarly be held responsible for the preservation of order.

**18. Recreation Committee.**—(i) Recreation should be made a prominent feature of life in cadet camps and billets. A recreation committee should be formed, consisting of a number of cadet officers and non-commissioned officers representing the different corps or units brought together for training. A cadet officer should be chosen to act as secretary of the committee. As a rule the afternoon or evening will be found the most convenient time for recreation. Amusements may be divided into prize competitions in various military duties, athletic sports, games, and concerts. To these may be added swimming and life-saving, if suitable facilities exist. These different forms of amusement will allow of recreation out-of-doors, and indoors at night or in bad weather if facilities are available. The committee may, if funds are available, provide cheap sets of dominoes, draughts, and chess, as well as a few newspapers or illustrated magazines, to help to pass the time in bad weather or during moments of leisure.

(ii) The nature of recreation and the time of day or night for which it is arranged must be regulated carefully according to the programme of training to avoid fatiguing cadets. Forms of amusement which involve physical exercise must be avoided immediately after or before instructional work likely to tire them physically. On the same principle, prize competitions in military duties—as, for example, signalling, despatch-carrying, or musketry—must not immediately follow or precede instruction in the same duty or instructional exercises of which it has formed part.

**19. Prize Fund.**—A prize fund, made up of small limited contributions from the cadets in camp and others, should be raised by the recreation committee for prizes and other expenses connected with the competitions and sports. This fund may be increased by contributions from profits



arising from the dry canteen or grocery institute if there is one in camp. Prizes should consist of useful articles of practical value to cadets, such as pocket-knives, binoculars, compasses, and watches.

**20. Principle of Equal and Common Benefit.**—(i) All recreation should be organized as far as possible on the principle of equal and common enjoyment and benefit to all. That is to say, amusements of every kind should be arranged so that every cadet in camp, or as large a number as possible, can take an active part in them. The system by which an active part in prize competitions in military duties, sports, and games is reserved for a few cadets representing each corps or unit, while the rest are limited to the inactive part of mere spectators, should be avoided as bad in principle and as likely to defeat the objects for which recreation is organized.

(ii) If competitions are arranged as far as possible between teams representing the whole or a large proportion of the members of each competing unit, and if results are decided on the average performance of such teams, not only will effect be given to the principle of equal and common benefit to all, but a good average degree of proficiency in military duties and athletic sports will be encouraged among a whole body of cadets as opposed to the ideal of a high degree of excellence in a few champions representing the whole of their unit or corps.

**21. Revival of Historic Customs.**—(i) In the past the regular practice of athletic sports and active games in towns and villages throughout England, together with rivalry in skill with weapons, was common among the youth of the country, and played an important part in developing the physique of the nation and forming its character in many of its most valuable traits. These martial sports and active games also helped in no small measure to increase the strength of the nation in time of



war. The annual training of cadets in country camps and billets through the opportunities which it affords for outdoor sports and military competitions may be instrumental in reviving these customs among the boys of the nation, especially among those who live in the more populous quarters of great cities, or those who for other reasons are without facilities for habitually playing active games, and in consequence have lost interest in them except perhaps as spectators, and taken up other and less beneficial kinds of recreation.

(ii) Officers commanding cadet corps should therefore encourage the regular practice of athletic sports in their commands. Competitions might be organized between different units, to be carried out at intervals during the year. In co-operation with other commanding officers, an annual athletic sports meeting might be organized to take place during the period of camp training at which the different corps or units brought together for instruction compete against one another in various athletic events and military prize competitions. The recreation in camp would thus become an important event in the lives of cadets, and would do much to popularize the annual training among them. These meetings, moreover, would be certain to attract public attention in the districts in which they were held, and help to stimulate national sympathy and interest in the work of cadet corps.

## Section 27.—General Rules for organizing Camps.\*

**1. Organization Committee.**—The arrangements for organizing camps and billets should be carried out by an organization committee consisting of senior cadet officers, preferably those experienced in this work. When a number

\* The information regarding organization in this chapter can be adapted, with necessary modifications, for camps containing large or small numbers.



of different units are brought together for training, the committee should consist of officers representing each unit. The committee should appoint a secretary to make necessary arrangements under its orders. The first duty of the secretary will be to obtain particulars of the different units and the total numbers to be accommodated. It is impossible to go into details regarding organization, because its nature in each case will depend upon a variety of factors, including numbers, which may vary greatly. The subject of organization must, therefore, be considered very generally in the light of certain broad principles upon which it must be based.

**2. Grouping of Units.**—As far as possible, units should be grouped together in camps and billets, according to the district and locality from which they come, and sections, platoons, and companies should be kept together according to their own organization. At the same time, companies should, if possible, be approximately of the same strength. Therefore platoons which are not already organized into companies may be grouped with other platoons to make up companies which are deficient in numbers. Platoons and sections, however, must not be broken up, and the officers and cadets distributed among other units to bring them up to full strength.

**3. Camp Commandant and Adjutant.**—The senior cadet officer should be the camp commandant. He will, when necessary, select an officer to act as adjutant. As a rule, when the number of cadets in camps or billets is less than 400, an adjutant will not be necessary. The commandant of the camp will be able to combine both duties, while the orderly officer of the day can do the guard mounting duties, etc. If numbers do not equal a company at full strength, a cadet officer may perform the duties of quartermaster as well as a certain number of his company duties; but in the case of a company at full strength, or a larger number,



an officer should be appointed quartermaster. Each cadet battalion must have a quartermaster, and when there are more than two battalions in camp there should also be a brigade or camp quartermaster.

### Section 28.—Preliminary Duties.

**1. Taking over Stores.**—(i) When tents and other camp equipment are hired for the use of the camp from a contractor or the Ordnance Department, the camp secretary, who arranges the hiring, should appoint a day and hour for the handing over of the same by the hirer to the camp quartermaster. The greatest care in checking and counting stores should be taken, otherwise losses must occur, which will, of course, have to be made good by the unit responsible.

(ii) When different platoons which are not ordinarily organized as a company are temporarily grouped into company units for the period of training in camp, it is advisable, in order to help towards an easier and more exact settlement of bills and other claims, that each platoon should draw its own equipment and rations, instead of the equipment and rations of the company unit being drawn as a whole. The same principle may be applied to different companies which are temporarily grouped into battalions for camp training.

**2. Camp Quartermaster.**—The camp quartermaster must proceed to the camping-ground a day or two before the arrival of cadets to plan out the camp, take over stores, allot tents, camp equipment, etc. Unit commanders should give him at least twenty-four hours' notice of the time of their arrival, so that he can make the necessary arrangements for feeding the cadets. The following duties must also be carried out by the quartermaster before the arrival of cadets in camp:



(i) The plan of the camp should be decided, and the camp laid out, either with tents already pitched or placed ready for pitching or with the correct positions for pitching them clearly indicated.

(ii) Latrines and washing-places should be prepared, and their positions clearly indicated.

(iii) The camp kitchen should be prepared, and its position clearly indicated.

(iv) Refreshments should be prepared ready to serve out to cadets on arrival.

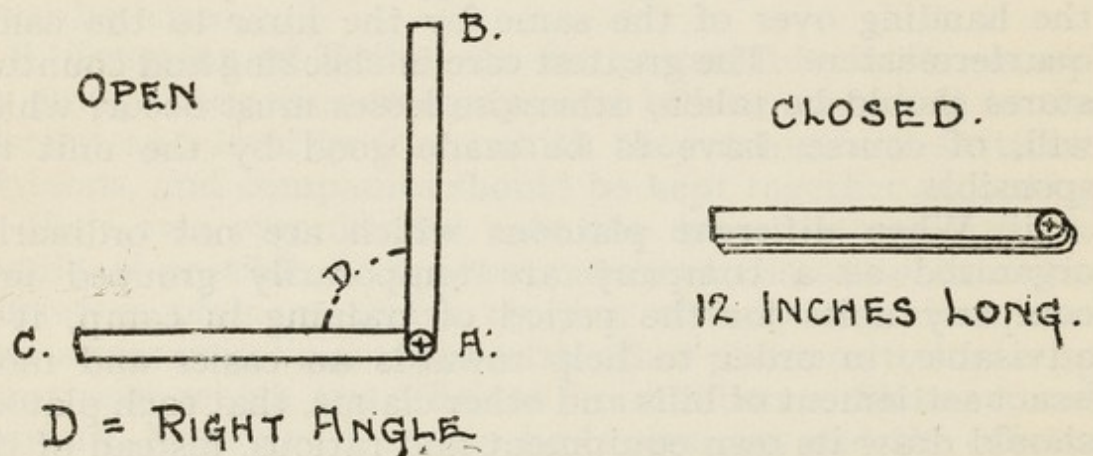


Fig. 23.—A Square.

**3. Directions for planning a Camp.**—The quartermaster, with his assistants, will lay out the camp. For this purpose he should be provided with a small *square* and a *line*. The square consists of two narrow pieces of wood, each 12 inches long, held together by a screw at one end, so that they can be moved as on a pivot (Fig. 23). A line consists of a convenient length of cord along which pieces of tape are tied at every 7, 8, 9, or 10 yards (Fig. 24). The camp can be laid out correctly with the square and line by observing the following directions:



(i) **Use of Square and Line.**—Lay the square on, or a little above, the ground at a position corresponding to one of the corners of the camp. Open it at a right-angle, as shown in Fig. 23. Fix a flag on the ground at the point corresponding to that marked *A* in Fig. 23. To determine the straight lines which will run at right-angles from this flag to mark two sides of the camp, look along the square, and with the help of assistants fix flags in the ground at a convenient distance away from the flag at *A* according to the size of the camp, so that the positions of these two

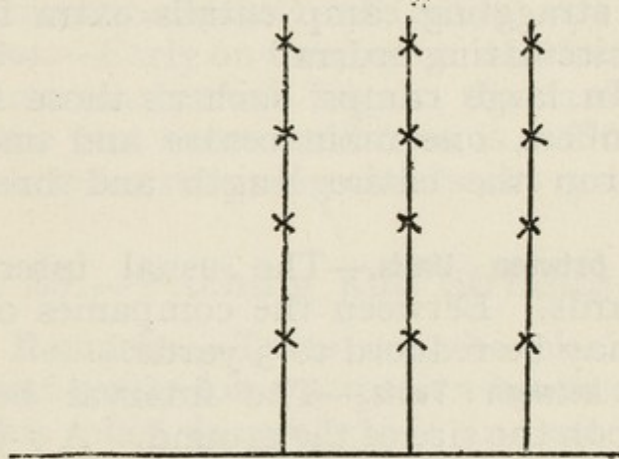


Fig. 24.—Lines marking the Position of Tents.

flags respectively make a continuation of the straight lines *A—C* and *A—B*, shown in Fig. 23, as seen along the square when held at the point *A*. The lines corresponding with the other two sides of the camp may be found in the same way by using the square as already described at the points marked by the flags at *C* or *B*, when its area will be indicated by four flags forming a true square.

(ii) After the area of the camp is marked out by four flags in the above manner, the position of the tents may be ascertained by stretching one or more lines along the ground in the manner shown in Fig. 24. The tapes will



mark the place where the poles of the tents should rest. A small peg should be driven into the ground at each tape. The line should then be removed, leaving the camp planned out by the flags and pegs. The tents may then be erected.

(iii) **Shape and Size.**—The shape and size of a camp will, subject to the following general rules, be determined by the nature of the ground.

(iv) **Space.**—Units should not be cramped for space more than is absolutely necessary. On the other hand, the dimensions of a camp or bivouac must not be increased unduly, as a straggling camp entails extra fatigue duties and delay in circulating orders.

(v) **Street.**—In large camps, such as those for a brigade or larger numbers, one main centre and one main cross street must run the entire length and breadth of the camp.

(vi) **Interval between Units.**—The usual interval between units is 10 yards. Between the companies of a battalion the interval may be reduced to 3 yards.

(vii) **Interval between Tents.**—The interval between tents will depend upon the size of the ground. A 7-yards interval is sufficient as a minimum. Eight or nine yards may be allowed if space is available, but a maximum of 10 yards between tents should not be exceeded.

(viii) **Latrines and Washing-Places.**—The position of latrines and washing-places should be the first consideration in planning camps. They should be placed on the leeward side of camp. Their position should be concealed from view, and hidden by trees or shrubs if possible. They should also be enclosed by screens, which may be improvised with canvas or sack-cloth, or with hurdles interlaced with branches or undergrowth.

(ix) **Cooking-Places.**—These should, if possible, be in rear of the camp, and as far as possible from the latrines.



(x) **Officers' and N.C.O.'s Mess.**—In camps where a separate mess is organized for officers and non-commissioned officers, space for these messes must be provided by the quartermaster in planning the camp.

(xi) **Notice-Boards and Plan.**—Notice-boards should be put up showing the position of offices, washing-places, refuse-pits, latrines, etc., and a plan of the camp should be on view near the commandant's tent.

(xii) **Precautions against Fire.**—If a camp is pitched in or near long dry grass or heather, special precautions must be taken against fire. If possible, undergrowth should be cleared away from the vicinity of tents.

(xiii) **Inspection.**—Early on the day on which cadets arrive in camp the quartermaster will inspect the camp, and satisfy himself that the tent accommodation is sufficient, and that the arrangements for receiving cadets are quite completed.

## Section 29.—Pitching and Striking Tents.

1. **General Remarks.**—Tents may be pitched when the camp is laid out ready for occupation by troops on arrival in camp. This plan is preferable in wet or uncertain weather, as men are assured of shelter and dry accommodation at the end of their journey. In fine weather, however, tents may be set down by the quartermaster and his assistants in the positions marked for them by pegs when the camp is laid out. Each tent will then be unpacked and pitched by a squad chosen from the cadets told off to it after arrival in camp. When this is done, cadets may be practised in unpacking and pitching tents simultaneously by orders or signals from the commanding officer. In the same way tents may be struck and packed by cadets themselves before they leave camp, or arrangements may be made for striking and packing them after the departure of units.



**2. Pitching a Tent.**—(i) Tent squads consisting of six men in charge of the senior soldier as leader, will be told off for pitching tents. The leader will first number off the men of his squad from 1 to 6. Their respective duties according to their number is as follows: No. 1, front-rank poleman; No. 2, rear-rank poleman; Nos. 3 and 4, pegmen; Nos. 5 and 6, packers. The packers will perform the duty of unpacking as well as packing the tents.

(ii) The leader will superintend the work of the squad. He will see that the pole is placed on the spot marked for it by the peg, that it is upright, that the door is properly placed as to direction, that the cords are stretched in line with the seams of the tent, and that the slides are made fast at equal distances between the tent and pegs. He will also enforce silence and order while the work is being carried out.

(iii) When the squad is ready to pitch the tent, No. 1 will stand with his heels on either side of the peg marking the spot where the tent-pole is to rest, and remove the peg. The rear-rank poleman having joined the two pieces of the pole together, will hand it to the front-rank poleman. The pegmen at the same time will distribute the pegs where they will be at hand when required, and drive in four pegs in the proper positions for holding the front and rear-angled ropes. Nos. 5 and 6 will unpack the tent, and spread it out flat on the ground with the tent door fastened and uppermost, so that it forms a triangle, the base of which should be one pace away from the feet of No. 1, with the apex pointing in the direction of the prevailing wind, which should previously be indicated to the leader of the squad, or towards the tents in the rear.

(iv) The polemen then fit one end of the pole into the cap in the apex of the tent, and place the other end between



the heels of No. 1. The pegmen each take one of the two front-angled ropes, which are not marked in any way, and the two packers each take one of the two rear-angled ropes, which are marked *in red* to distinguish them from the others. The leader will then give the command *Raise tents*, when the pole will be elevated by Nos. 1 and 2, the former getting inside the tent to keep the pole in a vertical position and to take care that it rests on the ground in the correct spot. The four angle ropes will then be pegged down by the pegmen and packers to hold the tent in position. No. 2 must take care that the door of the tent faces in the right direction, and that it is still fastened. Finally, the pegmen will peg down the other ropes of the tent, working round from left to right. The leader will take charge of the tent-bag and mallets when the tent is pitched.

**3. Tent Doors.**—In pitching tents the position of the doors should as a rule face away from the prevailing wind. Their position may, however, be changed subsequently, if necessary for any reason.

**4. Digging a Trench.**—As soon as the tent is pitched, two cadets from each squad will cut drains round the bottom of the tent walls, and heap the earth inside the flap. If necessary, surface drains may be constructed to prevent rain-water lodging in the trenches. In the case of cadet camps the consent of the owner of the land on which the camp is pitched should be obtained before trenches are dug. A hole 6 inches deep may also be dug close to the tent-pole, so that if heavy rain comes on suddenly the tent-pole can be pushed into the hole, and much strain will be taken off the canvas, ropes, and pegs.

**5. Driving in Pegs.**—Tent-pegs should be driven into the ground as follows: Determine the spot, turn with back to the tent, stoop with peg in left hand and mallet in right, place the peg with point on the ground and the head inclined



outwards at an angle of 45 degrees, give a couple of taps with the mallet, then stand up and give two or three hard blows with the mallet, which in ordinary ground will be sufficient to drive the peg well home.

**6. Striking a Tent.**—No. 1 will get inside the tent, No. 2 will fasten the door, which should not again be unfastened. The pegmen and packers will pull out the pegs except those which hold the front and rear-angled ropes, and pack them in the bag. The pegmen and packers will then take hold of the front and rear-angled ropes, as in para. (iv), p. 124, while the pegs holding them are drawn by No. 2, with the help of the senior cadet if necessary. All pegs will be put into the bag as they are drawn. Finally, the leader will give the command *Strike tents*, when the tent will be lowered backwards and pulled out flat on the ground. The ropes will be rolled up round the slides, and placed so that they will not appear when the tent is folded up, which will be done carefully by the packers. The leader will see that the tent, pegs, and mallets are all closed up in the tent valise. For directions regarding the striking of tents and their return to store at the close of camp, see Sect. 32, para. 3.

### Section 30.—Transport.

1. Army transport, other than by rail and water, consists of the mechanical and horse-drawn waggons of the Army Service Corps. If this transport proves insufficient in times of emergency, or is unobtainable, other arrangements are made for the hire of transport of various kinds from public and private sources. The problem of transport for cadet camps or billets depends to a great extent upon local facilities and the funds available. But as a fundamental principle this item of expense should be reduced to a



minimum by selecting suitable accommodation as near as possible to the headquarters of cadet units, reducing equipment to a minimum, and by carrying out the work of transport as far as possible through the cadets themselves with the aid of handcarts or other suitable means.

**2. Hire of Transport.**—When the transport has to be hired, an officer must be selected to undertake the duty of transport officer. He must obtain from the camp secretary a fairly accurate estimate of the numbers coming to camp, and from the quartermaster an estimate of the camp stores and their weight, for which transport will be required. He must then ascertain what farmers, tradesmen, carriers, or other persons in the neighbourhood are willing to hire out or perhaps lend their carts and horses. He should obtain this information in plenty of time, so that there is no chance of his arrangements for conveyance of the camp equipment and cadets' baggage to the camp falling through. The most likely sources from which to hire transport in the United Kingdom are railway companies, farmers, grocers, brewers, and tradesmen whose business necessitates the work of delivery or carrying.

**3. Duties of Transport Officer.**—Besides those above mentioned the duties of a brigade or camp transport officer are as follows :

(i) He should find out beforehand the time and places of arrival of all battalions, companies, and contingents.

(ii) Arrange for waggons to be present to carry kits, and send details to the officer commanding Army Service Corps, giving the names and numbers of battalions, companies, and contingents, weight of baggage, and times and day of arrival. When civilian transport is hired, he will arrange for the waggons, etc., to meet the trains.

(iii) Arrange with railway companies as to special trains to take cadets away on break up of camp, and settle with the Army Service Corps or owners of hired transport the time



of arrival of transport at camp, and where it should parade.

(iv) Special coloured labels should be issued so that the kits going by the same train should be labelled the same colour.

(v) Arrange with the railway company to send a clerk to camp the day before departure to sell tickets. This saves the congestion which crowds cause at small railway-stations.

(vi) Arrange with the Army Service Corps or owners of hired transport to convey heavy baggage to the station after the cadets have gone.

(vii) If there are any horses for transport purposes in camp, he is responsible for their feeding and grooming, etc.

**4. Cost of Hiring Transport.**—(i) It is impossible to give particulars regarding cost of hiring transport from private sources in different parts of the Empire if transport cannot be obtained from official sources, as the cost will vary considerably and be influenced by numerous factors. The cost in any locality may, however, be ascertained easily by inquiries. The following estimates give only an approximate rate of hiring in England for certain classes of vehicles, and may vary considerably according to the time of year, the supply of wheeled traffic available for transport in any neighbourhood, and for other reasons.

(ii) When hiring civilian vehicles the contract is generally to carry a certain load. The usual undertaking is to hire a one-horse cart to carry 1 ton, or a pair-horse waggon to carry 2 tons. For transport from place to place the usual arrangement made is to pay *tonnage rate* of about 1s. 6d. per mile per ton carted. In hiring vehicles for camp duties per diem about £1 a day is usually paid for the services of two horses, a driver, and large waggon, while about 10s. a day may be paid for a one-horse van or cart to carry a ton load together with the services of a driver.

**5. Table of Loads for Transport.**—The table on p. 129, which shows the approximate number of bell-tents and



weight of kits which may be loaded on different classes of trucks, waggons, and carts, both military and civilian, may be of assistance to transport officers in calculating the amount of transport they require.

**6. Packing and Loading Equipment.**—The following general directions are given for packing equipment on

<i>Description of Transport.</i>	<i>Number of Bell Tents.*</i>	<i>Weight of Kits.</i>
<b>Traction, Government—</b>		
3½-ton truck .. .. .	98	4 tons.
4-ton truck .. .. .	112	4 tons.
5-ton truck .. .. .	140	4 tons.
<b>Horse-drawn, Government—</b>		
General service waggon .. ..	38	22 cwt.
Forage cart, 2 horses .. ..	19	1,200 lbs.
Forage cart, 1 horse .. ..	15	1,200 lbs.
<b>Horse-drawn, civilian—</b>		
4-wheeled farmer's waggon, 3 horses .. .. .	84	3 tons.
2-wheeled farmer's cart, 1 horse ..	28	1,670 lbs.
2-wheeled grocer's hooded cart ..	14	1,120 lbs.
4-wheeled brewer's hooded waggon	56	2 to 2½ tons

various kinds of transport-waggons and carts. As a rule no transport vehicle should be overloaded, especially when bad or heavy roads or long distances have to be traversed, so as to minimize the risk of breakdown or delays, and to avoid unduly exhausting horses. It is the duty of the transport officer to see that transport vehicles are not overloaded.

\* When tents are to be carried, the full weight can always be loaded, as they are easily packed, except in wet weather, when the weight may be increased by as much as 25 per cent.



**7. General Rules.**—Articles which will be required first on unloading equipment should be packed on top of the load. When the vehicle is loaded high ropes should be passed over the contents and made fast to the sides of the vehicle so as to hold the load securely in place. On the march no one except the driver must be on a loaded transport vehicle without the special permission of the transport officer.

**8. Waggon and Carts.**—When packing a *four-wheeled* waggon the heavy articles should be placed at the bottom covering the back axle as much as possible. When packing a *two-wheeled* cart the heaviest articles should be placed directly over the axle, and the other articles so distributed that the cart will balance as nearly as possible when lifted up by the pole or shafts.

**9. Handcarts.**—Small light two-wheeled handcarts are suitable for transport for cadet corps when the numbers attending camp are not large, and when the distance to be traversed by road is not long. These carts will necessarily carry light loads, as they are drawn by cadets themselves in frequent relays. They should be loaded on the same principle as two-wheeled carts, and the general rules in para. 7 above should also be observed so far as they are applicable. An increased load may be carried if light, skeleton side, front and rear boards can be added to the cart as a removable superstructure. When this is done drag ropes must be attached to the axles so that a greater number of cadets can assist in pulling. Drag-ropes will in any case be useful in dragging handcarts uphill, and for easing the weight in going downhill.

### Section 31.—Journey to and from Camp.

**1.** If effect can be given to the principle of arranging camps and billets as near headquarters as possible, so that cadets can march part or even the whole way, the journey



should neither take up much time nor involve much expense either for fares or transport. In addition to these important considerations, a short journey is preferable to a long one, because it is less likely to tire cadets at the commencement of their training. Care must be taken in arranging the journey, whatever may be its length or nature, to guard against overtiring cadets.

**2. Day of Arrival and Departure.**—(i) The best day for the journey to camps or billets will depend upon circumstances, but as a rule cadets should arrive on a Saturday to avoid travelling on Sunday, although arrival on Sunday is preferable to arrival on Monday. If cadets arrive on Saturday they will have plenty of time to settle down and obtain a rest before commencing their training on Monday.

(ii) The day of departure will again depend upon circumstances, particularly the period of time for which cadets can attend for training. If a week is available, cadets may depart on Saturday or Sunday afternoon. If possible, they might break up and depart on Monday morning. As a rule the longer the time which can be spent in training the greater from every point of view will be the benefit to cadets.

**3. Entraining and Detraining.**—(i) If the journey is made by rail arrangements should be made—in the case of cadet corps by the camp secretary—with the railway company to reserve the necessary accommodation. Coaches to be occupied by cadets should be examined by an officer, accompanied by a railway official, *before* they entrain, to note any deficiencies or damage for which the railway company might otherwise hold cadets responsible at the end of the journey. Carriages should be marked to show the particular units and ranks for which they are reserved. Before entraining, a baggage-guard to look after the baggage on arrival and take it safely to its destination must be detailed.



(ii) During the journey cadets must not leave their carriages without the permission of an officer. Absolute silence must be kept while the train is moving out from or running into stations. On arrival at the end of the railway journey officers will get out and go straight to the coaches occupied by their units. Cadets will not get out of the train till the order to do so is given by the officer commanding. When the order is given cadets will leave the train and fall in in two ranks facing the train. Units will then move out of the station in file, and form up outside the station. If required by the railway authorities, carriages will be examined and any breakages or deficiencies attributable to the cadets will be noted.

**4. Baggage-Guard.**—On detraining the men detailed as baggage-guard will proceed to unload the baggage, and place it on the transport waggons. Having loaded it up, the baggage-party will follow the remainder of the detachment to camp, marching with the baggage. No cadets must ride in the waggons or place their rifles or equipment in the waggons. The cadet officer or N.C.O. commanding the baggage-party will report its arrival to the commander of his unit. Each unit will have two or more cadets told off as baggage-guard for its own baggage, so that there is no chance of its being mixed up with that of other units.

### Section 32.—Arrival in Camp.

**1.** It is important that cadets should arrive in camp to commence their training comparatively fresh and in good spirits. Care must be taken to avoid bringing them into camp tired or dispirited, more especially in wet or gloomy weather. Care must also be taken to insure that all arrangements made to receive them are completed punctually, so that they can be provided on arrival with refreshment, and allowed time to rest before they undertake the



various fatigue duties necessary for settling down and making themselves comfortable.

2. A certain amount of fatigue duties will, of course, be unavoidable on arrival in camp, but good management should reduce them to a minimum. Finally, the hour of arrival should be fixed to allow a good margin for possible delays, and so as to insure that cadets reach camps or billets fairly early in the afternoon, so that they have plenty of time to settle down. Arrangements for receiving cadets on arrival may be facilitated in the case of billets, if the occupants of houses accommodating cadets would undertake to supply the first meal.

3. **First Duties after Arrival.** — (i) **Report.** — The commander of each unit, or the captain when a company unit marches into camp as a whole, will report to the adjutant of the battalion to which the unit belongs, or to the camp commandant, that his command and the baggage have arrived.

(ii) **Camp Quartermaster.** — On the arrival of the cadets, the quartermaster will point out and show to the commanding officers the tents to be occupied by their units, the positions of latrines, ablution-places, and where the camp equipment and stores should be drawn. He will also inform them as to the number of cadets required for drawing equipment and stores, and for other duties if necessary.

(iii) **Orders.** — Before dismissal the commander of each unit will point out to cadets the position of the latrines, ablution-places, the tents they are to occupy, and the place where camp equipment and stores will be drawn. He must also read out to them any particular orders which may have been given him by the camp commandant, adjutant, or quartermaster.

(iv) **Tent Squads** will then be told off; the cadets will remove their accoutrements, and put them away in their tents.

(v) **Baggage** will be unloaded.



(vi) **Drawing Equipment and Stores.**—Parties to draw camp equipment, rations, blankets, mattresses, etc., will be told off.

(vii) **Issue of Equipment.**—The quartermaster will issue camp equipment. A cadet officer of each unit will be present at the issue of equipment, and will sign the quartermaster's book for articles received. A cadet officer of each unit will also be present at bed-filling if straw mattresses are used, and will be responsible that all litter is cleared up.

(viii) **Dismiss.**—Cadets will not be dismissed finally till equipment, rations, and stores have been drawn and distributed. Unit commanders will satisfy themselves that their lines are properly arranged before cadets are dismissed.

**4. Marching in States.\***—As soon after arrival in camp as possible each unit will send in a Marching in State. The greatest care should be taken by all concerned in the compilation of this return, as it is most important for the quartermasters and other staff officers to know the exact numbers in camp.

### Section 33.—Return of Equipment.

**1. Procedure.**—When the camp breaks up, the following procedure will be carried out with respect to the return of camp equipment:

(i) The quartermaster will arrange the hour for the return of the camp equipment.

(ii) All camp equipment on charge to units will be returned by them to the quartermaster's stores. The quartermaster will arrange for its reception at his stores, and will allot a space on which each unit will place its own equipment.

(iii) Unit commanders must attend at the quartermaster's stores until the whole of their camp equipment is returned.

\* A specimen Marching in State, both for a company unit and a battalion, will be found in the Appendix.



(iv) Deficiencies noted on return of camp equipment will be charged against the units responsible.

**2. General Equipment.**—(i) The quartermaster will see that beds, if straw mattresses have been in use, are emptied at the selected place, the straw stacked, and the ground swept clean round the stack.

(ii) Blankets will be rolled in bundles of ten, waterproof sheets in tens, palliasses in twenties, bolsters in twenties, and other articles as most convenient.

**3. Tents.**—(i) On the day before the return of the camp equipment, tent-bottoms, if used, will be removed from the tents, and neatly piled at a place appointed by the quartermaster.

(ii) On the morning of departure, weather permitting, the tents will be struck and piled at a place appointed by the quartermaster. Tents only should be in the tent valise. The peg-bags, with pegs and mallets, should be made into a separate pile. The poles of the tents should be neatly piled, crossing each other in alternate layers.

(iii) As wet canvas, or even canvas that is damp, cannot be returned to ordnance store, special instructions will be issued by the quartermaster as to whether the tents are to be struck before the cadets leave camp, or whether they are to be left standing.

### Section 34.—General Arrangements for Cadet Billets.

1. It is impossible to deal with the arrangements for cadet billets except on very general lines, as these arrangements will have to be adapted by cadet officers to suit very varying conditions. As far as this is possible, the arrangements for camps contained in Secs. 27 to 32 of this chapter may be applied with necessary modifications to the arrangements for billets. For instance, an organization com-



mittee and its secretary should be appointed to make the arrangements which, as regards taking over and returning necessary stores, such as blankets, the transport of equipment and the journey to and from the locality of the billets, will be much the same as in the case of camps. A commandant must also be appointed to command units in billets, with the help of a staff of officers.

**2. Nature of Billets.**—Arrangements may be made for billets with or without subsistence; that is to say, arrangements may be made for food to be supplied in billets, or in the alternative billets will provide merely shelter without food. In the latter case arrangements must be made on the lines laid down for camps for supplying and cooking food, and, if necessary, for a mess-room or tent. In every case the best and most convenient arrangements must be made according to circumstances.

**3. Choice of Billets.**—The secretary, having first obtained particulars of the different units and total numbers for which billets are required, should, if possible, personally inspect and choose the accommodation. He may, if necessary, be accompanied by the quartermaster and an officer from each unit. The secretary must satisfy himself in regard to the sanitary conditions and water-supply of the billets, and also that no case of infectious disease has recently occurred in either the billets or the immediate locality.

**4. Allotment of Billets.**—The secretary and those assisting him will then allot the billets to the various units. Units should be kept together and grouped as far as possible according to the localities from which they come.

**5. General Arrangements.**—The camp secretary and quartermaster will also make arrangements for a guard-room, a sick-inspection room, an alarm post, headquarters, and the addresses or other directions regarding the position of these places, accompanied, if necessary, by a sketch plan



showing their position, should be sent to the officer commanding each unit.

**6. Information regarding Billets.**—Full details of the address of the billets allotted to each unit, with the number to be accommodated in each, must then be communicated by the secretary to the officer commanding each unit before cadets start. These details should, if necessary, be accompanied by written directions, and a rough sketch clearly showing the position of the billets and the way to them from the route of march or from the railway-station. In addition, the officer from each unit who has assisted in choosing the billet may be told off to meet his unit at the railway-station or a point on the route of march, and act as guide.

**7.** The officer commanding each unit should see that the officer, N.C.O., or senior cadet in charge of each party of his cadets which is told off to a separate billet, knows the address of the billet, and has a written list of the names of the cadets to be accommodated in the billet, and the number to be accommodated in each room. The officer or cadet in charge of each party in billets should also be informed as to the position of the headquarters, guard-room, sick-inspection room, and alarm post, and should see that every cadet of his party knows the position of these places.

**8. Sanitation in Billets.**—Besides the precautions taken by the secretary with regard to the sanitary condition of the water-supply in billets and the health of the locality, careful rules must be made to guard the water-supply from the danger of pollution, and, if necessary, the same arrangements as those laid down in Chapter V. must be made for the provision and sanitation of washing-places, latrines, kitchens, etc., and for the disposal of rubbish, refuse, and dirty water. When the same billets are to be used by successive parties of cadets, it is of the



utmost importance that they should be left scrupulously clean.

**9. Arrival in Billets.**—The owners or persons in charge of billets should be notified by the commanding officer regarding the hour at which cadets will arrive, so that they may be prepared. They should also be notified as to the preparation of refreshments or meals, if these are to be provided by them. The considerations mentioned in connection with camps must be taken into account in deciding the time of arrival in billets. As soon as possible after arrival an officer should visit the cadets of each unit in their billets to inspect the same, see that they are clean, and that the cadets are comfortable, and to deal with complaints or requests. He must read out to the cadets any orders from the commanding officer, and inform them as to places out of bounds and other necessary directions, including the *alarm signal* in case of fire, or when for other reasons cadets are required to fall in at the *alarm post*.

### Section 35.—Routine.

**1. Value of Routine.**—A well-planned and efficient scheme of routine is necessary for the successful organization and management of cadet camps and billets, as well as for satisfactory results in training. Routine is also of great value in the development of character. It will help to inculcate in cadets habits of order, punctuality, discipline, and the sense of responsibility, and will help to make them exact and reliable in the performance of duty. Routine will also help to develop in cadets the power of co-operating faithfully and intelligently with others for a common end under the orders of their leaders.

**2. Table of Routine.**—It is impossible to lay down a fixed scheme of routine for cadet camps and billets. The routine in the table on p. 139 is suggested as a rough guide to cadet



officers, who must adapt it to suit particular conditions under which their commands are trained. It serves to lay down the general principles of camp training in regard to hours of work, instruction, recreation, and meals upon lines suitable for cadets. The table refers to weekdays only, the routine for Sundays being left for decision by the officers.

**3. Notes on Table of Routine.**—The arrangements in this or any other table of routine may have to be modified both

TABLE OF ROUTINE.

				<i>a.m.</i>
Reveille	..	..	..	6.0.
Issue of tea or cocoa and biscuits	..			6.30.
Saluting the flag	..	..		7.0.
Company parade	..	..		7.15 to 8.15.
Sick parade	..	..		7.30.
Breakfast	..	..		8.30.
Inspection of lines by C.O.	..			9.30.
Instruction	..	..		10.15 to 11.0.
Instruction	..	..		11.30 to 12.15 p.m.
				<i>p.m.</i>
Dinner	..	..		1.0.
Instruction	..	..		2.30 to 3.30.
Tea	..	..		5.0.
Guard mounting	..	..		6.0.
Retreat	..	..		7.0.
Officers' dinner	..	..		7.30.
First post	..	..		9.0.
Last post	..	..		9.30.
Lights out	..	..		9.45.

as to the hours for meals and other particulars, when this is rendered necessary by the scheme of instruction for the day. For instance, cadets may not return to quarters for dinner at 1 p.m. during field exercises, but take their rations



with them to be eaten when convenient. The hours of first and last post and lights out may have to be altered when cadets are being trained in night operations. Guard mounting may be dispensed with when necessary, and cadets who feel unwell may be ordered to report themselves at once at the hospital tent or sick-inspection room instead of waiting to attend sick parade at definite hours. Routine, in short, to a certain extent must be elastic and capable of modification when necessary.

**4. Morning States.**—Each unit should render a morning state to the adjutant as soon as possible every morning. If the camp is a large one, consisting of more than one battalion, officers commanding will render a morning state to the brigade-major or camp commandant. A specimen morning state will be found in the Appendix.

**5. Saluting the Flag.**—The equipment of every cadet camp should include a Union Jack, with a portable flag-staff. The staff should be fixed at a convenient place on the parade ground. Every morning at the company parade, with which the day's work will commence, and on ceremonial occasions, the cadets should be drawn up facing the flagstaff. At a given signal a cadet officer or N.C.O. should break the Union Jack at the head of the staff. When the flag breaks all officers and cadets must stand facing it at the salute. Then at a given signal the cadets should sing one verse of the national anthem, accompanied by the band of the corps if it is provided with one. The directions for hoisting the flag to the staff properly, with illustrations, will be found in the Appendix.

**6. Roll-Calls.**—(i) The roll-calls in cadet camps and billets should be decided by the camp commandant. Reveille, breakfast, dinner, tea, and last post are convenient times for roll-calls. In addition, if necessary, a surprise or a check roll-call may be ordered at uncertain periods and hours, as, for instance, between first post and reveille.



The most convenient and efficient form and time of calling the roll and collecting reports is by deputing the orderly officer, accompanied by the battalion orderly, on the second bugle sounding for breakfast and for dinner, to receive reports from the N.C.O. in charge of each mess whether in dining-tents, sleeping-tents or billets, when he goes his rounds to inspect the meal and inquire for complaints.

(ii) The roll-call at reveille could be performed by the battalion orderly in like manner. At present on reveille sounding he usually visits every tent or barrack-room to rouse the occupants, or to see that they have been awakened. At last post the same procedure could be followed, the battalion orderly making a list of absentees by companies, and receive from the company orderly-sergeant at the company orderly-sergeants' tent a list of N.C.O.'s and men on pass. Defaulters and pickets, etc., if necessary, could be paraded at the guard-tent on first post sounding, and be back in their tents for final roll-call.

**7. Bugle Calls.**—(i) The music of the various bugle calls necessary for camp routine will be found in the Appendix. Much bugling in camp becomes a nuisance. In large camps, when regular hours for parade are kept, it is best to have one general sounding carried out for the whole brigade from a central position in the camp. If necessary the call can be sounded twice—once towards one flank, and once towards the other flank of the camp. Bugling in cadet camps should be reduced to a minimum. The following calls may be sounded if necessary:

Reveille.  
Sick parade.  
Breakfasts.  
Warning for parades.  
First call—dinners.  
Dinners.

Officers' dinner (dress).  
Officers' dinner.  
Retreat.  
First and last posts.  
Lights out.  
Ration call (when ordered)



(ii) **Markers and Fall In.**—Such calls as markers and fall in are unnecessary if the discipline in the camp is good, and the cadets are intelligent and punctual. There should be a standing order in each battalion that company markers will fall in under the sergeant-major of the battalion five minutes before the hour ordered for parade, and that the whole battalion should be standing on parade at the hour fixed for parade, companies having been inspected by their company officers in their own lines. If this system is regularly carried out, the adjutant can report the battalion present or otherwise to the commanding officer at the exact moment ordered for parade, and there will be no need for the babel of bugles which generally takes place in large camps unless strict orders are issued to prevent an excessive and unnecessary amount of bugling.

(iii) **Orderly-Sergeants and Corporals.** — Non-commissioned officers acting as sergeant-majors are far too apt to be continually sounding for orderly-sergeants or orderly-corporals. Except when the matter is urgent most of the orders or information which the sergeant-major requires to give out can be issued at detail—*i.e.*, the hour in the day when the orderly-sergeants assemble at his tent to take down battalion orders, and make out the duties for the following day—or he can give out what he wants to on the numerous other occasions when orderly-sergeants are assembled during the day—for instance, before or at the end of a parade, at last post, or before any of the meals. This habit of sounding for orderly sergeants unnecessarily should be checked by the adjutant of the battalion.

**8. Duties of Brigade Staff Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers.\***—(i) *The following directions regarding the duties of various officers and N.C.O.'s in relation to camp routine contained in this section are set out so as to permit*

\* The duties of a brigade or camp transport officer have been dealt with in Sect. 29.



*of the organization of battalion or even brigade camps, and as a guide to soldiers generally.* These rules can, of course, be adapted by cadet officers to the routine of smaller camps, such as company and platoon unit camps. But the method adopted during camp routine is consistent with the scope of this manual, which includes the organization and arrangement of cadet camps for the training of a battalion, or larger numbers, although it favours the smaller company and platoon unit camps as being generally more practicable and convenient.

(ii) **The Brigadier or Camp Commandant.**—(a) He is responsible for the maintenance of discipline, efficiency, and proper system in the camp.

(b) He will supervise the training of the various battalions or companies, but he will interfere as little as possible with the methods employed by his battalion or company commanders to train their men when carried out on the right lines.

(c) He will be held responsible for the return of all Government stores or equipment issued or hired for the use of the camp.

(d) He will hold a periodical inspection of the lines, and will particularly concern himself with the sanitation of the camp and the feeding of the cadets.

(e) Before the break-up of the camp he should preside at a meeting of staff and officers to discuss matters relating to the camp, and any suggestions for the improvement of the arrangements in succeeding years which may be brought forward.

(iii) **The Brigadier-Major, or Camp Adjutant.**—(a) He is the confidential staff officer and assistant to the brigadier or camp commandant.

(b) He signs and issues all orders emanating from the brigadier or camp commandant.

(c) He details all officers for brigade duties and the battalion on duty for the day.



(d) He is responsible for the correctness of the daily state of the camp.

(e) On all parades under the brigadier or camp commandant he will place the markers when they are required.

(f) He will collect reports from commanders of units on these parades, and himself report the result to the brigadier or camp commandant.

(g) He must avoid any interference in battalion matters; if he has reason to consider that anything is wrong, it is his duty to report the same to the brigadier, who will take any action he may consider necessary.

(h) He will keep a diary, and assist the brigadier or camp commandant to compile the report on the working of the camp, if one is called for after the break-up of the camp.

(iv) **The Brigade or Camp Quartermaster.**—Where a large number of cadets are collected for camp training, it may be advisable to obtain the services of a regular officer as camp or brigade quartermaster. This officer should as a rule be a regimental quartermaster, and his duties would consist of the whole of the administration of the camp, except drill, field instruction, and discipline. The following would come under his orders.

(a) Laying out and arrangement of the camp.

(b) The feeding of all except officers.

(c) Cooking.

(d) Distribution of food to battalions.

(e) Sanitation.

(f) Scavenging.

He will also draw from the Ordnance Stores or contractor the camp equipment required, and return same. In this he will be helped by quartermasters of the battalions, and, if possible, the latter will draw from and return to the Ordnance Stores or contractor the camp equipment for their own battalions.



(v) **Chaplain.**—He is responsible for the spiritual welfare of all in camp. He will arrange the hours of service in consultation with the brigadier. It will be advisable if he is made permanent manager of all musical entertainments, and secretary of the camp sports committee for the organization of amusements generally.

(vi) **Medical Officer.**—The medical officer is responsible to the brigadier or camp commandant for the general health of all in camp. He must keep a very watchful eye over all matters which have to do with the health of cadets and the sanitation of the camp, and report to the brigadier or camp commandant any sanitary irregularities, and advise him generally on these matters.

(vii) **Brigade or Camp Sergeant-Major.**—The brigade or camp sergeant-major is under the orders of the brigade major or camp adjutant. If brigade or camp guards other than battalion guards are mounted, he will detail them and be present when they mount. If there is a staff-sergeants' mess he is responsible to the brigade major or camp adjutant for its proper conduct.

(viii) **The Brigade Quartermaster Sergeant and Sergeant Master Cook** are under the orders of the brigade or camp quartermaster.

**9. Duties of Battalion Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers**—(i) **Battalion Commander.**—(a) The battalion or half-battalion commander is responsible to his brigadier or camp commandant in exactly the same manner as the latter is responsible to his superiors. The feeding and the general care for the health of the men under his command are matters of as much importance as their training. He should make it his business to get to know all the officers of his battalion, and to study their characteristics.

(b) He should take particular note of the manner in which the instructors of the different contingents in his



battalion, if it is a mixed one, perform their duties. If he considers that any one of them is lacking in the qualities necessary for the satisfactory performance of his duties, he should bring the matter to the notice of the brigade-major or camp adjutant, who will inform the brigadier or camp commandant.

(c) He is responsible for the correct and punctual rendering of all reports and returns called for by the brigade-major or camp adjutant. He should interest himself in the recreation and games of his men, and generally do his utmost to make the time spent in camp instructive and enjoyable for the officers and men under his command.

(ii) **Adjutant.**—(a) The adjutant is responsible to the commanding officer for the correct working of all routine details.

(b) He should reach camp some hours before the arrival of the contingents which make up the battalion if it is composed of different corps.

(c) He should meet or make arrangements for the meeting at the railway-station of all parties or companies which will be in his battalion.

(d) He will carefully check all marching in states, and assure himself of their accuracy before the battalion state is forwarded to the headquarter office.

(e) He will detail the captain of the day and the subaltern of the day.

(f) He will sign all orders issued by the commanding officer.

(g) He will endeavour to issue battalion orders as early as possible in the day preceding that to which the orders apply.

(h) He will mount the daily duties.

(i) He should occasionally walk round the sentries, and ascertain if the guard duties are being properly performed.

(j) The clerical work in the battalion orderly-room is under his management.



(k) All correspondence for the commanding officer from officers in the battalion will be addressed to him.

(l) He will accompany the commanding officer on all his inspections. On parades under the commanding officer he will ascertain from the company orderly-sergeants, through the sergeant-major, whether any men are absent without cause, and report accordingly to the commanding officer.

(m) He should be up-to-date in his knowledge of the number of sick in the battalion.

(n) He will keep a diary of the work done in camp, and note down any information or suggestions which may be of future value.

(o) He will check the daily reports from the captain and subaltern of the day.

(iii) **Duties of Battalion Quartermasters.**—(a) A quartermaster must regard himself as inspector of nuisances in his lines, see that men know how to dispose of rubbish and refuse, report to the unit commander when necessary; if without effect, to adjutant of battalion.

(b) He attends parades of battalion orderlies morning and evening—*i.e.*, before breakfast and tea—marshals them at some convenient spot close to the battalion lines and his own tent, sees that all units are present with bags and dishes, marches them to the store-tent at the right moment, and maintains order there during the issue of the rations.

(c) Receives from the officer of the day or unit commander any complaints on matters concerning supplies or issue of same, reporting if necessary to the brigade quartermaster.

(d) Procures in bulk and distributes all emergency rations, such as biscuits, buns, etc., being careful to find out in good time when they are required, and give notice to brigade quartermaster.

(e) He will call attention of unit commanders to any matter which may appear irregular, especially with regard to the cleanliness of the company lines and utensils.



(f) He will inspect the latrines and ablution-places daily, and report any want of cleanliness to the brigade quartermaster.

(g) He will see that no solid matter is thrown into or upon the drains at the ablution-places; that the washing-tubs are kept free from soap or grease, and that land-drains are kept cleared.

(h) He will attend all battalion inspections of the camp.

(iv) **Sergeant-Major.**—(a) He is responsible to the adjutant that all battalion duties for which N.C.O.'s are detailed are correctly and punctually performed.

(b) He will fall in the duties on guard mounting previous to the inspection by the adjutant.

(c) He will parade the orderly-sergeants of companies five minutes before the hour fixed for a commanding officer's or adjutant's parade, and collect their reports for the information of the adjutant.

(d) He will *cover off* the company markers previous to the companies marching on to parade under the commanding officer or adjutant.

(e) He will collect the company orderly-sergeants at a convenient hour during the day, and detail companies to find the men for different duties. To insure the proper working of routine details he must be very particular to keep his roster of duties up to date. If any man is brought before the commanding officer for any reason, he will march him into the commanding officer's presence.

(f) He is responsible for the proper conduct of the sergeants' mess, and will preside at the mess meetings.

(g) All N.C.O.'s and men when addressing him will stand at attention and say "Sir," but will not salute.

(h) He will accompany the commanding officer and adjutant on all inspections when carried out on foot.

(i) When the brigade or camp sergeant-major has any



orders to issue, he will represent his battalion and write down the orders.

(j) He will parade the company orderly-sergeants at last post parade and collect reports for the orderly-officer, who will also be present to receive them from the sergeant-major.

(v) **Orderly Officers**—*Captain of the Day*. \*—(a) He comes on duty at reveille, remaining on duty till reveille next morning.

(b) He will not leave camp, and will wear uniform and a sword-belt, if swords are carried by the unit to which he belongs, during his tour of duty.

(c) He will visit the men while at breakfasts and dinners, and ascertain that the food is well cooked and sufficient, and the men are tidily and correctly dressed.

(d) He will accompany the commanding officer on his morning inspection of the lines.

(e) He will turn out the guard, and visit the sentries once by day and once by night. He will ascertain that the guard is present, and that the sentries are properly posted and know their duties.

(f) He will visit any of the men of his battalion who may be in hospital.

(g) In case of fire or other alarm he will take command of the guards and picket.

(h) He will visit the grocery institute, or dry canteen, and the club tent of the camp.

(i) He will receive the report of the subaltern of the day on duty with him, and forward it together with his own to the adjutant before 9 a.m. on the day when he comes off duty. †

(j) *Subaltern of the Day*. ‡—He is the assistant to the captain of the day.

\* In small corps this duty may be performed by any cadet officer.

† Specimen reports for Captain and Subaltern of the day will be found in the Appendix.

‡ In small cadet corps this duty may be performed by sergeants, platoon or section commanders.



(k) He comes on and goes off duty with the captain of the day.

(l) He will report himself to the captain of the day on the first available opportunity after reveille.

(m) He will attend the captain of the day in all his inspections of the lines and meals.

(n) He will turn out the guard and visit the sentries once by day when they are found by day, and once by night at the hours he is ordered to do so by the captain of the day.

(o) He will attend the mounting of brigade duties when his battalion finds any.

(p) He will attend all issues of rations and inspect the meat, etc. If he considers anything is unfit for issue, he will draw the attention of the quartermaster to the fact.

(r) He will attend last post and receive reports from the sergeant-major.

(s) He will visit the kitchens, ablution-places, refuse-pits, etc., once during the day, and ascertain that all orders with reference to such places are obeyed.

(t) He will hand his report of the performance of his duties as soon after coming off duty as possible to the captain of the week.

(u) *Turning out the Guard.*—The captain or subaltern of the day will **not** turn out the guard at the following times:

Within one hour of mounting or dismounting.

Within one hour of the guard being turned out by either the captain or the subaltern.

During the hour following the sounding of the dinners bugle.

Within one hour of retreat, last post, or reveille.

When he turns out the guard, the captain or subaltern of the day will carefully inspect the guard and the guard-tent, as well as visiting the sentries.



(vi) **Battalion Orderly-Sergeant.**—(a) He comes on duty at reveille, and goes off duty at reveille on the following day.

(b) He parades the company orderly-sergeants half an hour after reveille, ascertains if companies are present, and issues orders concerning the putting out of kits to air.

(c) He attends all commanding officer's or adjutant's parades, but falls out as soon as the parade marches off.

(d) He parades and marches the morning and evening sick to the hospital tent.

(e) He attends the captain and subaltern of the day at all inspections of lines and meals.

(f) He parades the company orderly-corporals and tent orderlies for drawing of rations and issue of meals.

(g) He is present at sergeant-major's detail hour.

(h) He closes the grocery institute or dry canteen, the club tent, and the sergeants' mess at the hour ordered.

(i) He attends guard mounting and last post parades.

(j) He goes round the battalion camp to see that all lights are put out, and that there is silence immediately *Lights out* is sounded, and reports to the orderly-officer accordingly.

(k) He reports to the sergeant-major on completion of duties.

(vii) **Battalion Orderly - Corporal.**—He attends the battalion orderly-sergeant, and assists him in the performance of all the above duties.

**10. Duties of Company Officers**—(i) **Company Duties.**—The duties of the officer commanding a company or a platoon, of the section commanders; tent commanders, etc., are similar to those of the battalion commander, the camp commandant, or the brigadier. Each one of the above commanders is responsible to the one above him for the efficiency and training of his men, the cleanliness of the tents and lines of his command, and for the proper performance of their



respective duties by those under them. It is advisable perhaps to give the duties to be carried out by the following :

(ii) **Company Orderly-Sergeant.\***—(a) His daily duties, will commence at reveille, and last for twenty-four hours.

(b) Immediately after reveille he will go round his company lines and see that all the men rise, find out if there are any absentees, and take the names of any men who wish to report sick.

(c) The company orderly-sergeant will report to the battalion orderly-sergeant half an hour after reveille the *state* of his company, and whether there are any men who wish to report sick.

(d) If orders are so issued, he will see that all blankets and kits are put outside the tents, and the walls of the tents rolled up.

(e) He will be on parade five minutes before the hour ordered for parade, and report to the sergeant-major if the parade is a commanding officer's or adjutant's, and to the company staff-sergeant or senior sergeant if it is a company parade.

(f) He must be thoroughly acquainted with the *state* of his company, and know what duty every man is on ; or if absent, he must take steps to ascertain the reason for his absence.

(g) He will parade tent orderlies, and march them to the kitchens a quarter of an hour before each meal, and to the ration-stand at the hour fixed for drawing rations.

(h) He will parade and march the sick to the hospital tents at the hours fixed.

(i) He will report his company present or otherwise to the orderly-officer when he visits breakfasts or dinners.

\* It will depend on the length of time for which the company is in camp whether this is a weekly or daily duty. It will be best, perhaps, to assume here that the duty will be carried out by a fresh N.C.O. each day.



(j) He will attend the sergeant-major's "detail," copy orders, and receive instructions as to the number of men his company is to find for guards, fatigues, etc., on the following day.

(k) He will detail the N.C.O. and men for these duties. If there is a company notice-board, it will be sufficient if he puts the list of names for the different duties on the board. If there is no board, he must personally warn all concerned.

(l) He will see that all orders are read in the company at some fixed hour.

(m) He will call the roll of his company between first and last posts, and report present or otherwise to the sergeant-major at last post staff parade.

(n) He will see that all lights are put out in the tents of his company except where extra time is allowed, and reports to the battalion orderly as soon after lights out has sounded as possible.

(iii) **Company Orderly-Corporal.**—The company orderly-corporal is the assistant to the company orderly-sergeant in the above duties.

(iv) **Company Lines and Tents.**—(a) Unit commanders are entirely responsible for the cleanliness of the tents and lines occupied by the men in their units.

(b) Men on rising each morning will wash, clean their accoutrements, put on their kits in order, and prepare for parade.

(c) *Men are not to be permitted to place waste cooked meat, vegetables, and oil rags on the ground in the company lines, or on or under the tent boards.*

(d) Jam-jars, butter-dishes, etc., which attract flies to the tents, should be placed under cover in ventilated boxes, which should be supplied to the men in each unit for that purpose.

(e) All bedding and uniforms should be exposed to the air outside the tents for at least one hour daily except in wet weather.



(f) *A light is never to be left burning in an unoccupied tent.*

(g) No officer or man riding a horse or cycle, or driving any vehicle, is to go faster than the pace of a walk inside the camp.

(v) **Non-Commissioned Officers in Charge of Tents.**—(a) N.C.O.'s in charge of tents will see that men get up at reveille, and clean and tidy the tent. They will see that tents are clean and tidy by the time for the inspection of the lines, that they are again tidied up after each meal, and débris carried to the refuse and rubbish tubs.

(b) That there is silence after lights out.

(c) That tent-ropes are slackened each night, and in damp or wet weather.

(d) They will be held responsible for the discipline of the tent.

(e) They will keep a roll of the men belonging to the tent, and will enter opposite each man's name the number of his rifle and equipment, and they will also keep a roster of the orderly-men. They will also detail a *next for duty*, who will assist the orderly-man when required.

(f) No man may change or be changed from the mess or tent to which he is told off without the sanction of the unit commander.

(g) No N.C.O. or man is to change his turn, or any part of his turn, without permission from his unit commander.

(h) No man is to leave his tent between last post and reveille without permission of the N.C.O. in charge, who will only grant permission for a necessary purpose; a man thus granted permission will report himself to the N.C.O. on his return. If he is away an unnecessarily long time, he will be reported by the tent commander to the unit commander.



(vi) **Tent Orderlies.**—Tent orderlies will perform the following duties :

(a) Roll up tent-walls each morning, except in rainy weather.

(b) See that the tent-ropes are slackened at night, and in damp and rainy weather.

(c) See that the interior of the tent is kept clean and in good order.

(d) See that all tent-doors are closed during rainy weather.

(e) See that refuse and rubbish are removed from the company lines and placed in the proper receptacles.

(f) Draw the groceries from the grocery store. Sacks or other suitable receptacles for the exclusive purpose of carrying bread will be provided by each company or contingent.

(g) See that all food is kept under cover to avoid attracting flies.

(h) Carry up breakfast, dinner, and tea from the kitchens to the company lines.

(i) Wash up plates, etc., after each meal, and see that the tins used for this purpose are left clean.

(j) Return camp kettles, etc., to the kitchens immediately after each meal.

(k) Take all broken tent-pegs to the battalion quartermaster, who will exchange them for new ones.

(l) Keep the company parade-ground clear of all rubbish and litter.

### Section 36.—Routine in Cadet Billets.

1. The details of routine in cadet billets must be left to the discretion of officers commanding the units brought together for training, who will adapt them to suit varying conditions. The table on p. 113 will, however, serve as a



rough guide to the principles which should govern the daily routine of cadets in billets. The following points are also mentioned for the guidance of commanding officers :

(i) **Guards and Sentries.**—Guards should under ordinary circumstances be unnecessary when cadets are accommodated in billets. This should also be the case with sentries, especially when cadets are billeted in premises on private ground, as, for instance, in farm buildings. Sentries, however, should be posted when it is necessary or advisable to take precautions to prevent damage to property, such as orchards or hay-stacks.

(ii) **Pickets.**—When cadets are billeted in towns or villages, a small picket may be necessary to patrol the streets for some time after lock-up to see that no cadets are out.

(iii) **Alarm Post.**—A central alarm post, or place of assembly, should be arranged for each platoon, or company, in case of emergency.

(iv) **Fire.**—In case of a fire in or near billets, platoons or companies should fall in at once at their place of assembly, and the officer in command should offer the services of the cadets to assist the police in keeping back a crowd, passing buckets, or giving help in other ways.

(v) **Orders.**—When cadets are billeted in separate houses, one cadet from each house should meet the orderly N.C.O. or officer at a certain time each evening at some special place to receive orders for the morning, which should be in writing, or taken down in writing for transmission to those concerned.

(vi) **Lock-up.**—Cadets should be confined to their houses after a certain hour, and the company orderly-sergeant should go round and ascertain if they are all present by roll-call.

(vii) **Lights Out.**—When cadets are billeted together in the same building in considerable numbers, the order *Lights out* should be sounded at a given time. In



other cases the N.C.O. or senior cadet in command of a group of cadets should be made responsible for seeing that lights are out at a certain hour without the order being sounded.

(viii) **Rounds.**—The platoon or company commander should visit the billets of his command every day, and see that the cadets keep their rooms clean. He should occasionally enquire from the owners of billets if the conduct of the cadets is satisfactory.

(ix) **Meals.**—It may be possible to arrange for meals to be provided for cadets in billets. If this is not possible, meals may be cooked and served in some central position where kitchens and accommodation for messing must be provided.

(x) **Conduct.**—The necessity for good conduct, politeness, consideration and respect for property, on the part of cadets towards all with whom they come in contact, and more especially towards those in whose premises they are billeted, has already been emphasized. Cadet officers and N.C.O.'s must exercise vigilance over the conduct of cadets, and serious misbehaviour should be punished by instant dismissal from the camp.

### Section 37.—Grocery Store, Canteen, and Refreshment Tent.

1. **Groceries.**—Groceries are only issued as a free ration in war. In peace they are purchased by each unit from a messing allowance, supplemented in some cases by canteen grants—namely, the profits of the regimental canteen run by the unit contractor or regimental management.

2. **Cadet Grocery Store.**—The supply of groceries for cadet units in camp will be arranged for by the organizing Committee. If groceries are to be issued daily to cadets from a camp grocery store or tent, unit commanders early in the morning after arrival in camp will render a return



to the quartermaster showing the number in mess. Servants and grooms will be shown separately. From this return issues will be made daily. Unit commanders will notify to the quartermaster at once any change in numbers.

**3. Issue of Groceries.**—(i) Arrangements for the issue of groceries will be made by the quartermaster. Should the scale of issues be insufficient, a further issue will be made. A record of such extras will be kept, and a charge made against the unit to whom they are issued, which will be additional to the general account. Such extra charges will be defrayed by individual units.

(ii) The following procedure will be observed when issues are made at the grocery store: Unit commanders will arrange for ration parties, consisting of sufficient cadets to carry the stores, to be marched to the grocery store for this purpose. If the party is too large, the extra cadets are in the way, and if the party is too small, delay in making the issue is caused. Each party should bring a clean *sack* for bread, which will be used exclusively for this purpose; and also *plates* for carrying butter, and *tins* for jam, sugar, etc.

(iii) On arrival at the grocery store, the ration party will halt and remain in the ranks. When orders are given for the issue to proceed, each party will enter the store quietly, take away the issues, and leave the store-tent by the proper exit. In doing this, cadets will remain silent. The instructor of each unit should attend the first three issues and assist in organizing these arrangements.

**4. Cadet Canteens.**—(i) If the rations supplied to cadets are sufficiently ample and varied, it should not be necessary to supplement them with purchases of food and drink. In any case this habit should be discountenanced among cadets, firstly on the ground of health, and secondly on the ground of unnecessary expense. The question of a



canteen in camp is, however, one for the decision of commanding officers, and if it is desired to provide one, the necessary arrangements should be carried out by the organizing committee.

(ii) The committee should make strict rules regarding the articles to be sold at the canteen, and the prices at which they are to be sold. No tobacco or alcoholic liquor in any form should be supplied to cadets, and articles procurable should be limited to fruit in season, biscuits, wholesome confectionery, aerated waters, and, if possible, tea and coffee.

(iii) Profits should be devoted to defraying the expenses of camp or be given to the prize fund. A cadet officer or N.C.O. should be on duty at the canteen during the hours at which it is open. These may be limited to half an hour or an hour after the midday meal and after tea.

**5. Refreshment Tent.**—A refreshment tent may, at the discretion of commanding officers, be pitched in a convenient place, and be open to cadets for refreshment on return to camp after field exercises, after parades on hot days, and during the hours devoted to prize competitions, athletic sports, concerts, etc.

### Section 38.—Messing.

**1. Arrangements for Messing.**—By far the best solution of the problem of messing in cadet camps will be for the organizing committee to make arrangements with a local contractor for an inclusive charge per head to do all catering, and to provide tents, furniture and equipment, including cutlery and china, for messing for cadet officers and N.C.O.'s as well as for cadets. For the sake of economy, all unnecessary equipment should be done away with. Thus tables, tablecloths, chairs or benches may be dispensed with, meals being eaten on the ground. Cutlery



may be dispensed with if the personal equipment of each cadet includes a spoon, knife and fork. Cooks and kitchens with necessary equipment, will, under such an arrangement, be provided by the contractor, meals being served by cadet mess orderlies, or direct to cadets, as described in the following paragraphs.

2. It will be an advantage if cadet officers and N.C.O.'s have the same meals as cadets under the same conditions of rigid simplicity, but this is a question for the commanding officer to decide. If cadet officers and N.C.O.'s have separate messes, space will be set aside for them by the quartermaster in planning the camp, and separate arrangements will be made for the catering for these messes. When cadets are quartered in billets, arrangements may be made for them to have their meals in the billets, or a contract may be made with a local victualler to provide meals and messing accommodation. Under this arrangement early morning coffee may be prepared by cadets themselves in their billets.

**3. Serving Meals.**—(i) A convenient number for a mess is twelve. Meals may be eaten by cadets out of doors or in their tents; but the best arrangement, when possible, is for meals to be eaten in a mess-tent or dining-room. *The officer of the day is responsible for seeing that food is properly cooked and punctually served, and he must supervise these duties.* Food may be distributed in *camp kettles* or *mess-tins*.

(ii) In the former case meals are issued by the cooks at the camp kitchen. Representatives or mess orderlies of units should carry them and serve them to their messes. In the latter case cadets parade in line with their mess-tins at the kitchen, and the cook serves out his round to each cadet. Food may also be brought by the cooks and orderlies to the mess-tent or dining-room and served out there to mess orderlies or to each cadet direct.



**4. Absentees.**—The officer of the day will make out a list of absentees at meals and arrange for their food to be kept hot by the cook who is responsible for the meal of each man. A list of absentees may be posted on the camp notice-board.

**5. Refuse.**—After meals cadets will parade on an order with their mess-tins, march to the camp refuse-pit, empty the remains of their meals into the pit, march to the washing-place and thoroughly wash their mess-tins. These duties will be carried out under the supervision of an officer. A N.C.O. should be stationed at the washing-place to supervise the cleaning of mess-tins. Alternatively, mess orderlies may carry out the duties of emptying and washing out mess-tins.



## CHAPTER VII

### RATIONS AND COOKING

#### Section 39.—Inspection of Rations.

1. It is a matter of paramount necessity that the soldier's food should be looked after carefully, and this duty should be carried out by officers who, besides seeing that food is cooked properly and served punctually, should inspect rations, to see that they are delivered according to contract, and are fresh and wholesome.

2. **Meat Inspection.**—(i) Meat, both beef and mutton, is judged in conjunction with the terms of the current contract, a copy of which should be hung up in every meat store, as regards its age, sex, quality, sweetness, and dressing.

(ii) **Quality.**—(a) *Beef.*—A carcass should be healthy and well-fed, and should externally have a well-rounded, well-filled appearance. There should be waves of fat on the chest cavity, and plenty of fat on the pelvic cavity and kidneys; the lean, when freshly-cut, should be soft and silky to the touch, full of juice, bright cherry-red in colour, and well-marbled with fat. The fat itself should be moderately abundant, and usually of a pale straw colour.

The internal organs should be sound and free from disease, and there should be no signs of tuberculous growth or adhesion in the chest and abdominal cavities.

(b) *Mutton.*—A carcass of mutton should be well-fed and healthy, and should be "mackerel-backed"—*i.e.*, should have alternate red and white bars over the loins. The fat should be fairly abundant, firm, and white.

The flesh should present the same general characteristics



as that of beef, except that the "marbling" of fat is seldom present.

(iii) **Sweetness.**—To decide whether meat is sweet or tainted, the senses of taste and smell must be employed. Fresh meat is slightly acid to the taste, while stale meat is distinctly alkaline.

If there is any doubt, the meat should be probed at its thickest portion with a clean *wooden* skewer, well thrust in, if possible close to a bone, and the skewer quickly withdrawn and smelt. In beef, the best place to probe a fore and hind quarter is at the chuck rib and pelvic bone respectively; while a carcass of mutton should be cut down between the hind-legs, separating the two portions of the pelvic bone.

(iv) **Frozen Meat.**—The meat is cold to the touch, and particles of ice may be seen on cutting into it with a saw. Its colour is not so bright as that of home-killed meat.

When still frozen, the carcass has externally a white appearance; the fat is also white, distinct from the lean, and rather crumbly. There are generally signs of rough handling, and the outside is dirty and untidy.

When thawed, the meat looks sodden, the fat is discoloured, and the exterior of the carcass sweats considerably.

In carcasses of frozen mutton the forelegs are invariably bent towards the body, and as much of the pizzle as can be cut away from the outside is removed. The conditions of contract as regards dressing do not apply to frozen meat.

(v) **Tinned Food.**—For inspection of tinned food, see Sec. 18, para. 28.

**3. Judging Bread.**—(i) The bread supplied must be sweet, well made, properly baked, and of the description or quality known as "best household," made from flour clean and free from grit, the produce of good, sound, sweet and dry wheat. It must be in all respects as good in quality as the best plain or fine bread—as distinguished from fancy



bread—usually sold by the trade as “best household bread,” with which it must frequently be compared. The bread must be delivered not earlier than twenty-four hours, nor later than forty-eight hours, after baking, and the loaves must weigh 2 pounds *at the time of issue*.

(ii) The main characteristics of a good loaf, fulfilling the conditions enumerated above, are as follows: The crust should be a rich yellowish-brown, well-baked, but not burnt, as thin as possible, and distributed all round the loaf. The crumb should be cream-white in colour, light, flaky, elastic, and full of small, evenly distributed cavities. In tasting a loaf, the crumb should always be eaten. Several loaves should be selected from different parts of a consignment of bread, and each weighed singly.

**4. Judging Vegetables.**—Potatoes are difficult to judge from outward appearance. If a part of the potato is greenish in colour, it indicates that it has been insufficiently earthed, and will go soft and dark in cooking. Carrots and parsnips should be firm, and when cut full of natural moisture; the longer they are out of the ground, the drier they become. If delivered with the tops on, the condition of the tops will prove a fair index to their freshness. Turnips, when cut through, should present a uniform whiteness; if the centre has shrunk they will cook “pithy.” Pale brown coloured turnips should be rejected for boiling, as they are invariably strong and “woody,” and are only suitable for flavouring. The only test as to the freshness of green vegetables is their condition, and this is summed up in practically the one word, *crisp*.

#### Section 40.—Cadet Rations and Diet.

1. The following notes are meant as a guide to cadet officers regarding the management of rations and the important question of diet. The estimates given as to the



cost of diet will also help them to check the charges of contractors, and to make good and economical arrangements for messing.

**2. Daily Rations.**—It is considered that the daily ration for each cadet should consist of  $\frac{3}{4}$  pound of meat, including a proportion of bone, and 1 pound of bread. When contracts are made for the supply of bread and meat, a saving will be effected if meat is purchased by the whole carcass, should the number of cadets in camp be large enough to make this procedure desirable.

**3. Management of Rations.**—(i) **Meat Ration.**—The 'meat ration requires careful management to prevent waste. The cutting up of the ration meat should be carried out carefully, the joints and pieces suitable for roasting being first selected. The remainder of the meat after the removal of bone should be used for stews and pies, etc., and the bones placed in the stock-pot. It is not necessary that each cadet should consume the whole of his meat ration at the midday meal. The amount saved will be sufficient to enable steaks or rissoles to be issued for breakfast on at least two days in the week.

(ii) **Bread Ration.**—Equal care is necessary in the management of the bread ration. It will be found advisable to slice the bread and allow each cadet as much as he requires at each meal. In this way it is very probable that a considerable saving will be effected, which can be used up in the preparation of puddings and other dishes.

(iii) **Groceries and Vegetables.**—In addition to the bread and meat, it will be necessary to purchase such articles as tea, milk, sugar, jam, fish, etc., required for breakfast and tea, as well as vegetables, flour, etc., for dinner, in addition to the meat. The daily cost of these per cadet will, it is estimated, amount to about 6d., and thus the total daily cost of food per cadet may be regarded as a permanent charge of about 1s. during the period he is in camp.



(iv) **Oven Accommodation.**—It will be neither necessary nor desirable to erect enough ovens to cook dinners for the whole number of cadets in camp. If sufficient oven accommodation is provided to meet the requirements of half the cadets, the remainder can be given dishes prepared in camp-kettles, and no disadvantage will accrue from this method, since only about half the meat on a carcass—namely, the prime joints—is suitable for roasting.

(v) **Messing Arrangements.**—It is therefore advisable, as far as messing arrangements are concerned, to divide the total number of cadets into two equal halves—the right half and the left half. It should then be arranged that the right half receive a bake every other day, while stews or meat puddings are served out to the left half on the days the right half have bakes. By this means not only will the utensils and appliances be utilized economically, but the problem of the fair distribution of the prime and coarser joints will be solved.

**4. Diet.**—The diet of cadets in camp should consist of three meals:

*Breakfast*, consisting of tea, coffee, or cocoa, bread, butter, with fish, sausage, eggs or bacon, etc.

*Dinner*, consisting of meat, potatoes, and pudding, with the addition occasionally of soup or a green vegetable.

*Tea*, consisting of tea or cocoa, bread, butter, and jam, cheese or cake, etc.

In addition to the above, an early morning issue of tea or coffee, with biscuits, should be made when necessary. A specimen diet sheet for one week is shown on pp. 167, 168.

**5. Diet-Sheets.**—(i) When compiling a diet sheet the following points should be observed:

(a) The diet must be good and varied. No dish is to be served more than twice during the week.

(b) No two dishes containing the same ingredients should be served at one meal—for example, meat pudding, with a



# EXAMPLE OF DIET-SHEET.

## RIGHT HALF.

	<i>Early Morning.</i>	<i>Breakfast.</i>	<i>Dinner.</i>	<i>Tea.</i>
Sunday	—	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Marmalade.	Baked meat. Potatoes. Cabbage. Tapioca pudding.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Cake.
Monday	Coffee and biscuits.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Rissoles.	Soup. Sea-pie. Stewed prunes. Rice.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Jam.
Tuesday	Cocoa and cake.	Coffee. Bread-and-butter. Fried fish.	Roast mutton and baked potatoes. Irish stew. Apple tart.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Salad.
Wednesday	Coffee and biscuits.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Liver and onions.	Soup. Tomato stew. Boiled potatoes. Date pudding.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Cake.
Thursday	Cocoa and cake.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Bacon and tomatoes.	Roast beef. Boiled potatoes. Stewed figs and rice.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Jam.
Friday	Tea and biscuits.	Coffee. Bread-and-butter. Stewed haddock.	Soup. Curry stew. Potatoes. Bread-and-butter pudding.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Marmalade.
Saturday	Cocoa and cake.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Bacon and tomatoes.	Roast beef. Boiled potatoes. Plum pudding.	Tea. Bread-and-butter. Bloater paste.



# EXAMPLE OF DIET-SHEET.

## LEFT HALF.

	<i>Early Morning.</i>	<i>Breakfast.</i>	<i>Dinner.</i>	<i>Tea.</i>
Sunday	—	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Rissoles.	Soup. Sea-pie. Stewed prunes and rice.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Jam.
Monday	Cocoa and cake.	Coffee. Bread-and- butter. Fried fish.	Roast mutton and baked potatoes. Irish stew. Apple tart.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Salad.
Tuesday	Coffee and biscuits.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Liver and onions.	Soup. Tomato stew. Boiled pota- toes. Date pudding.	Tea. Bread-and butter. Cake.
Wednesday	Cocoa and cake.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Bacon and tomatoes.	Roast beef. Boiled pota- toes. Stewed figs and rice.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Jam.
Thursday	Tea and biscuits.	Coffee. Bread-and- butter. Stewed had- dock.	Soup. Curry stew. Potatoes. Bread-and- butter pud- ding.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Marmalade.
Friday	Cocoa and cake.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Bacon and tomatoes.	Roast beef. Boiled pota- toes. Plum pudding.	Tea. Bread-and butter. Bloater paste.
Saturday	Coffee and biscuits.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Marmalade.	Meat pudding. Potatoes.	Tea. Bread-and- butter. Cake.



sweet made of flour or curry and rice, with stewed prunes and rice.

(c) The price of materials and the money available must be considered, together with the tastes of the cadets and the time when various articles of food are in season. Steps should also be taken to discover if the diet provided is liked.

**6. Profits from Refuse.**—(i) Due care should be taken by those responsible to save bread whenever possible, as well as any meat which may not be required for issue at dinner, and which consequently would be available for issue at breakfast the next day. A useful addition to the messing funds may also be secured by the sale of refuse, bones, etc. The manner of disposing of the refuse for the best value will vary according to local conditions, but it will always be possible to ascertain the best price which can be obtained.

(ii) The refuse-tub is thus an important feature in the economical management of messing. There is also no better index of the accuracy or otherwise of estimates regarding the quantity of food and materials provided, and the popularity of the food. If there is a large amount of refuse it indicates waste, the reason of which is probably that too much food is provided. It may also mean that the food is badly cooked or unpopular, and in any case an immediate investigation and rectification of the cause is advisable.

### Section 41.—Cooking.

1. Officers commanding are responsible that there are a certain number of men in each company who have been instructed in the cutting up of meat, making field-kitchens, and cooking. The sergeant-cook is specially trained for the purpose of instructing men in these duties. *To cook rapidly and well is an art which can be easily acquired, and which every soldier should learn.* Full information regarding



field-kitchens and cooking is contained in the *Manual of Military Cooking*. In the following paragraphs directions are given for cooking in mess-tins and without utensils.

2. It is especially useful that men and cadets should know how to cook various articles of food in their service mess-tins, which are so designed that, besides serving as a cup or dish and plate to eat from, they can also be used to cook certain rations in the same manner as in the camp-kettle of the field-kitchen.

3. **Cooking in Mess-Tins.**—The capacity of the mess-tin is 1 quart, and it will cook sufficient food for one person if the diet consists of meat and vegetables cooked together, as in the case of Irish stew or sea-pie. Variety in diet is both essential and desirable, and it can be obtained to some extent when cooking in mess-tins by dividing up the rations of, say, two men, so that one mess-tin is used for cooking their meat, and another mess-tin is used for cooking their vegetables. It will be possible in this manner to vary the food slightly, provided such dishes as meat puddings, plain stews, stewed steak, or curry and rice, are given. When this is done, the front-rank men prepare the meat, and the rear-rank men prepare the vegetables.

4. **Instruction of Cadets.**—Men may be instructed in cooking in mess-tins according to the following directions: They must be drawn up in open order, properly equipped as for a march. Their water-bottles must be filled with water. Their mess-tins must be strapped on them, containing their rations, the meat being stripped from the bone and cut into portions together with vegetables. Condiments for each group of eight men may be served out to, and carried by, one cadet.

5. It should then be supposed that they are to halt on arrival at a rendezvous. Arms should be piled in the usual way, and the men ordered to unstrap each other's mess-tins. This being done, they should be moved either to the



right or left, a sufficient distance to clear the arms. The ranks should remain in open order, made to turn inwards, and the men ordered to sit down and commence the preparation of their food.

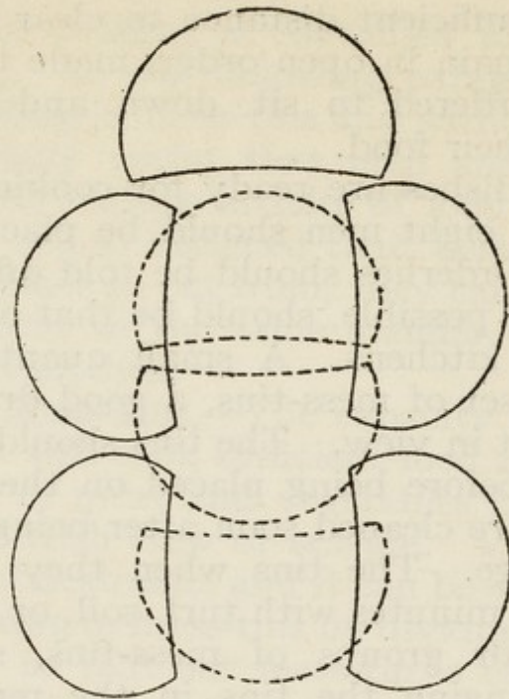
6. When the dishes are ready for cooking, the mess-tins of each group of eight men should be placed in the centre of the group. Orderlies should be told off to collect fuel, which, whenever possible, should be that obtainable in the vicinity of the kitchens. A small quantity of fuel will suffice for each set of mess-tins, a good draught being the object to be kept in view. The tins should be well greased on the outside before being placed on the fire. If this is done, and they are cleaned soon after being used, they will suffer no damage. The tins when they are hot can be cleaned in a few minutes with turf, soil, or rag.

7. Kitchens, or groups of mess-tins, should then be formed by arranging the tins in the manner shown in Fig. 25, with the opening facing the direction of the wind. In being placed in position for cooking, the handle of each mess-tin must be kept on the outside. It will not be necessary to dig trenches. The distance between the various kitchens formed in the manner described should not be less than 3 feet, which allows an interval of 9 feet between companies; but if space is limited the cooking may be done with 2 feet between the kitchens and 6 feet between the companies.

8. Each man must be made to prepare his own dinner, but when the kitchens have been formed and the fires lighted, one cadet only in each group of eight should remain in charge of each kitchen. He must change the position of tins frequently during cooking to ensure an even heat, otherwise the contents of the mess-tins nearest the fire will cook more quickly than the others. The man in charge of each kitchen must also frequently inspect the contents of the mess-tins to see how the cooking is progressing, and should stir them before replacing them on the fire.



PLAN.



ELEVATION

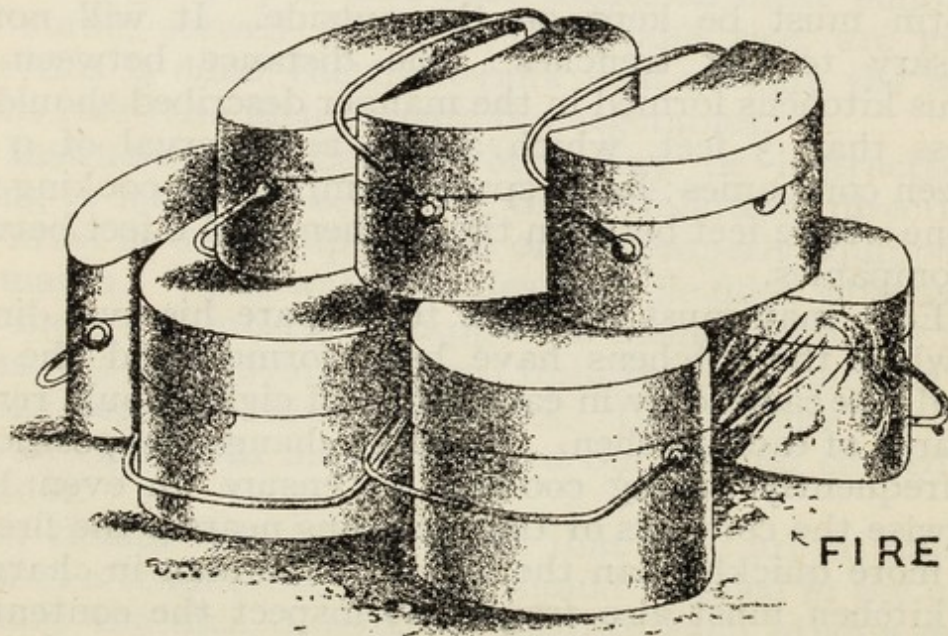


Fig. 25.—Arrangement of Mess-Tins for Cooking.



9. When the food is cooked and the order to serve out dinners is given, the men will form up in groups to receive their mess-tins from the man in charge of the kitchen. When the rations of two cadets are cooked in separate tins, the rations will be shared between them immediately the mess-tins are served out, and before they commence their dinner.

**10. Recipes for Cooking in Mess-Tins.**—The following recipes are suitable for cooking in mess-tins:

(i) **Sea-Pie.**—With this dish the whole of the ingredients for the dinner are cooked in the one mess-tin, each man preparing his own food entirely. The meat should be cut up into cubes about  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch square, the onions and vegetables as small as possible, the potatoes into cubes about the size of walnuts. Season with salt and pepper, mix well together, add enough water to just cover, and make the paste in the following manner:

Place about 3 ounces of flour, a pinch of salt, and 1 ounce of chopped suet or finely-shredded dripping, into the lid of the mess-tin, add a little cold water, and mix up into a stiff and rather dry paste. Press the paste out into the lid until it is of equal thickness all over. This will form it into the shape necessary for covering the meat, etc. Place it on, make a hole in the centre of the paste, fit in lid of the tin, and cook gently.

(ii) **Irish Stew.**—This is another dinner in which all the ingredients are prepared by one man in one mess-tin. Prepare meat, onions, and potatoes, as for sea-pie. Season with salt and pepper, cover with water, and allow to simmer gently.

(iii) **Plain Stew.**—In this case one man prepares two rations of meat—his own and that of his rear-rank man. The rear-rank man prepares the onions and vegetables, and passes it to the front-rank man, who adds them to the meat, together with a little flour, salt, and pepper. The rear-



rank man then prepares the potatoes for himself and his front-rank man, and places them in the mess-tin, with sufficient water and a pinch of salt. Thus, in a kitchen of eight mess-tins there would be four mess-tins containing meat and four containing potatoes.

(iv) **Meat Pudding.**—Prepared as for sea-pie, but omitting the vegetables and potatoes, using 4 ounces of flour for paste, and cooking two rations of meat in one mess-tin and two rations of potatoes in another.

**11. Beverages.**—The following beverages will be found useful for cadets in camp and on the march:

(i) **Barley-Water.**—Two ounces of pearl barley boiled in 1 quart of water for twenty minutes, and afterwards allowed to stand until it becomes cold; it must then be strained through a sieve into a jug, and a small piece of lemon-peel added.

(ii) **Toast and Water.**—Boil 1 quart of water, and pour it on a good-sized piece of crumb of bread which has been well toasted before a clear fire until it becomes nearly crisp and of a dark brown colour. Allow this to steep for half an hour; it is then ready.

(iii) **Sugar - Water.**—To 1 pint of cold spring water add 1 ounce of lump-sugar and a tablespoonful of orange-flower water; mix. This is a very refreshing drink in summer, and is besides perfectly harmless.

(iv) **Lemonade.**—After removing the ends, cut the lemons into slices; place the slices in a jug, pour on some boiling water, sweeten to taste, and allow to cool. If required afterwards, pour some into a glass, and stir in a pinch of bicarbonate of soda.

**12. Cooking without Utensils.**—(i) Light a fire. Take a piece of meat or fish, sprinkle with pepper and salt. Wrap in paper or clean grass or leaves. Mix some clay fairly stiff, and flatten it out. Cover the meat with the clay, being careful that it is well covered and that the edges are securely



fastened. Clear a space in the centre of the fire, leaving some embers in the ground. Place the clay mould in the hollow, cover with the burning fuel, and allow it to cook until the clay is hard. The time taken depends on the thickness of the meat. As a rule a pigeon, chicken, or rabbit, takes about one and a half hours. The fire should not be allowed to become too hot. With birds the entrails need only be drawn; the feathers can remain during the cooking. On breaking the seal of clay the feathers will become detached from the meat. Fresh-water fish, such as trout, pike, etc., are very good cooked in this manner.

(ii) **An Alternative Method.**—Make a fairly large fire, cut some thin strips of meat and fat, dust with salt, skewer the pieces of fat and meat alternately on a piece of wire or wood. When the fire has become fairly clear and free from smoke, hold the piece of meat over it and grill until it is done.



## APPENDIX

### I. DIRECTIONS FOR HOISTING THE UNION JACK

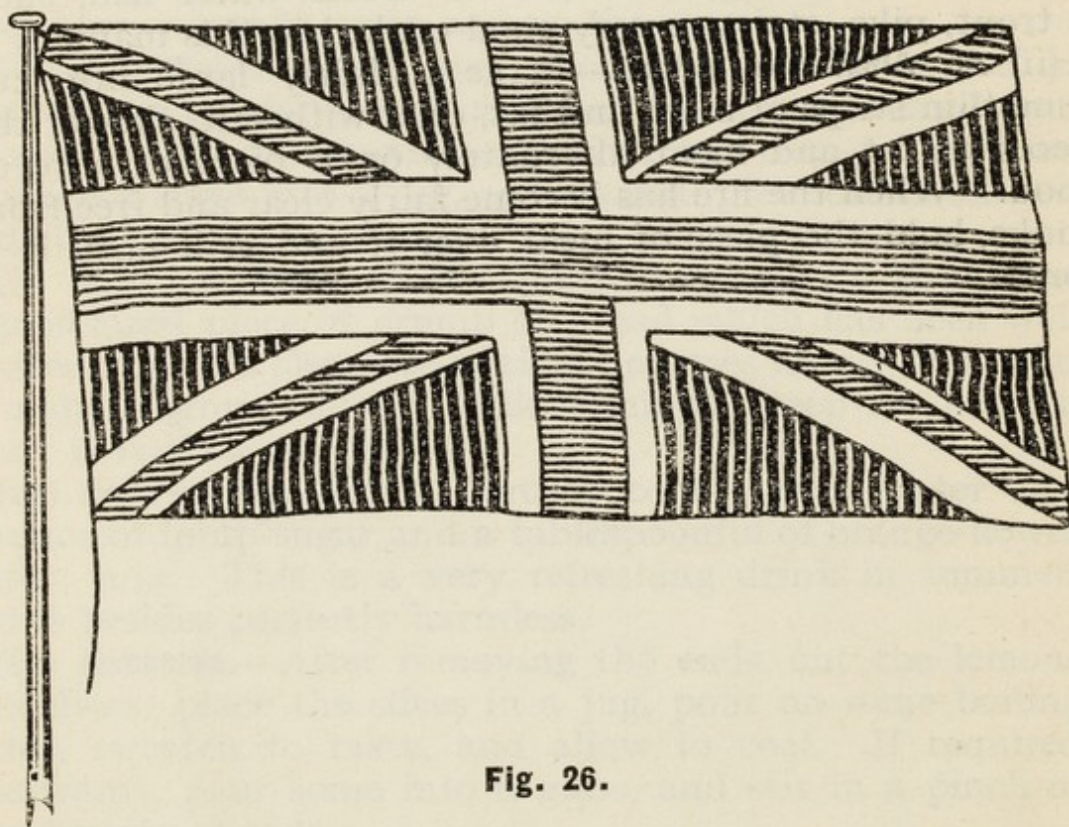


Fig. 26.

**1. Parts of the Flag** (Fig. 26).—The *Head* is the upper corner of the flag nearest the staff. The *Top* of the flag is the upper edge. The *Fly* is the wind supported end of the flag, and is practically all the outer half of the flag, not merely the edge. The *Foot* is the part of the flag opposite to the head at its lower end. The belly of the flag is termed the *Bunt*.



2. The head has a very short length of the roping fitted with a *clip*, or *toggle*, protruding from it, to allow the halliards to be hooked or bent on. From the foot comes a length of rope about 10 inches long, attached to which is a similar clip, or toggle, for the other end of the halliards. This length of rope is called the *Tack*. The head of a flag can always be distinguished from the foot because the head clip, or toggle, is close to the head of the flag, and the tack has a drift of 10 inches. This does away with the necessity for unstowing the flag and looking at it before hooking on.

3. **Directions to Fold for Hoisting.**—If the flag is folded according to the following directions, it can be broken when close up

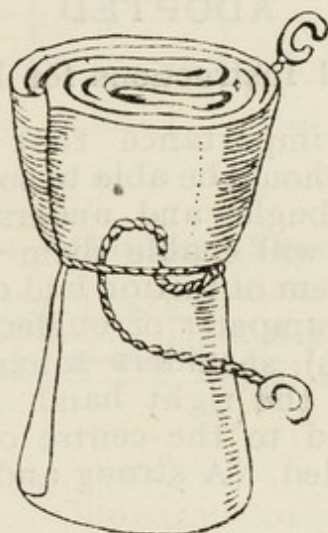


Fig. 27.

at a yard or gaff. Take the tack in the right hand and the head in the left. Put the head and tack together in the right hand. Next take the bight of the flag in the left hand, and fold together again in the same manner. Then lay the flag down and roll up taut from the end of the fly. After the flag has been rolled up, take it in the left hand and pass the tack round the flag (away from the body), and tuck bight of tack under the part, binding the flag, which should be moderately taut (Fig. 27); then bend the flag on the halliards and hoist to mast-head.



The hoisting part of the halliard should be belayed by hitching round the mast or on a cleat when the flag has been hoisted. Then the flag will be all ready for breaking by hauling down on the hauling part of the halliards.

**4. Directions for Hoisting without "Making up."**—Take the flag by the clips, or toggles, hook the hoisting part of the halliards to the tack, and mast-head part of the halliards to the head, and hoist away on the hauling part. The flag leaves the locker and goes up.

## II. INFANTRY BUGLE CALLS, WITH SOME WORDS ADOPTED

### General Instructions for Buglers.

It is of the first importance that sergeant-trumpeters, buglers, or drummers, should be able to sound correctly the calls on the trumpet and bugle, and understand so much of the principles of music as will enable them to instruct trumpeters and buglers in the system of tuition laid down.

The position of a trumpeter or bugler at practice should be erect (as at Attention), shoulders square, head well up; the instrument held with the right hand, nearly horizontal, the mouthpiece firmly held to the centre of the lips, but strong pressure is to be avoided. A strong and good "embouchure" is thus obtained.

When sitting down for practice, lounging or stooping should not be allowed.

The bugle calls should as a rule be played in "quick time."

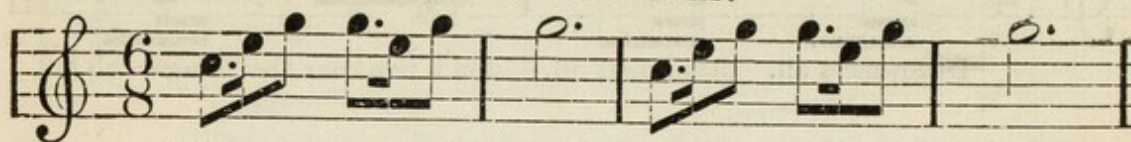


## BUGLE CALLS

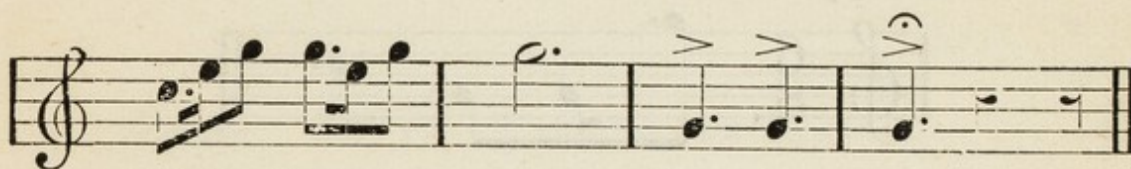
179

 $\text{♩} = 66.$ 

## No. 1.—OFFICERS.



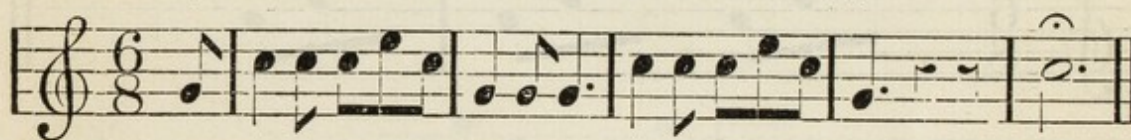
Of-fi cers, come, if you please; Of-fi-cers, come, if you please;



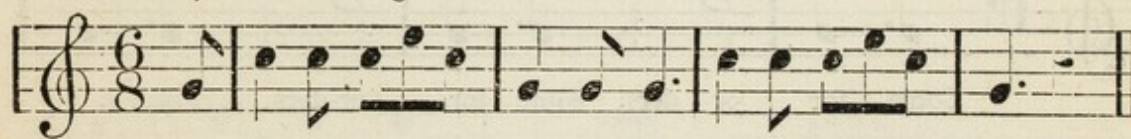
Of-fi-cers, come, if you please. Time, sirs, please.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

## No. 2.—ORDERLY SERGEANTS.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

## No. 3.—ORDERLY CORPORALS.

 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

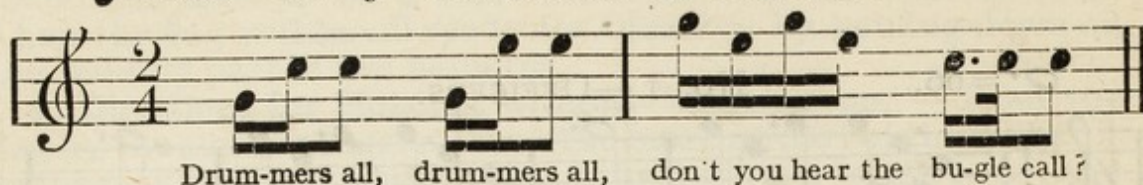
## No. 4.—BAND.



O, John-ny, get your cor-net; Tom-my, get your drum.



$\text{♩} = 108.$  No. 5.—DRUMMERS OR BUGLERS.



Drum-mers all, drum-mers all, don't you hear the bu-gle call?

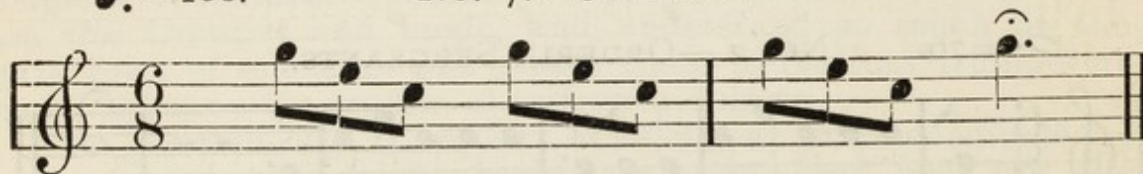
No. 6.—SIGNALLERS.

$\text{♩} = 108.$



$\text{♩} = 108.$

No. 7.—CYCLISTS.

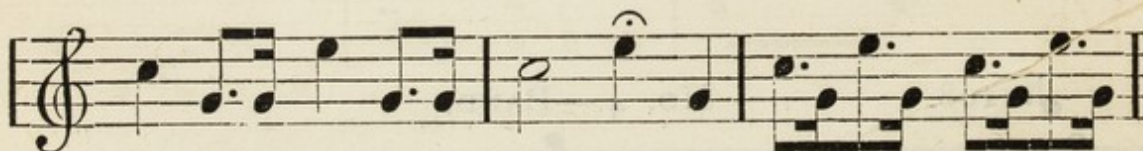


$\text{♩} = 76.$

No. 8.—ORDERS.



Come for or - ders, come for or-ders, .....





## BUGLE CALLS

181

 $\text{♩} = 104.$ 

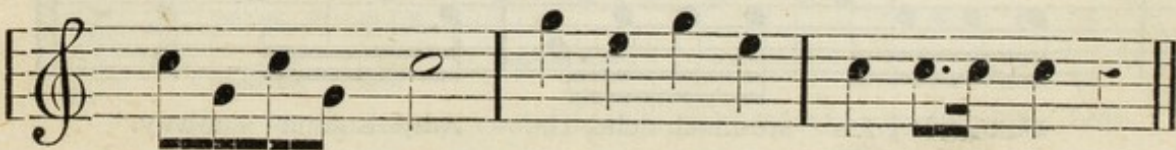
No. 9.—POST CALL.



Here comes a let-ter from home, boys; a let-ter from over the sea.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

No. 10.—WARNING FOR PARADE.





No. 11.—QUARTER CALL (*before Parade*).

♩ = 108.



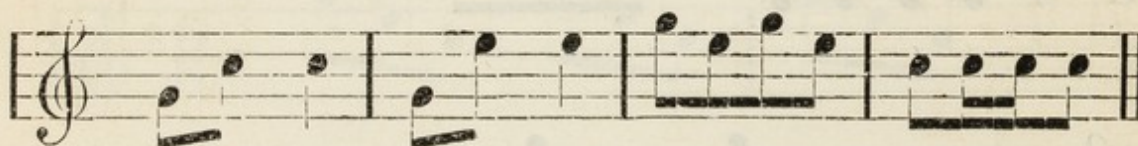
Hark! there's the quarter; we must hur-ry up.

♩ = 108.

## No. 12.—FALL IN.



Sol-diers all, sol-diers tall, all fall in, both big and small.



## ♩ = 108. No. 13.—DISMISS, OR NO PARADE.



There's no pa - rade to - day, there's no pa - rade to - day; The



Colo-nel's got a sto-mach ache, the Ad-jie's gone a-way.



## BUGLE CALLS

183

 $\text{♩} = 108.$  No. 14.—PARADE FOR GUARD.

Come and do your picket, boys, Come and do your guard;



'Tis-n't ver-y eas-y, boys, 'Tis-n't ver-y hard.

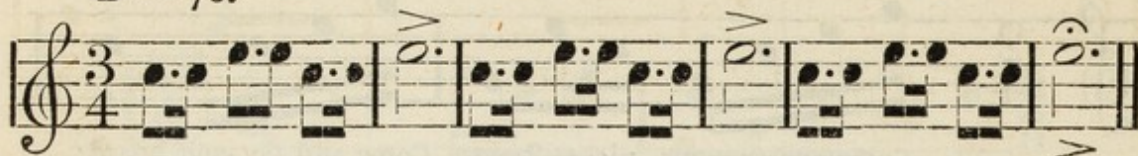
 $\text{♩} = 76.$  No. 15.—DEFAULTERS.

Oh, go and get read-y for drill, my lads; oh, go and get read-y for drill.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$  No. 16.—SICK. $\text{♩} = 76.$  No. 17.—RATIONS.

Come for the root-y, root-y toot-i, root-y toot-i; come a long, boys.



No. 18.—ALARM (*for Troops to turn out under Arms*). $\text{♩} = 76.$  $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

## No. 19.—FIRE ALARM.

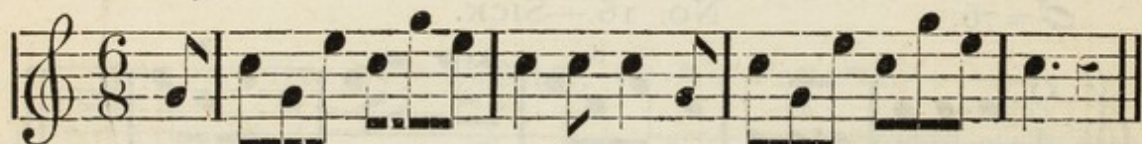


There's a fire! there's a fire! there's a fire!



Come on o-ver, come on o-ver, come and put it out.

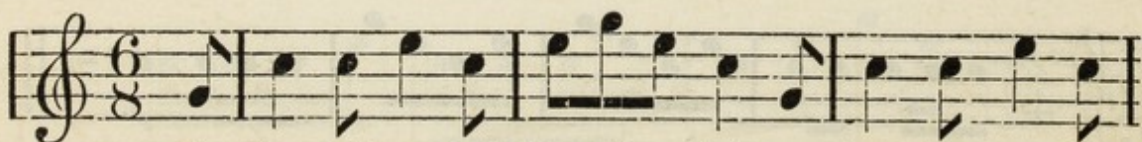
## No. 20.—OFFICERS' DRESS FOR DINNER.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

Oh! go and get read-y for mess, for mess; oh! go and get read-y for mess.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

## No. 21.—OFFICERS' DINNER.



There's pud-ding and pies for of-fi-cers' wives, and sol-diers' wives get

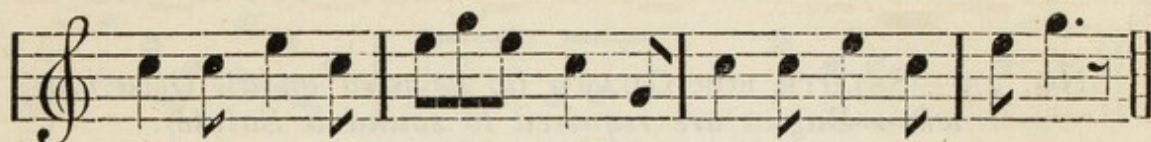


## BUGLE CALLS

185

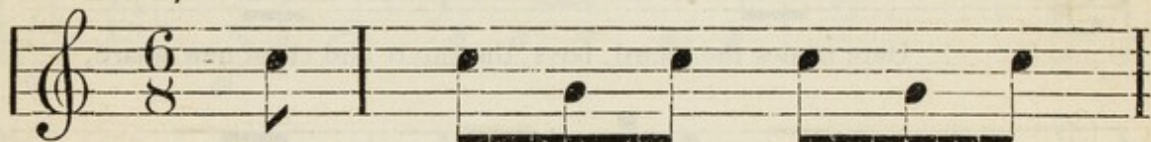


skill-y. All the cold meat that we can't eat, all

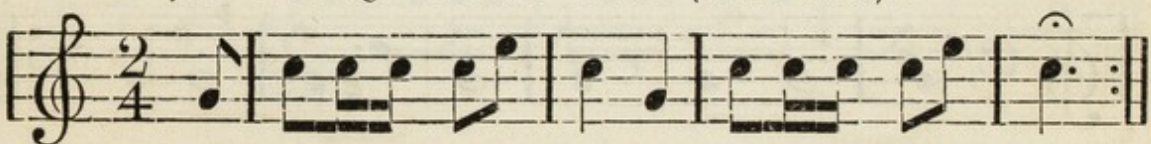


the cold meat that we can't eat, we give to poor little Kit-ty.

$\text{♩} = 76$ . No. 22.—SERGEANTS' DINNER.



$\text{♩} = 76$ . No. 23.—MEN'S MEAL (*First Call*).



Come to the cook-house door, boys, come to the cook-house door.

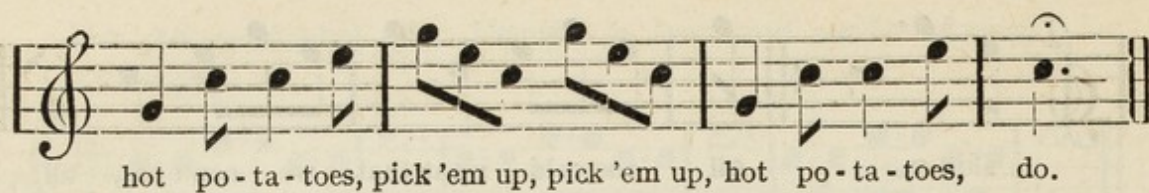
No. 24.—MEN'S MEAL (*Second Call*).

$\text{♩} = 76$ .



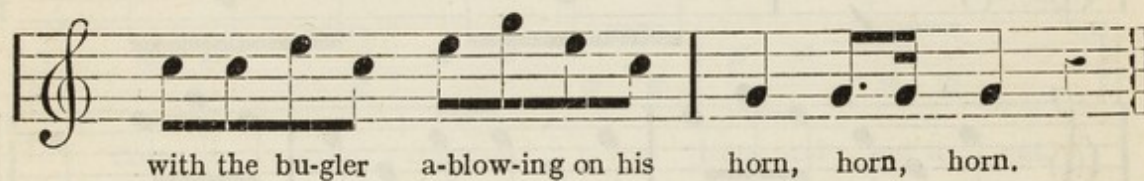
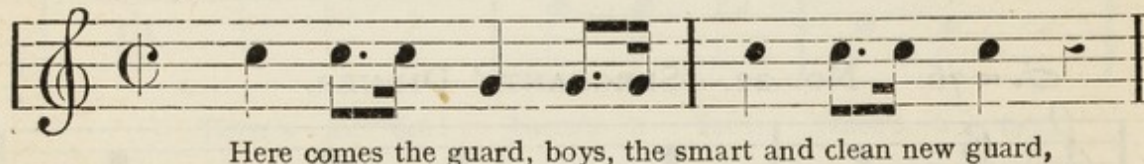
Pick 'em up, pick 'em up, hot po - ta - toes,





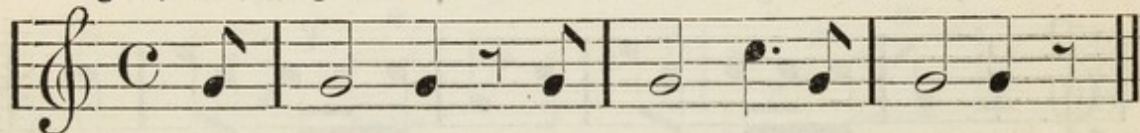
No. 25.—SALUTE FOR GUARD (*to be used on all Occasions when Bugles are required to sound a Salute*).

$\text{♩} = 76.$



No. 26.—REVEILLE.

$\text{♩} = 76.$  *Largo.*



$\text{♩} = 76.$  *Allegretto.*



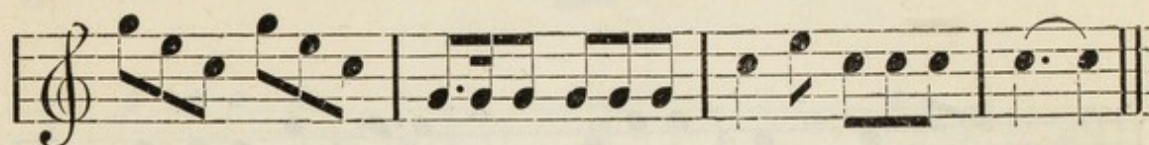
$\text{♩} = 76.$  *Vivace.*



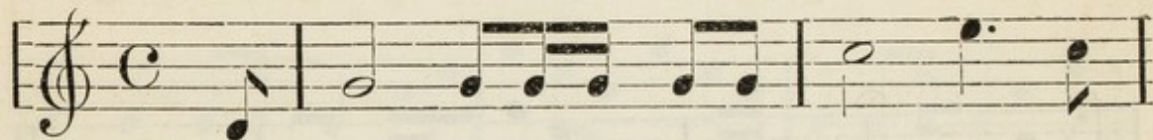


## BUGLE CALLS

187



$\text{♩} = 108.$  *Moderato.*



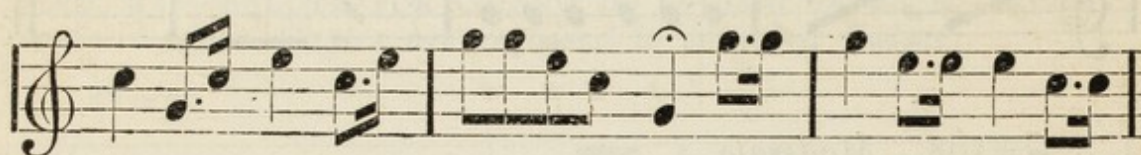
$\text{♩} = 132.$  *Presto.*





$\text{♩} = 76.$ 

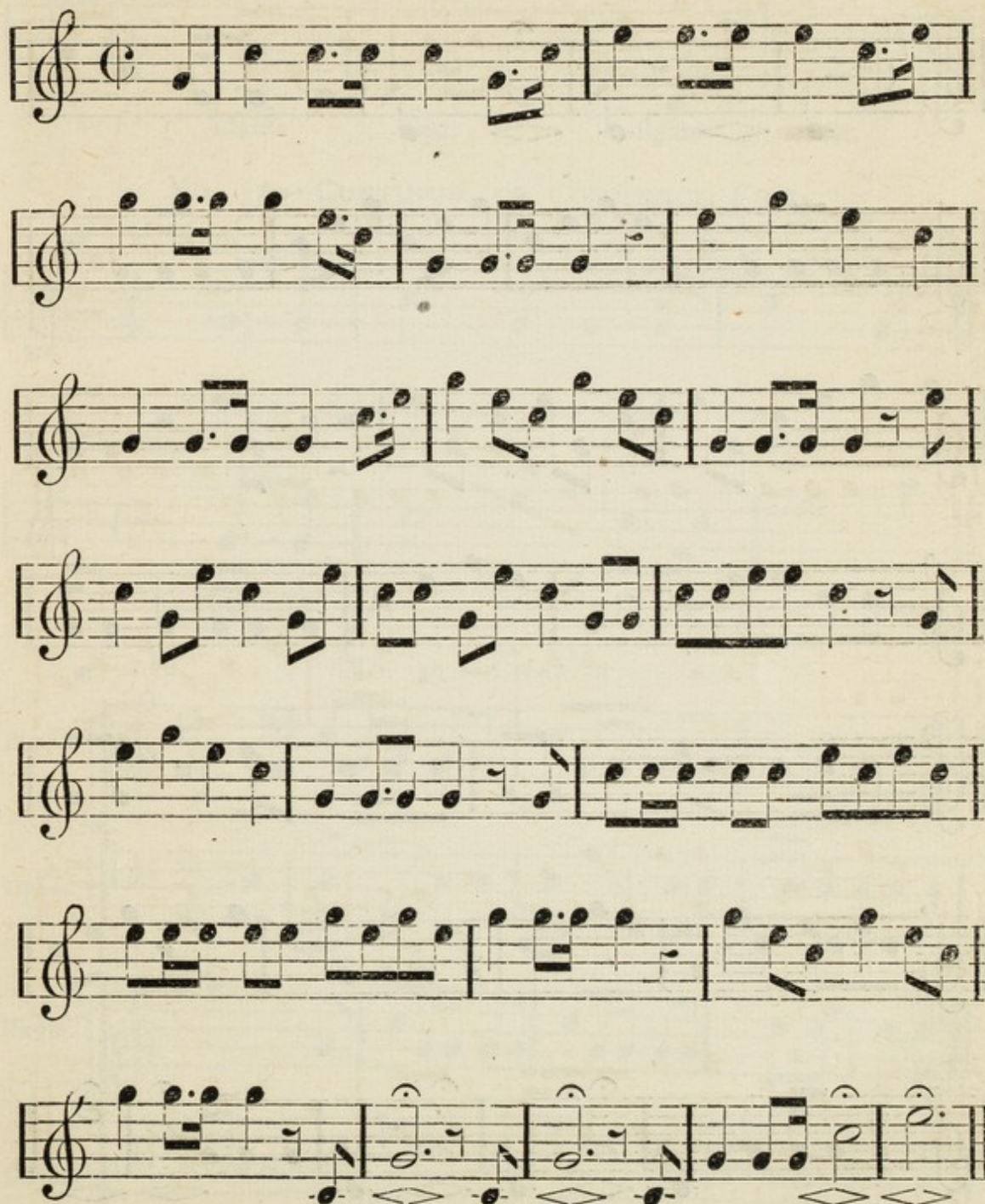
No. 27.—RETREAT.



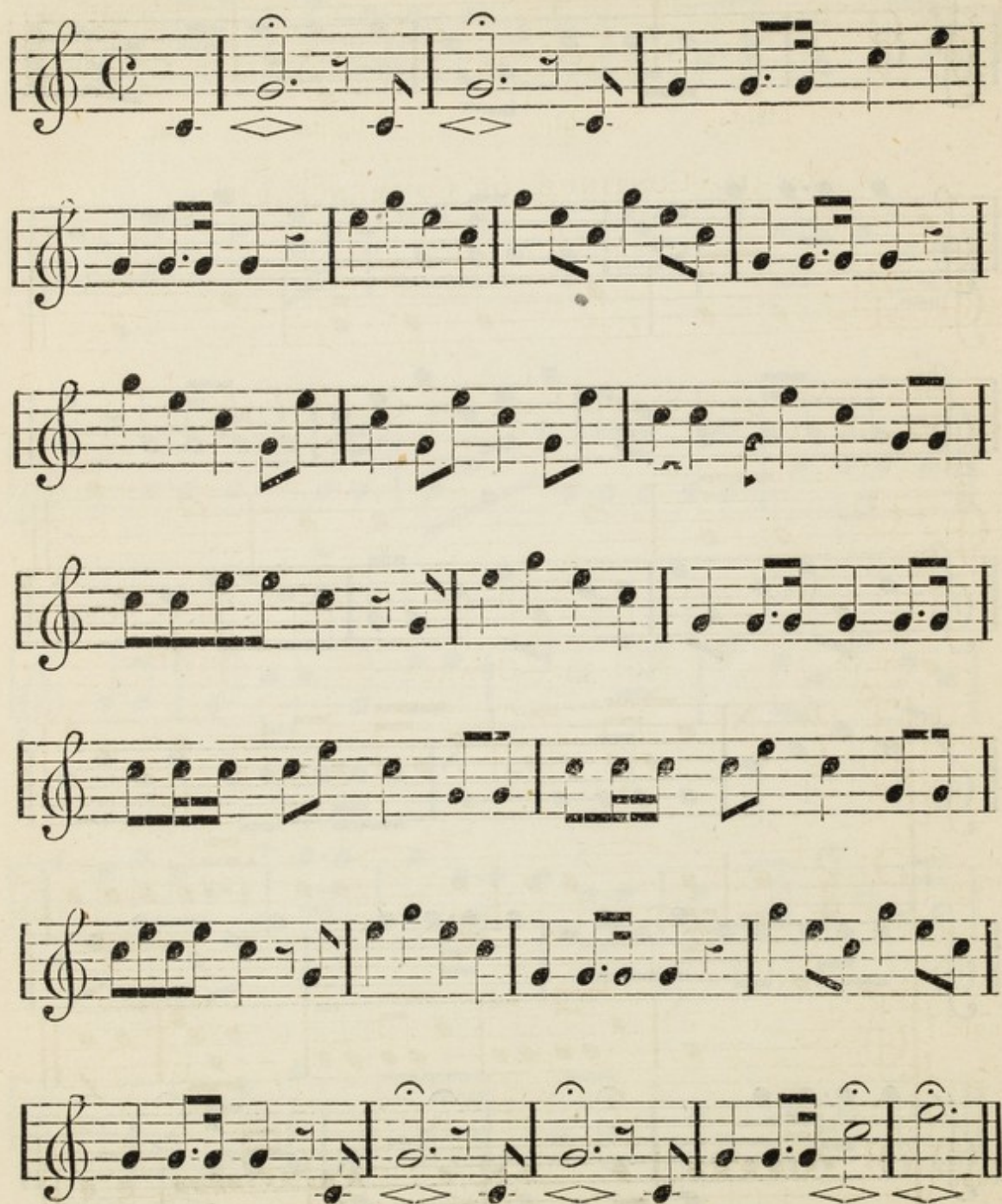


## BUGLE CALLS

189

 $\text{♩} = 76.$  No. 28.—TATTOO (*First Post*).



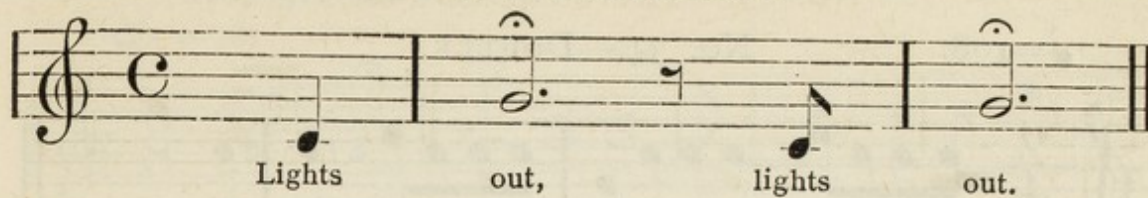
$\text{♩} = 76.$ No. 29.—TATTOO (*Last Post*).



# BUGLE CALLS

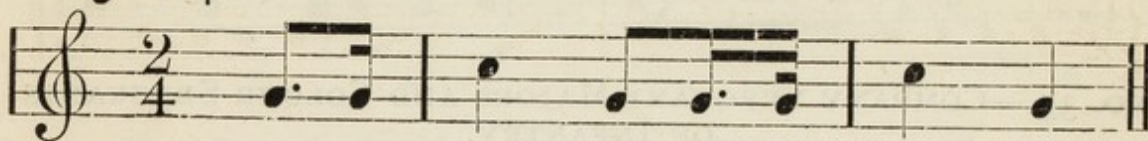
191

## No. 30.—LIGHTS OUT.



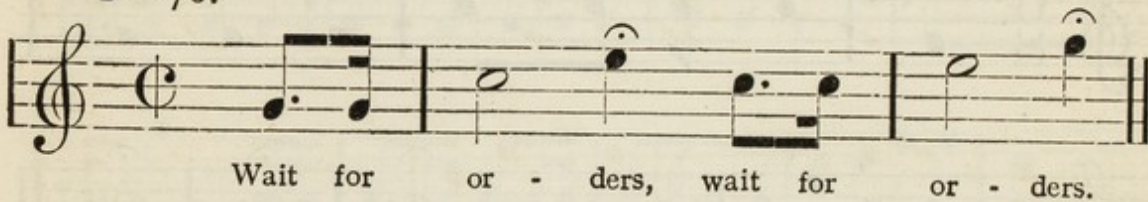
## No. 31.—CONTINUE, OR COMMENCE FIRE.

$\text{♩} = 104.$



## No. 32.—STAND FAST, OR CEASE FIRE.

$\text{♩} = 76.$



$\text{♩} = 152.$

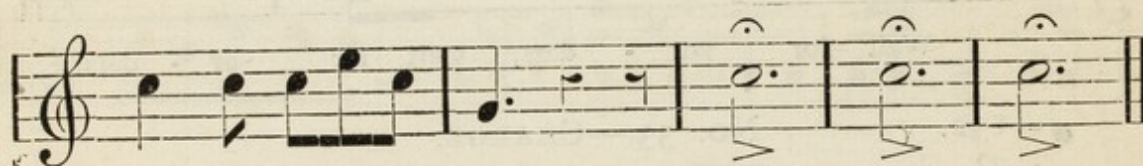
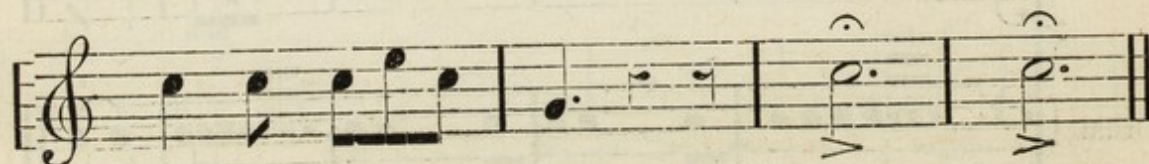
## No. 33.—CHARGE.





$\text{♩} = 108.$ 

No. 34.—DOUBLE.

No. 35.—COMPANY SERGEANT-MAJORS AND COLOUR-SERGEANTS  
OF INFANTRY. $\text{♩} = 76.$ No. 36.—COMPANY QUARTERMASTER-SERGEANTS OF INFANTRY  
AND ROYAL ARMY MEDICAL CORPS. $\text{♩} = 76.$ 



## BUGLE CALLS

193

## No. 36.—ALL NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$  $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

## No. 37.—PIONEERS.

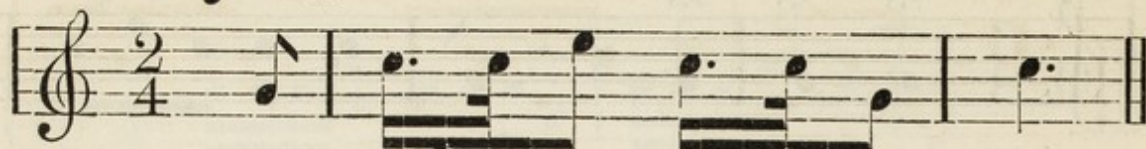
 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

## No. 38.—ORDERLY ROOM.

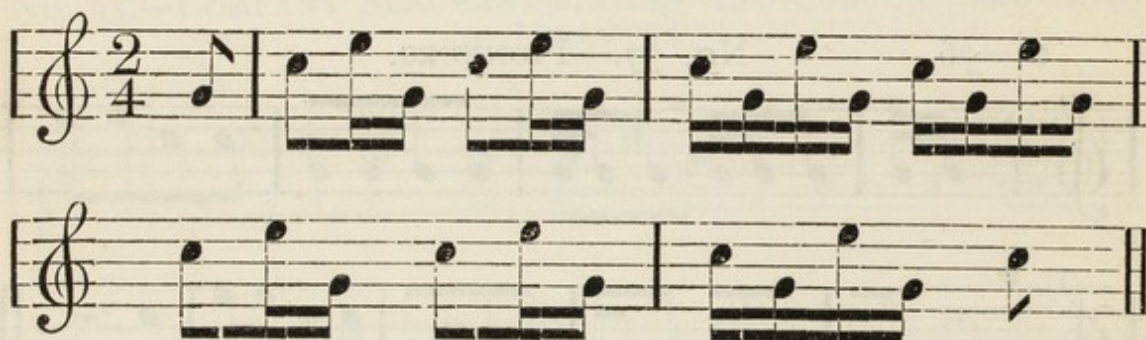




## No. 39.—RECRUITS' PARADE, OR RIDES.

 $\text{♩} = 108.$  $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

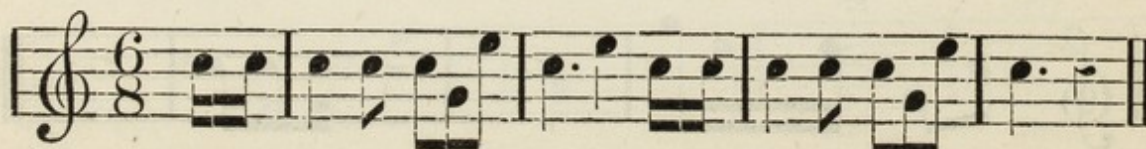
## No. 40.—FATIGUE.

 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

## No. 41.—SCHOOL.

 $\text{♩} = 76.$ 

## No. 42.—PARADE FOR PICKET.



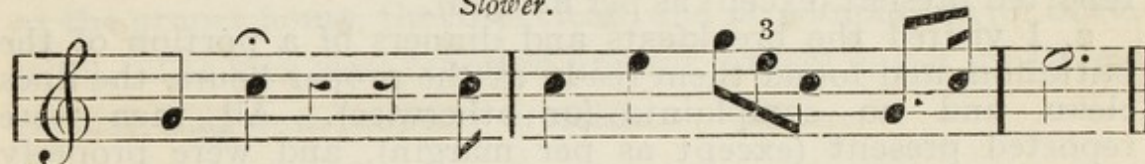


## BUGLE CALLS

195

 $\text{♩} = 108.$ 

No. 43.—ROUSE.

*Slower.*



### III. SPECIMEN COPIES OF ORDERLY OFFICERS' REPORTS, WHICH SHOULD BE ALTERED ACCORDING TO CIRCUMSTANCES.

No. .... BATTALION.

..... 19..

*From the Subaltern of the Day to the Captain of the Day.*

SIR,

1. As subaltern of the day of yesterday, I received the rouse report from the battalion orderly-sergeant. The battalion was reported present (except as per margin).

2. I visited the breakfasts and dinners of a portion of the battalion, and found them ready at the proper hours, the lines clean, and no complaints (or otherwise). All men were reported present (except as per margin), and were properly dressed.

3. I attended the issue of rations, which appeared to be good (or otherwise).

4. I visited the kitchens, wash-houses, and refuse-pits at ....., and found them clean and regular (or otherwise).

5. I visited the institute at ....., and found all correct (or otherwise).

6. I visited the guard at ..... and at ..... The guard was alert and regular, the sentries acquainted with their orders, and the guard-tent clean and in good order (or otherwise).

7. I attended at last post, when the battalion was reported present (except as per margin).

8. The battalion orderly-sergeant reported to me that lights were extinguished on Lights out sounding.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

....., LT.

*The Captain of the Day.*

*Note.—Any special report should be added after para. 8 and above the signature.*



No. .... BATTALION.

..... 19..

*From the Captain of the Day to the Officer Commanding.*

SIR,

1. As captain of the day, yesterday, I visited the breakfasts and dinners of a portion of the battalion, and found them ready at the proper hours, the lines clean, and no complaints (or otherwise). The men were reported present (except as per subaltern's report), and were properly dressed.

2. I visited the guard at ..... and at ....., and found it alert and regular, the sentries acquainted with their orders, and the guard-tent clean and in good order (or otherwise).

3. I visited the hospital at .....

4. I enclose the subaltern of the day's report, which I have examined and found correct.

I have the honour to be, sir,

Your obedient servant,

.....

*Note.—Any special report should be added after para. 4.*



#### IV. PURCHASE OR HIRE CHARGES FOR CERTAIN CAMP EQUIPMENT.

The following lists of usual purchase prices and hire charges of certain articles of camp equipment may be of use to cadet officers in estimating the probable cost of a camp. Camps which have the sanction of the Army Council are able to hire from the Army Ordnance Department if they cannot be supplied gratis.

##### ORDNANCE CHARGES FOR PURCHASE AND HIRE.

<i>Articles.</i>	<i>Price.</i>			<i>Remarks.</i>	<i>Hire at 5 per cent. for first 30 days or less.</i>		
					<i>£</i>	<i>s.</i>	<i>d.</i>
Circular linen tent .. ..	£	s.	d.	Bell tent.	£	s.	d.
Circular linen tent (later date) .. ..	2	8	9	Bell tent.	0	2	6
Double linen tent .. ..	2	17	9	..	0	2	9
Large marquee .. ..	4	6	9	..	0	4	3
Small marquee .. ..	63	13	6	35 × 17 ft.	3	3	6
Ridge pole tent .. ..	25	9	2	..	1	5	6
Store tent .. ..	17	19	9	..	0	18	0
	23	12	3	A fine big, useful tent.	1	3	6
Waterproof sheets .. ..	0	9	3	..	0	0	6
Camp kettles (12 quarts) ..	0	3	9	..	0	0	2½
Camp kettles (7 quarts) ..	0	3	8	..	0	0	2½
Camp kettles (7 quarts, newer) .. ..	0	4	0	..	0	0	2½
Folding tent lantern .. ..	0	6	3	..	0	0	3½
Hurricane lantern .. ..	0	2	6	..	0	0	1½
Galvanized iron pails (4 gallons) .. ..	0	1	7	..	0	0	1
Galvanized iron pails (3 gallons) .. ..	0	0	8½	..	0	0	0½
Washing-tubs (3½ gallons) ..	0	1	1	..	0	0	0½
Washing-tubs (8 gallons) ..	0	2	3½	..	0	0	1½
Blankets, army pattern ..	0	3	4	..	0	0	2



V.

.....Battalion.  
 .....Company Unit.  
 .....Platoon Unit. } Whichever may  
 be required.

MARCHING IN STATE.

Place.....

Date of Arrival.....

Hour of arrival in camp.....

Distribution.				Arrived.	Arriving later.	Remarks.
Captains	..	..	..			
Commanders or Lieutenants						
Sergeants	..	..	..			
Corporals	..	..	..			
Men ..	..	..	..			
Instructors	..	..	..			
Servants	..	..	..			
Horses	..	..	..			
.....	..	..	..			
.....	..	..	..			
Total	..	..	..			

Whichever may }  
 be required. { .....Commanding Battalion.  
 .....Captain Company Unit.  
 .....Commander Platoon Unit.



## APPENDIX

## VI.

.....Company Unit.

.....Platoon Unit.

## MORNING STATE.

Place.....

Date.....

<i>Distribution.</i>	<i>Captain.</i>	<i>Lieutenant.</i>	<i>Sergeants.</i>	<i>Corporals.</i>	<i>Men.</i>	<i>Instructors.</i>	<i>Remarks.</i>
For parade .. ..							
On guard .. ..							
On picket .. ..							
Classes of instruction ..							
Classes of signalling ..							
Classes of scouting ..							
Classes of first aid ..							
Classes of band ..							
Classes of bugling ..							
Classes of .. ..							
Classes of .. ..							
Absent with leave ..							
Absent without leave ..							
Sick, in hospital ..							
Sick attending hospital (not for parade) ..							
Other duties .. ..							
Total .. ..							
Increase from yesterday							
Decrease from yesterday							

.....Captain Company Unit, or  
 .....Commander Platoon Unit.



# MORNING STATE

201

.....Battalion.

## MORNING STATE.

Place.....

Date.....

<i>Distribution.</i>	<i>Commanding Officer.</i>	<i>Adjutant.</i>	<i>Quartermaster.</i>	<i>Captain.</i>	<i>Lieutenant.</i>	<i>Men.</i>	<i>Instructors.</i>	<i>Remarks.</i>
For parade .. ..								
Battalion duties ..								
Company unit duties								
Classes of instruction								
Sick in hospital ..								
Sick attending hospital								
Absent with leave ..								
Absent without leave								
.....								
.....								
.....								
Total .. ..								
Increase since yesterday								
Decrease since yesterday								

.....Commanding Battalion.



## VII. MENDING, CLEANING, AND WASHING CLOTHES.

**1. To Sew on a Button.**—(i) **Linen Buttons on Underclothing.** Take a strong needle (No. 5), and thread it with a long thread of cotton (No. 30). Draw the cotton through the needle until the ends are even, and then make a knot at the end of the thread by winding it twice round the finger and slipping the needle through the loops thus formed. For white and light underclothing use white cotton, for dark material use cotton of a shade to match the material as nearly as possible. Fasten the thread in with a stitch or two at the place where the button is to be. Next bring the needle out through the middle of the button and make eight stitches, diverging like a star, from the centre (see Fig. 28).



**Fig. 28.—Method of Sewing on a Linen Button.**

This done, bring the needle out between the stuff and the button, twist the cotton six or seven times round the button, and then push the needle through to the wrong side of the material, and fasten off by taking three or four stitches in the same place under the centre of the button.

(ii) **Buttons with Holes or Shanks.**—Follow the same procedure as before, but bring the thread through one hole in the button, and pass it back through the opposite hole, continuing this six or seven times before winding the thread round the button to finish off. If there are four holes in the button, pass the thread through one hole, then back through the opposite hole; next bring it to the top through a third hole, and then pass it back through the hole opposite to this, continuing this several times before fastening off as before. The thread will then form a cross on the button. For buttons with shanks, pass the thread through the shank, and then through the material ten or twelve times, and then fasten off.

(iii) If the button-hole for which the button is intended be



made of thick material, it is advisable to make a neck to the button in the following manner: Proceed to sew on the button in the manner described, first placing a large pin between the button and the material. Before fastening off withdraw the pin, and wind the thread several times round the slack threads left between the material and button. The space thus formed will allow for the thickness of the material.

**2. To Darn Socks.**—All darns should be made on the wrong side of the material, so turn the sock inside out before proceeding to mend it. Take a good-sized darning-needle, and black or coloured wool to match the sock. Put the left hand inside the sock, holding the sock so that the place to be mended is stretched taut across the hand. The longitudinal or warp threads must be made first. To do this, run the needle in and out of the material from about  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch above the hole to about  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch below it, drawing the wool straight across the damaged part (Fig. 29). Having completed the warp threads, which should stretch a little beyond each side of the hole, turn the work round and proceed to do the same in the opposite direction to form the woof threads, this time passing the needle over and under each alternate warp thread (Fig. 30). The darn when completed should form a square, and the threads should lie so close together that the darn should replace the original web. Figs. 29 and 30 show the threads well apart for the sake of clearness only. Do not draw the wool tightly when running the stitches backwards and forwards, and be careful to leave a small loop each time a turn is made to allow for the shrinking of the wool in washing, so that it will not pull the darn together and make a hard lump, which would cause a blister on the foot.

**3. To remove Stains from Uniforms.**—(i) First brush the stained garment thoroughly before proceeding to remove the stain. Then wet a cloth-ball, allowing it to soak for a minute or two in water, preferably hot, rub the stain with this until a lather is produced, then wipe off all the lather with a cloth wrung out in cold water. If a cloth-ball is not available, rub the stain with a clean cloth dipped in a strong solution of water and ammonia. Stains may be frequently removed with soap and warm water, but the soap must be well sponged out, or a white mark will be left on the material.

(ii) Petrol and benzene will remove nearly all stains, but their



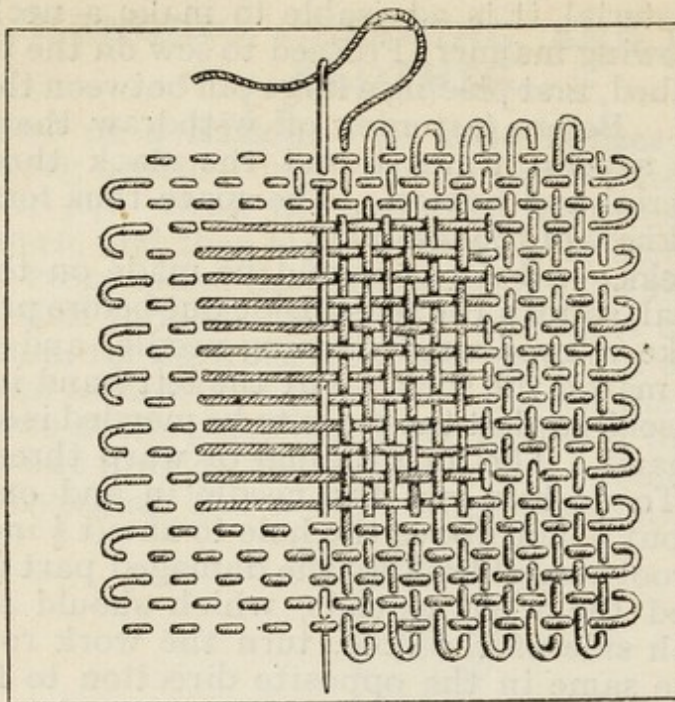


Fig. 30.— Method of making  
Woof Threads.

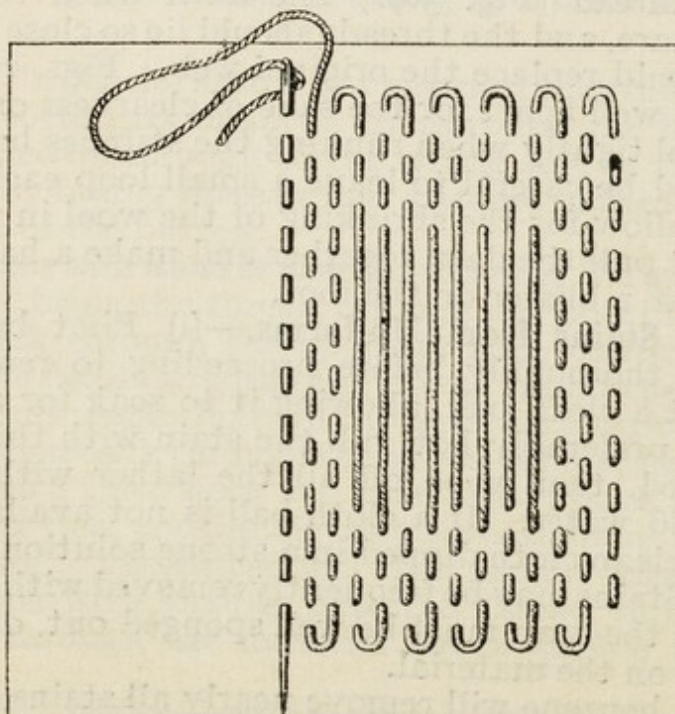


Fig. 29.— Method of making  
Warp Threads.

DARNING.



use should be strictly forbidden to men and cadets in camp owing to their inflammable nature.

(iii) Grease stains may be removed by laying a piece of blotting-paper or brown paper over the stain, and then pressing with a hot iron on top of the paper, which will absorb the melted grease.

**4. Directions for washing Flannel Shirts, Underclothing, Socks, etc.**—To wash flannel shirts, underclothing, socks, etc., make a lather with ordinary washing soap in fairly hot water, dip in the garments, and wash thoroughly, taking care to remove all dirt. The water must not be too hot, or flannels will shrink and colours may fade. Next rinse out the garments in two or three lots of clean water until they are free of soap, then wring out quickly, and hang to dry, if possible, out of doors in the case of flannel garments. White cotton garments may be left to soak in cold water for half an hour with advantage before being washed in the manner described above, and should also, when possible, be dried in the sun. If facilities are available, garments should be ironed before being worn.

# VIII. USEFUL KNOTS.

*Figure of 8*

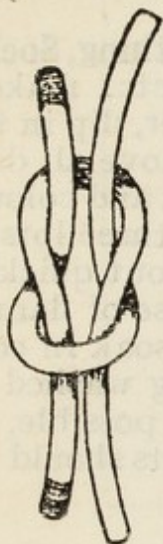
*Thumb.*



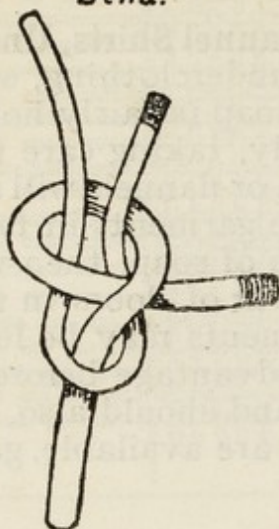
1. To make a stop on a rope, or to prevent the end from unfraying, or to prevent its slipping through a block—the *thumb knot* or the *figure-of-eight*.



Reef



Single Sheet Bend.

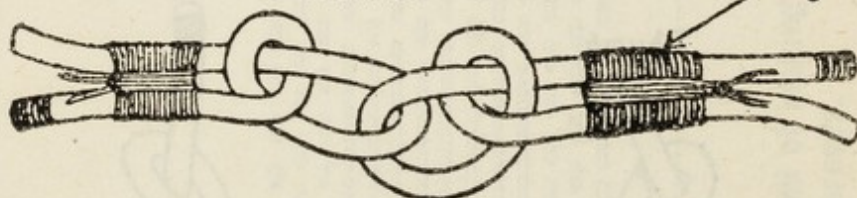


Double Sheet Bend.



Hawser Bend

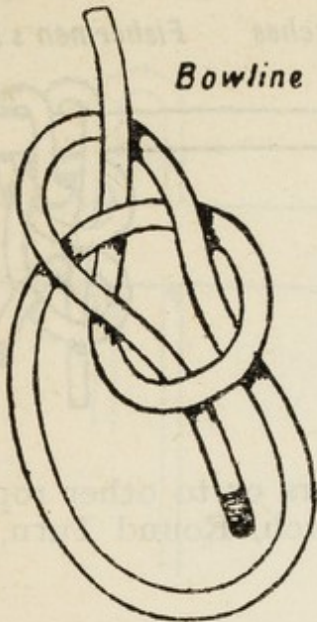
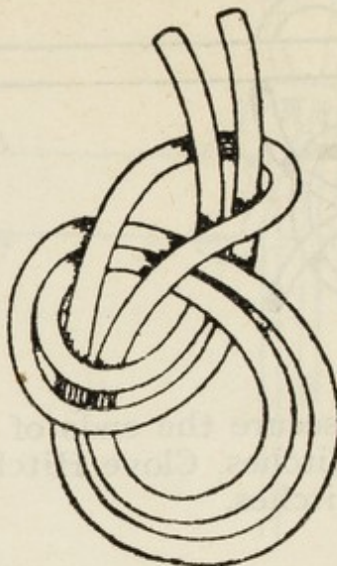
Seizing



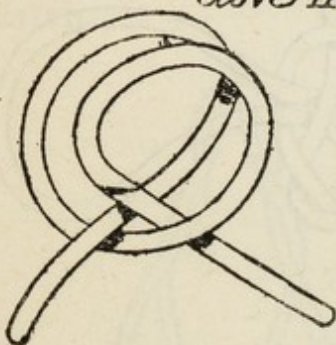
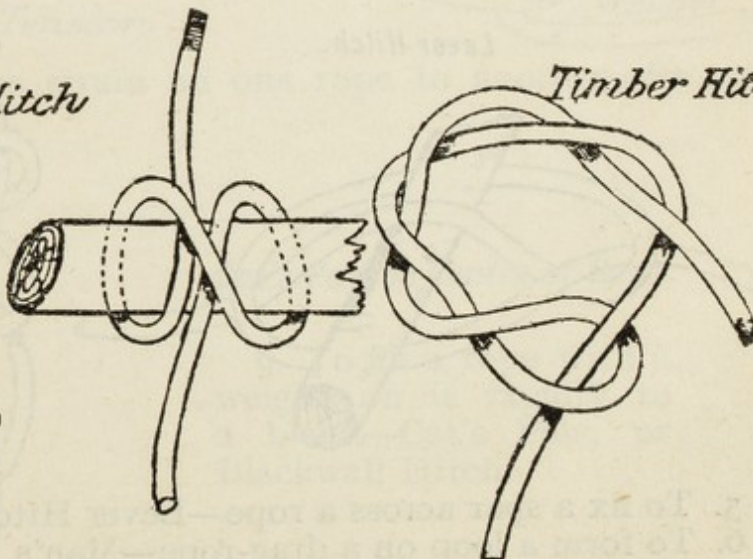
## 2 To join two ropes together—

Same size (dry)	..	..	..	Reef.
Different sizes (dry)	..	..	..	Single Sheet Bend.
" " (wet ropes)	..	..	..	Double Sheet Bend.
" " or large cables	..	..	..	Hawser Bend.

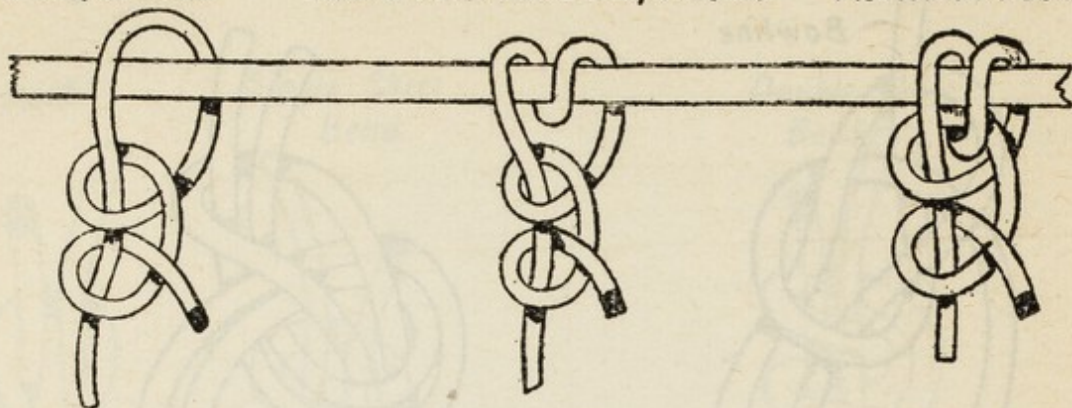


*Bowline**Bowline on a Bight.*

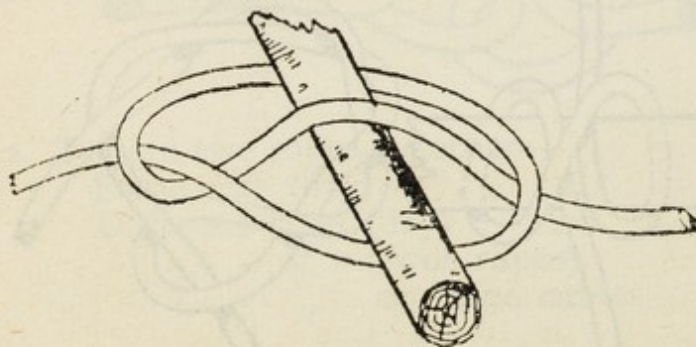
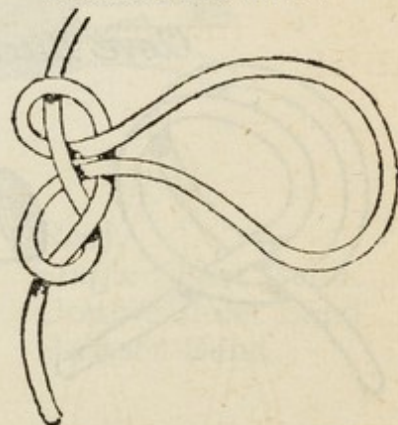
3. To form a loop or *bight* on a rope which will not slip—the *bowline* for a loop at the end of a rope, the *bowline on a bight* for a loop in the middle, with a double of the rope.

*Clove Hitch**Timber Hitch*



*2 Half Hitches**Round Turn and 2 Half Hitches**Fishermen's Bend*

4. To secure the ends of ropes to spars or to other ropes—  
2 Half Hitches, Clove Hitch, Timber Hitch, Round Turn, and  
2 Half Hitches.

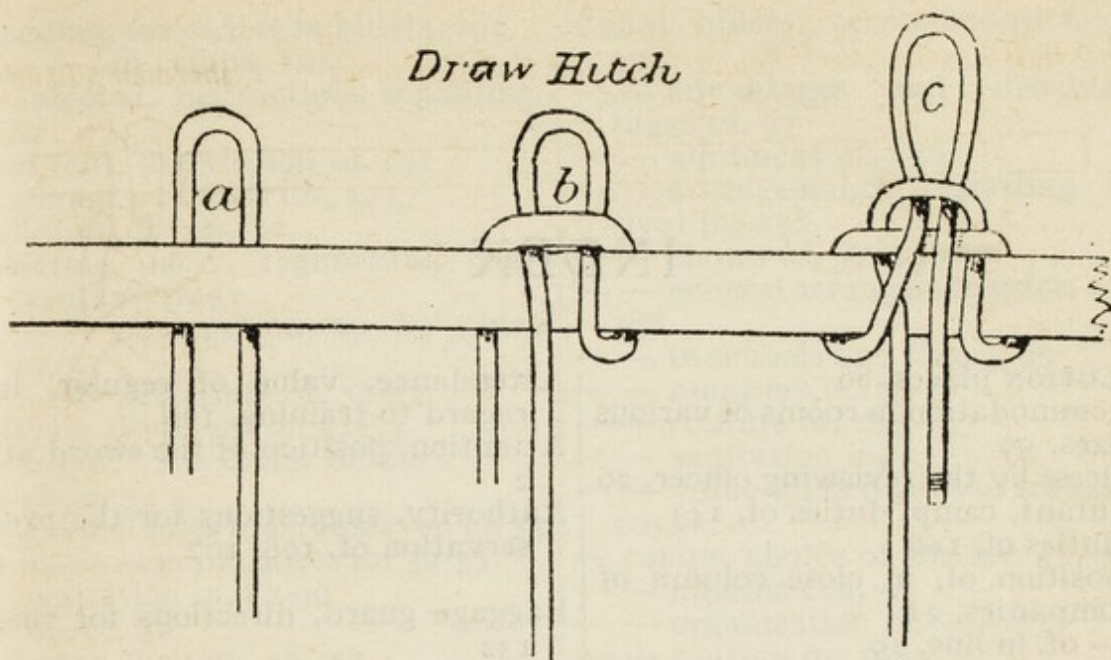
*Lever Hitch.**Man Harness Hitch.*

5. To fix a spar across a rope—Lever Hitch.

6. To form a loop on a drag-rope—Man's Harness Hitch.

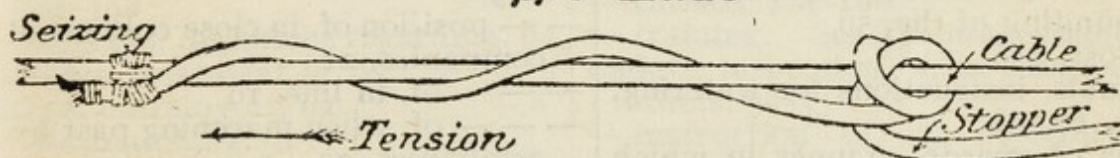


*Draw Hitch*

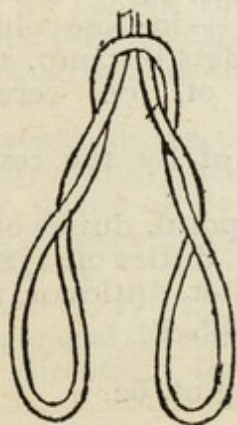


7. To secure a head-rope, boat's painter, etc., to a post ring or rope, so that it can be quickly released—Draw Hitch.

*Stopper Hitch*



8. To transfer the strain on one rope to another—Stopper Hitch.



*Cat's Paw on Centre of Rope.*

9. To fix a rope with a weight on it rapidly to a block—Cat's Paw, or Blackwall Hitch.



## INDEX

- ABLUTION places, 86
- Accommodation in rooms of various sizes, 99
- Address by the reviewing officer, 26
- Adjutant, camp, duties of, 143
  - duties of, 146
  - position of, in close column of companies, 21
  - — of, in line, 19
  - — of, when marching past by companies, 23
  - — — — in close column, 25
- Advancing in review order, 25
- Alarm, directions regarding the sounding of the, 50
  - post, 156
- Animals, instructions for watering, 64, 67, 68
- Arms of guards, manner in which to be carried, 43
  - of sentries, manner in which to be carried, 43
  - to be guarded in billets, 54
- Arrival in billets, arrangements regarding, 138
  - in camp, arrangements regarding, 132-134
  - — choice of day for, 131
  - — duties to be carried out before, 119
  - of troops in quarters, arrangements to be made on, 49
- Athletic sports, encouragement of, 116
- Attendance, value of regular, in regard to training, 106
- Attention, position of the sword at, 2
- Authority, suggestions for the preservation of, 106, 107
- Baggage guard, directions for the, 132
- Band, directions for, when marching past, 24
- Barley-water, recipe for, 174
- Battalion commander, duties of, 145
  - — position of, in close column of companies, 21
  - — — of, in line, 19
  - — — of, when marching past by companies, 23
  - — — — — in close column, 25
  - — salute of, when marching past by companies, 23
  - — — — — in close column, 25
  - drill for cadets in camp, 109
  - formation of, on ceremonial parades, 19
  - inspection of by the reviewing officer, 21
  - orderly corporal, duties of, 151
  - — sergeant, duties of, 151
  - quartermaster, duties of, 147
- Bayonets, fixing, 9
  - unfixing, 9
- Bedding, airing of, 62



- Bedding, for cadets in billets, 101
- — — in camps, 101
- infected, instructions regarding, 62
- Bell tent, description of, 101
- Beverages, recipes for, 174
- Billeting orders, 52
- Billeting party, regimental, composition of, 51
- — — information to be given to, 51
- — — procedure of, 51-53
- Billets, allotment of, 51-53
- cadet. See Cadet billets
- close, 54
- general rules to be observed in, 53
- inspection of cadets in, 30-35
- sanitation in, 87-90
- use of, 48
- Bivouac shelters, 56, 57
- Bivouacs, choice of site for, 55
- directions regarding arms in, 56
- Blankets, airing of, 62
- army, hire and purchase charges for, 198
- infected, directions regarding, 62
- Blisters, treatment of, 93
- Boots, cleaning of, 92
- for marching, 92
- Bounds, instructions regarding, for cadet camps and billets, 102
- Bread, inspection of, 163
- ration for cadets, 165
- Breakfasts, diet for cadet, 166
- Brigade quartermaster, duties of, 144
- — sergeant, duties of, 145
- sergeant-major, duties of, 145
- Brigadier, duties of, 143
- major, duties of, 143
- Bugle calls, 141
- — music of, 178-195
- Buglers, general directions for, 178,
- Buttons, directions for sewing on, 202
- Cadet billets, accommodation in, 99
- — advantages and disadvantages of, 97
- — allotment of, 136
- — arrangements regarding arrival in, 138
- — choice of, 98, 136
- — general arrangements for, 135, 138
- — in schools and farms, 99
- — numbers in, 98
- — routine in, 155-157
- — sanitation in, 137
- — value of, in regard to training, 105
- camps, choice of site for, 95, 96
- — numbers in, 94
- — organization of, 94, 117
- — routine in, 138-155
- — value of, in regard to training, 105
- corps, inspection of, 28-30
- diet and diet-sheets, 166-169
- rations, 164-166
- training. See Training, cadet
- Cadets, inspection of, in camp and billets, 30-35
- instruction of, in cooking in mess-tins, 170-172
- Calls, bugle, 141, 178-195
- roll, 140
- Camp adjutant, duties of, 143
- commandant, duties of, 143
- — senior cadet officer to act as, 118
- duties, instructions of cadets in, 109
- equipment for cadets to be reduced to a minimum, 100
- — necessary for cadets, 101
- — purchase and hire charges for, 198
- — return of, 134
- incinerators, construction of, 85



- Camp kettles, hire and purchase charges for, 198  
 — quartermaster, duties of, 119, 133, 144  
 — sergeant-major, duties of, 145  
 Camps, arrangements to be made for reception of troops in, 55  
 — choice of sites for, 55  
 — directions for laying out, 120  
 — — for planning, 120  
 — for cadets. See Cadet camps  
 — information to be given to commander on arrival in, 56  
 — shape and size of, 122  
 — use of, 48  
 Canteens, cadet, arrangements for, 158  
 Captain of the day, duties of, 149  
 — — — report by, 149, 197  
 Carry, position of the, 4, 5  
 Carts, directions for loading, 130  
 Ceremonial, general remarks on, 1  
 — parades, 30  
 — parades, the battalion on, 19-26  
 — — the company on, 12-18  
 Challenging by sentries, directions for, 38  
 Chaplain, duties of, 145  
 Chickens, cooking of, without utensils, 175  
 Classes for cadets in camp, suggestions for, 109  
 — special, inspection of, 33  
 Clean man, 42  
 Cleaning of billets, 88  
 — of boots, 92  
 — of closets, 90  
 — of clothes, 60, 203  
 — of hair-brushes, 91  
 — of kitchen utensils, 83  
 — of mess-tins, 161, 171  
 — of receptacles for storing water, 69  
 — of urinals, 90  
 — of water-bottles, 63  
 Cleanliness in billets, importance of, 88  
 — in quarters, importance of, 59  
 — personal, directions regarding, 91  
 — — importance of, 91  
 Close billets, 54  
 — column of companies, marching past in, 24  
 — — — positions of officers in, 21  
 Closets, cleaning of, 90  
 — earth, directions for use of, 89  
 — water, directions for use of, 89  
 Clothes, care of, instructions for, 60  
 — cleaning of, 60, 203  
 — mending of, instructions for, 202, 203  
 — methods of drying, in camp, 61  
 — washing of, instructions for, 205  
 Clothing for cadets, instructions regarding, 60  
 Colour, directions for carrying the, 12  
 — marching off the, 16  
 — — on the, 15  
 — party, 15  
 — — position of, when marching past, 25  
 Column of route, marching past in, 26  
 Commanding officers, inspection by, 34  
 — — responsible for all sanitary measures, 59  
 Committee for organizing recreation for cadets, 115  
 — organization, for camps, 117  
 Companies, marching past by, 22  
 Company commander, duties of, 151  
 — — position of, in close column of companies, 21  
 — — — of, in line, 14  
 — — — of, when marching past by companies, 23  
 — — — — — in close column, 25



- Company formation of, on ceremonial parades, 12
- inspection of, by reviewing officer, 16
- marching past, 16
- officers, duties of, 151
- — salute when marching past by companies, 23
- orderly corporal, duties of, 153
- — sergeant, duties of, 152
- quartermaster-sergeant, position of, in line, 14
- sergeant-major, position of, in line, 14
- sizing a, 13
- telling off, or proving the, 13
- Competitions for cadets, 110, 115-117
- Conduct of cadets in billets, 157
- Conferences as a means of training cadet officers, 113
- subjects to be discussed at, 114
- value of, 114
- Contamination of food, 71
- of milk, 72
- of water-supply, 65, 67, 68, 69
- Cooking, 169-175
- in mess-tins, 170-174
- places, 122
- without utensils, 174
- Corporals, orderly, duties of, 151, 153
- Darning socks, directions for, 203
- Departure from camp, choice of day for, 131
- Detailing for guard, directions for, 41
- Detraining, directions for, 131
- Diet for cadets, 166
- Diet-sheets for cadets, 166-169
- Dinners, diet for cadet, 166
- Discipline of cadets, points to be noted by inspecting officer, 32
- preservation of, in camps and billets, 50, 107, 114
- Disease increased by overcrowding, 58
- transmitted by contaminated food and persons, 71
- Disposal of excreta, directions for, 73
- — in billets, 88
- refuse, directions for, 84
- — in billets, 88
- of waste water, directions for, 86
- — — in billets, 90
- Drainage of tents, 125
- Draughts, avoidance of, 88
- Drawing swords, 3, 5
- Drying clothes in camp, methods of, 61
- Duties, camp, instruction in, 109
- daily, mounting of, 42, 50
- fatigue, suggestions regarding, 108
- of adjutant, 146
- of battalion commander, 145
- of brigade quartermaster, 144
- of brigadier, 143
- — -major, 143
- — orderly corporal, 151
- — orderly sergeant, 151
- — quartermaster, 147
- — sergeant-major, 145
- of camp adjutant, 143
- — commandant, 143
- — quartermaster, 119, 133, 144
- — sergeant-major, 145
- of captain of the day, 149
- of chaplain, 145
- of company commander, 151
- — orderly corporal, 153
- — sergeant, 152
- of medical officer, 145
- of non-commissioned officers in charge of tents, 154
- of orderly officers, 149
- of pickets in camp and billets, 46
- of platoon commanders, 151
- of section commanders, 151



- Duties of sentries, 37
  - of sergeant-major, 148
  - of subaltern of the day, 149
  - of tent commanders, 151
  - orderlies, 155
  - of transport officer, 127
  - of unit commanders, 153
- Earth closets, directions for use, 89
- Entraining, directions for, 131
- Entrenching, field, for cadets in camp, 110
- Equipment, camp, 100
  - — hire and purchase charges for, 198
  - — necessary for cadets, 101
  - drawing of, on arrival in camp, 134
  - issue of, on arrival in camp, 134
  - of cadets in billets, 101
  - personal, of cadets, 100
  - return of, procedure in regard to, 134
  - taking over, 119
- Excreta, disposal of, directions for, 73
- Exposure, precautions to be taken against ill-effects of, 104
- Farms as billets for cadets, 99
  - as sites for cadet camps, 96
- Fatigue, avoidance of, in training cadets, 104
  - duties, suggestions in regard to, 108
- Feet, care of the, 91
  - inspection of, 91, 93
  - prevention of sore, 92
  - tender, treatment of, 92
- Field entrenching, 110
  - training, 110
- Fire, directions to be observed in the event of, 156
  - precautions against, in billets, 54
  - — — in camps, 123
- Fish, cooking of, without utensils, 174
- Fixing bayonets, 9
- Flag, national, 176
  - — directions for hoisting, 177
  - saluting the, 140
- Flies, absence of, a test of cleanliness, 59
  - to be prevented from gaining access to kitchens, 72
- Food contamination of, 71
  - — of, prevention of, 71
  - distribution of, 160
  - inspection of, 70, 71, 162
  - not to be eaten in tents when avoidable, 63, 71
  - tinned, inspection of, 71
- General salute, 21
- Grease-traps, construction of, 81
- Groceries, issue of, 158
- Grocery ration, 165
  - store, arrangement for cadet, 157
- Guard, detailing for, 41
  - duties, training in, 40
  - mounting, directions for, 42
  - — dress for, 43
  - room, provision of, 136
- Guards, arms of, manner in which to be carried, 43
  - directions to be observed by, 43
  - honours and salutes to be paid by, 44
  - posting of, 44
  - preparations by, for duty, 41
  - provision of, in cadet billets, 156
  - relieving of, 44
  - turning out by, 44, 150
  - — — at night, 45
- Halt, officer's salute at the, 6
  - position of the sword at the, 3
- Handcarts, directions for loading, 130



- Health of cadets, instructions for preserving, 105
- Hire charges for camp equipment, 198
  - of transport, cost of, 128
  - — directions regarding, 127
- Honours to be paid by guards, 44
- Horse lines, instructions regarding, 87
- Hospital tent, provision of, in cadet camps and billets, 103
- Hygiene, importance of training cadets in, 60
  - special classes and examinations in, 60
- Incinerators, construction of camp, 85
- Infantry bugle calls, 178-195
- Infected bedding not to be returned to store, 62
  - persons, contact with, 103
  - — not to be allowed to handle food, 72
- Infectious diseases, precautions in regard to, 104
- Inspecting officers, hints for, 28
  - — points to be noted by, 32-35
- Inspection by commanding officers, 34
  - ceremonial, 30
  - of a battalion by the reviewing officer, 21
  - of a company by the reviewing officer, 16
  - of cadet corps, 28-30
  - of cadets in camps and billets, 30-35
    - of feet, 91, 93
    - of food, 70, 71, 162
    - of guards, 42
    - of interior economy, 31, 34, 53
    - of latrines, 77
    - of rations, 162-164
    - of training, 31-33
- Inspection, unnecessary, avoidance of, 30
  - value of, 27
- Instruction in cooking in mess-tins, 170
  - suggestions regarding indoor, 109
  - suitable subjects of, in camps and billets, 109
- Instructors, suggestions for guidance of, in training cadets, 111
- Interior economy of camps, inspection of, 31, 34, 35
- Intervals between tents, 122
  - — units, 122
- Irish stew, recipe for, 173
- Journey from camp, arrangements regarding, 131-133
  - to camp, arrangements regarding, 131-133
- Kettles, camp, hire and purchase charges for, 198
- Kitchens, cleaning of utensils in, 83
  - general instructions regarding, 81
    - position of, 81
- Kits, airing of, 61
- Knots, various useful, 205-209
- Lakes, use of, as water-supply, 67
- Lanterns, hire and purchase charges for, 198
- Last post, 141
- Latrine accommodation, necessary extent of, 73, 75
  - trenches, long and deep, 74
  - — short and shallow, 74
  - — — construction of, 74, 75
  - — types of, 74
- Latrines, administration of, 77
  - deodorization of, 78
  - drainage of, 77
  - in billets, directions for use of, 89, 90



- Latrines, inspection of, 77  
 — position, 73, 122  
 — precautions to be taken on dis-  
 use, 78  
 — removal system in regard to, 78  
 — screens for, 77, 122  
 Laying out camps, directions for,  
 120  
 Lectures on sanitation and hygiene,  
 60  
 — suggestions for, 109  
 Lemonade, recipe for, 174  
 Lights in quarters, instruction re-  
 garding, 50, 54  
 — out, 156  
 Line, description of, for use in  
 laying out camps, 120  
 — position of officers and non-  
 commissioned officers in, 14, 19  
 Lines, company, directions to be  
 observed in regard to, 153  
 Liquor, supply of, in billets, to be  
 controlled, 54  
 Loading of equipment, 129, 130  
 Loads, table of, for transport, 128  
 Lock-up, 156  
  
 Major, senior, position of, in close  
 column of companies, 21  
 — — — of, in line, 19  
 — — — of, when marching past by  
 companies, 23  
 — — — — — in close column, 25  
 March past, officers' salute on the, 6  
 Marching in states, 134, 199  
 — off the colour, 16  
 — on the colour 15  
 — past, a company, 16  
 — by companies, 22  
 — in close column of companies,  
 24  
 — in column of route, 26  
 Markers, directions for company,  
 142  
 Meals of absentees, 161  
  
 Meals, serving of, 160  
 Meat, cooking of, without utensils,  
 174  
 — inspection of, 163  
 — pudding, recipe for, 174  
 — ration, 165  
 Medical examination of cadets be-  
 fore attending camp, 103  
 — officer, arrangements to be made  
 regarding, 104  
 — — duties of, 145  
 Mending clothes, directions for, 202,  
 203  
 Messing arrangements for cadets,  
 166  
 — — for, in cadet billets, 157, 160  
 — — for, in cadet camps, 159  
 — of cadet officers, arrangements  
 for, 123, 160  
 Mess-tins, arrangement of, for  
 cooking, 171, 172  
 — cleaning of, 161, 171  
 — cooking in, 170-174  
 — uses of, 170  
 Military efficiency, tests in, by in-  
 specting officers, 32  
 Milk, contamination of, 72  
 — — of, prevention of, 72  
 Morning states, 140, 200, 201  
 Mounted officers' salute at the halt,  
 6  
 — — — on the march past, 8  
 — — — when marching past by  
 companies, 23  
 Mounting guards, 42  
 Musketry training, 110  
  
 National flag, 176  
 — — directions for hoisting, 177  
 Night operations, elementary, 111  
 Non-commissioned officers, cadet,  
 training of, in camps and billets,  
 113  
 — — in charge of tents, duties of,  
 154



- Non-commissioned officers, position of, in line, 14
- Notice-boards, use of, in camps, 123
- Officers, cadet, training of, by conferences, 113
  - position of, in close column of companies, 21
  - — of, in line, 14, 19
  - — of, when marching past by companies, 23
    - — — — in close column, 25
  - salute of, at the halt, 6
  - — of, on the march past, 6
  - — of, when marching past by companies, 23
    - — — — in close column, 25
  - staff of, for cadet camps, 118
  - swords of, method of carrying on ceremonial parades, 2
    - — of, movements with, 2-8
- Order, sloping arms from the, 10
- Ordering arms from the slope, 11
- Orderly corporals, duties of, 151, 153
  - officers, duties of, 149
  - — reports, specimen copies of, 196, 197
  - sergeants, duties of, 151, 152
- Orders, issue of, in cadet billets, 156
  - — of, in camps, 142
  - to be given on arrival in camp, 133
- Organization committee, 117
  - of cadet camps, 95
  - of camps, general rules for, 117-119
- Outpost exercise, points to be noted by inspecting officer, 33
- Oven accommodation in camp, considerations regarding, 166
- Packers, directions for, in regard to tents, 124, 126
- Packing equipment, 129, 130
- Pails, galvanized iron, hire and purchase charges for, 193
- Parades, ceremonial, 12-26, 30
- Pegmen, directions for, 124, 126
- Pegs, directions for driving in, 125
- Personal cleanliness, directions regarding, 91
  - — importance of, 91
  - equipment for cadets, 100
- Pickets in camps and billets, 46
  - — — duties of, 46
  - inlying, instructions regarding, 50
  - provision of, in cadet billets, 156
- Pigeons, cooking of, without utensils, 175
- Pitching tents, 123
  - — directions for, 124
- Planning of camps, directions for, 120
- Platoon commanders, duties of, 151
  - — position of, in close column of companies, 21
  - — — of, in line, 14
  - — — of, when marching past by companies, 23
    - — — — in close column, 25
- Polemen, directions for, in pitching tents, 124
- Ponds, use of, as water-supply, 67
- Position of officers in close column of companies, 21
  - — in line, 14, 19
  - — when marching past by companies, 23
    - — — — in close column, 25
- Posting of guards, 44
  - of sentries, 36, 40
- Posts, sentry, necessary number of, in camps, 36
- Present, sloping arms from the, 11
- Presenting arms from the slope, 10
- Private ground, advantage of, as site for cadet camps, 96



- Prize competitions, 110, 115-117  
 — fund, 115, 159  
 Proving a company, 13  
 Punishments of cadets, 103  
 Purchase charges for camp equipment, 198.
- Quartermaster, duties of, 144, 145, 147  
 Quarters, general arrangements on the arrival of troops in, 49  
 — — information regarding, 48, 49  
 Quick march, directions for carrying the sword at the, 3
- Rabbit, cooking of, without utensils, 175  
 Rainwater, unsuitable for use as water-supply, 65  
 Rations, daily, for cadets, 165  
 — inspection of, 70, 162-164  
 — management of cadet, 164  
 Recipes for cooking in mess-tins, 173  
 Recover, position of the, 3, 5  
 Recreation committee for cadet camps and billets, 115  
 Refreshment-tent for cadets, arrangements for, 159  
 Refuse, burning of, 84  
 — disposal of, directions for, 84, 161  
 — methods of disposing of, 84  
 — profits from sale of, 169  
 — receptacles for, 84  
 — removal of, 84  
 — tub, 169  
 Regimental billeting party, composition of, 51  
 — — — information to be given to, 51  
 — — — procedure of, 51-53  
 Reliefs for guards, 44  
 — for sentries, 39  
 — — — formation of, 40
- Removal system in regard to latrines, 78  
 Reports, specimen copies of orderly officers, 196, 197  
 Return of equipment, 134  
 Returning swords, 8  
 Reveille, 140  
 Review order, advance in, 25  
 Reviewing officer, address by, 26  
 — — inspection of a battalion by the, 21  
 — — — of a company by the, 16  
 Rifle, movements with the, 9-11  
 Rifles, inspection of, 35  
 Rivers, use of, as water-supply, 67  
 Roll-calls in cadet camps and billets, 140  
 Rooms of various sizes, accommodation in, 99  
 Rounds, daily, to be made by commanders in billets, 157  
 Routine, arrangements regarding, in cadet billets, 155  
 — in camps, 138-155  
 — table, 138  
 Royal salute, when given, 21
- Salute, general, 21  
 — of officers, at the halt, 6  
 — — on the march past, 6  
 — — when marching past by companies, 23  
 — — — — in close column, 25  
 — royal, when given, 21  
 Salutes to be paid by guards, 44  
 Saluting base, 18  
 — by sentries, directions for, 39  
 — point, 18  
 — the flag, 140  
 Sanitation, definition of, 58  
 — importance of the study of, 60  
 — in billets, 87-90, 137  
 — need for, 58  
 — special classes and examinations for instruction in, 60



- Schemes for cadet training in camp, 108-113
- Schools, use of, for billeting cadets, 99
- Sea-pie, recipe for, 173
- Section commanders, duties of, 151
- Sentries, arms of, manner in which to be carried, 43
  - challenging by, 38
  - duties of, 37
  - number of posts for which to be found, 36
  - posting of, 36, 40
  - provision of, in cadet camps and billets, 156
  - relief of, 39
  - saluting by, 39
- Sergeant-major, brigade or camp, duties of, 145
  - duties of, 148
- Sergeants, brigade quartermaster, duties of, 145
  - orderly, duties of, 151, 152
  - position of, in line, 14
- Shirts, directions for washing, 205
- Sick cadets, instructions regarding, 104
  - inspection room, provision of, in camps and billets, 103, 136
- Sites for bivouacs, 55
  - for cadet camps, 95, 96
  - for camps, 55
- Sizing a company, 13
- Slope, ordering arms from the, 11
  - presenting arms from the, 10
- Sloping arms from the order, 10
  - — — present, 11
  - swords, 4, 5
- Soakage pits, provision of, 81
- Socks, directions for darning, 203
  - — for washing, 205
  - general instructions regarding, 91
- Springs, contamination of, 65
  - protection of, 69
- Springs, use of, as water-supply, 68
- Squares, description of, for laying out camps, 120
- Stains, directions for removing, from uniforms, 203
- Standing at ease, 4
- Stand-pipes the best source of water-supply, 65
- State, marching in, 134, 199
  - morning, 140, 200, 201
- Stews, recipes for, 173
- Stores, taking over, directions for, 119
- Strangers, admission of, to camps, 102
- Streams, use of, as water-supply, 67, 68
- Striking tents, directions for, 126, 135
- Subaltern of the day, duties of, 149
  - — — report by, 150, 196
- Subjects, table of, for instruction of cadets, 112, 113
- Sugar-water, recipe for, 174
- Surface-water, use of, as water-supply, 66
- Surprise, precautions to be taken against, 54
- Sword, directions for carrying at the halt, 3
  - — — — at the quick march, 3
  - position of, at attention, 2
  - worn with slings, 2, 3, 4, 8
- Swords, drawing, 3, 5
  - method of carrying on ceremonial parades, 2
  - movements with, 2-8
  - returning, 8
  - sloping, 4, 5
- Tact, need of, when various units are trained together, 106
- Tactical considerations to be taken into account when deciding form of quarters to be adopted, 49



- Tanks, use of, as water-supply, 67  
 Teas, diet for cadet, 166  
 Telling off a company, 13  
 Tent, bell, 101  
   — commander's, duties of, 151  
   — doors, position of, 125  
   — orderlies, duties of, 155  
   — squads, 124  
 Tents, directions to be observed in regard to, 153  
   — drainage of, 125  
   — for cadet camps, 101  
   — hire and purchase charges for various kinds of, 198  
   — inspection of, 35  
   — intervals between, 122  
   — packing of, 126, 129  
   — pitching of, 123  
   — — of, directions for, 124  
   — returning of, to store, 135  
   — striking of, directions for, 126, 135  
   — to be struck periodically in standing camps, 63  
   — ventilation in, 62  
 Tinned food, inspection of, 71  
 Toast and water, recipe for making, 174  
 Training, cadet, inspection of, 31-33  
   — — in hygiene and sanitation, 60  
   — — progression of, 107  
   — — schemes for, 108-113  
   — — scope of, 107  
   — — simplified by regular attendance, 106  
   — — by suggestions in regard to, 111  
   — — value of camps and billets in, 105  
   — field, for cadets in camps and billets, 110  
 Transport, general directions for, 126, 130  
   — hire of, 127  
   — — — cost of, 128  
   — Transport officer, duties of, 127  
   — — table of loads for, 128  
 Trenches, digging of, round tents, 125  
 Trucks, loads to be carried by, 129  
 Trumpeters, general instructions for, 178  
 Underclothing, directions for washing, 205  
 Unfixing bayonets, 9  
 Union Jack, 176  
   — — directions for hoisting, 177  
 Unit commanders, duties of, 153  
 Units, grouping of, in camps, 118  
   — intervals between, in camp, 122  
 Urinal camp, 79  
   — — plan of a, 80  
 Urinals in billets, directions for use of, 90  
   — position of, 79  
   — precautions to be taken regarding, 80  
 Urine pits, 79  
   — tubs, 79, 90  
 Utensils, cooking without, 174  
   — inspection of, 35  
   — kitchen, cleaning of, 83  
 Vegetable rations for cadets, 165  
 Vegetables, inspection of, 164  
 Ventilation in billets, 87, 88  
   — in tents, 62  
 Visiting rounds, 45  
 Visitors, instructions regarding, in camps and billets, 102  
 Waggons, directions for packing, 130  
   — loads to be carried by, 129  
 Washing clothes, directions for, 205  
   — prohibition of, at springs and wells used for drinking purposes, 65



- Washing-tubs, hire and purchase charges for, 198
- Waste water, disposal of, 86
- — — of, in billets, 90
- Water, daily allowance of, 64
- distribution of, 69
- purification of, 70
- receptacles for storing, 69
- — — — cleaning of, 69
- sources from which procured, 64
- Water-bottles, methods of cleaning, 63
- supervision of cleanliness of, by officer, 63
- Water-closets, directions for use of, 89
- Water-supply in camps, 64, 97
- protection of the, 64, 67
- rules to be observed in regard to, 64
- sources of, to be marked with flags and notice-boards, 64
- Watering of animals, instructions for, 64, 67, 68
- Waterproof sheets, hire and purchase charges for, 198
- Wells as source of water-supply, 65
- contamination of, 65
- protection of, 66







# BURBERRY WAR KIT

## THE BURBERRY WAR KIT

Includes the following items:

- 1. Trench Coat
- 2. Trousers
- 3. Hat
- 4. Gaiters
- 5. Socks
- 6. Shoes
- 7. Umbrella
- 8. Bag
- 9. Kit Bag
- 10. First Aid Kit
- 11. Map
- 12. Compass
- 13. Signal Whistle
- 14. Signal Lamp
- 15. Signal Mirror
- 16. Signal Pistol
- 17. Signal Rocket
- 18. Signal Flare
- 19. Signal Bomb
- 20. Signal Grenade
- 21. Signal Mine
- 22. Signal Torpedo
- 23. Signal Submarine
- 24. Signal Airship
- 25. Signal Balloon
- 26. Signal Kite
- 27. Signal Rocket
- 28. Signal Flare
- 29. Signal Bomb
- 30. Signal Grenade
- 31. Signal Mine
- 32. Signal Torpedo
- 33. Signal Submarine
- 34. Signal Airship
- 35. Signal Balloon
- 36. Signal Kite

## PEA JACKET

Includes the following items:

## BURBERRY WAR KIT

Includes the following items:

## STANDARD DAWG

Includes the following items:

## OFFICER IN FRANCE

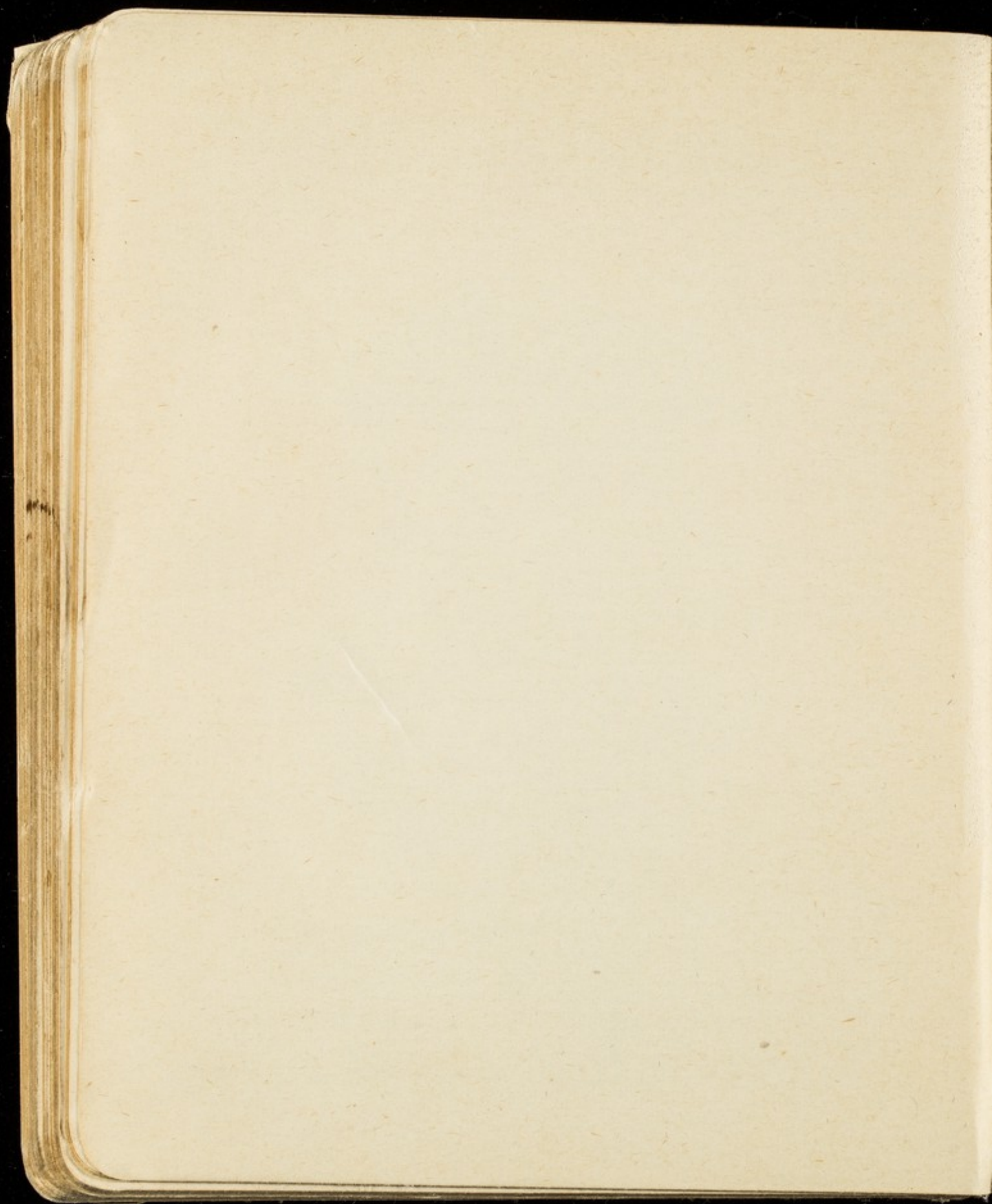
Includes the following items:

## BURBERRY'S HATMAKER

Includes the following items:

Includes the following items:







# BURBERRY WAR KIT



Service Dress



Pea Jacket

## KHAKI UNIFORMS

Designed by Burberrys for the War Office, and proofed by their process.

## THE BURBERRY WEATHERPROOF

(Cavalry & Infantry Models)

LORD KITCHENER, referring to THE BURBERRY, described it as "a most valuable addition to his campaigning kit."

*Burberry Coats are labelled "Burberrys." Be sure that yours is genuine, otherwise at sorest need the imitation may fail you.*

## PEA JACKETS

made in Burberry-proofed Regulation Coating, lined camel, fleece, or fur.

## BURBERRY WAR KIT

includes, besides full Service dress, Haversacks, Slings, Puttees, Shirts, S.B. Belts, Water Bottles.

Gabardine Ground Sheets and Sleeping Bags.

## GABARDINE DAWAC

—a Bivouac only weighing 3½ lbs. inclusive of pegs

MILITARY BROCHURE  
POSTFREE ON REQUEST

## OFFICERS IN FRANCE

can obtain all War Kit from Burberrys' Paris House



The Burberry Weatherproof

**BURBERRYS Haymarket LONDON**

also 8 & 10 Boulevard Malesherbes PARIS



# IMPERIAL ARMY SERIES

Written by  
**OFFICERS OF THE REGULAR ARMY**

Consistent in Principles and Methods  
with the Official Training Manuals

**METHODS OF TRAINING CLEARLY EXPLAINED**

---

Water-proof Cloth Covers      To fit in Tunic Pocket

Each **1/-** Net

WITH NUMEROUS ILLUSTRATIONS

---

LONDON: JOHN MURRAY



Imperial Army Series

# DRILL AND FIELD TRAINING

Based on Infantry Training, 1914

(4 Company Organisation)

ATTACK, DEFENCE, OUTPOSTS,  
SCOUTING, BAYONET FIGHTING,  
FIELD SKETCHING, FIGHTING IN  
WOOD AND VILLAGES, NIGHT  
OPERATIONS

---

## SIGNALLING

MORSE CODE, SEMAPHORE,  
STATION WORK, LAMP SIGNAL-  
LING, CIPHER MESSAGES,  
DESPATCH RIDING, TELEPHONE  
CABLES, MAP READING



Imperial Army Series

# CEREMONIAL

**Billets    Camps    Cooking**

ORGANISATION, ROUTINE AND  
SANITATION IN QUARTERS,  
SENTRY AND GUARD DUTIES,  
COOKING IN MESS TINS, ETC.

---

# PHYSICAL TRAINING

Junior and Senior Courses

COMPLETE COURSE OF  
PHYSICAL EXERCISES, GAMES,  
ATHLETIC SPORTS, SWIMMING  
AND LIFE-SAVING



Imperial Army Series

# FIELD ENTRENCHMENTS

Spade Work for Riflemen

HASTY FIRE COVER, FIELD  
ENTRENCHMENTS, COMMUNICA-  
TIONS, OBSTRUCTION, DEFENCE OF  
VILLAGES, WOODS AND BUILDINGS

---

# MUSKETRY

(.303 and .22 Cartridge)

ELEMENTARY TRAINING AND  
PRACTICES, FIRE DIRECTION  
AND CONTROL, INDIVIDUAL AND  
COLLECTIVE FIELD PRACTICES,  
MACHINE GUN PRACTICES

*In Preparation*



**GRAHAM & LATHAM, LTD.**  
MILITARY ENGINEERS

**OFFICERS FIELD KIT**

*Consisting of:—*

WAR OFFICE PATTERN KIT BAG  
BATH AND WASHSTAND (combined)  
GROUND SHEET  
BUCKET  
FOLDING CHAIR  
PILLOW  
BEDSTEAD

---

**Wolseley Valise**  
or  
**Bivouac Tent Valise**

---

*The whole of the above Kit can be purchased with  
the W.O. Grant.*

104, VICTORIA ST., WESTMINSTER, S.W.



**GRAHAM & LATHAM, LTD.**  
MILITARY ENGINEERS

**Musketry Appliances**

AIMING DISCS :: AIMING RESTS  
FIRING RESTS :: GROUPING GAUGES  
AIM CORRECTORS AND TEACHERS

**RIFLE RANGE BUILDINGS**

**SOLANO LANDSCAPE TARGETS**

Set of 4 Landscapes, each 40 in. by 30 in.

**Price 6/-**

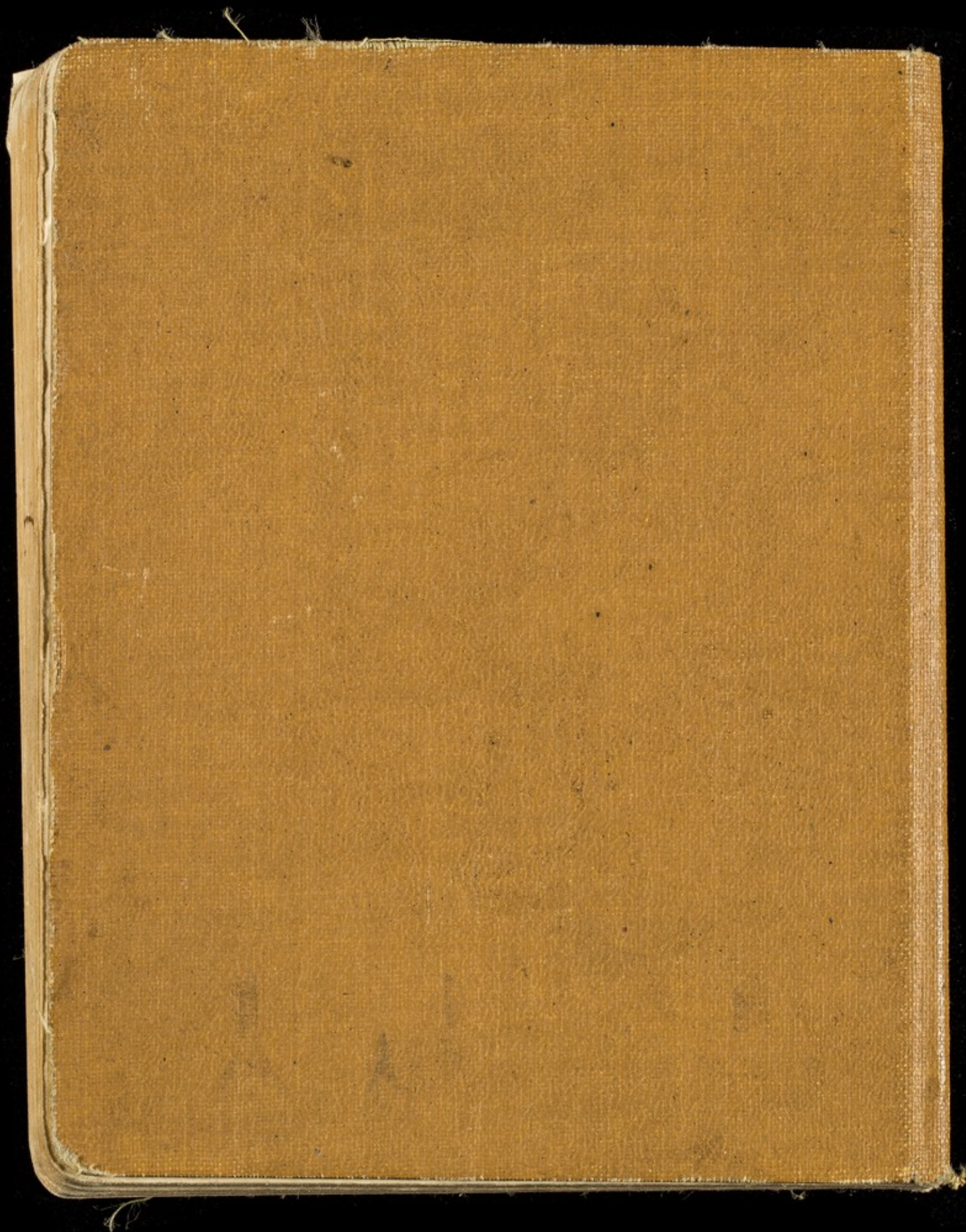
**SKY SCREENS**, each 3d. ; per doz. 2/6

**THE WAR OFFICE STANDARD EQUIPMENT**  
FOR MINIATURE CARTRIDGE RANGES

**SOLANO TARGETS** MARKS I. and II.

104, VICTORIA ST., WESTMINSTER, S.W.



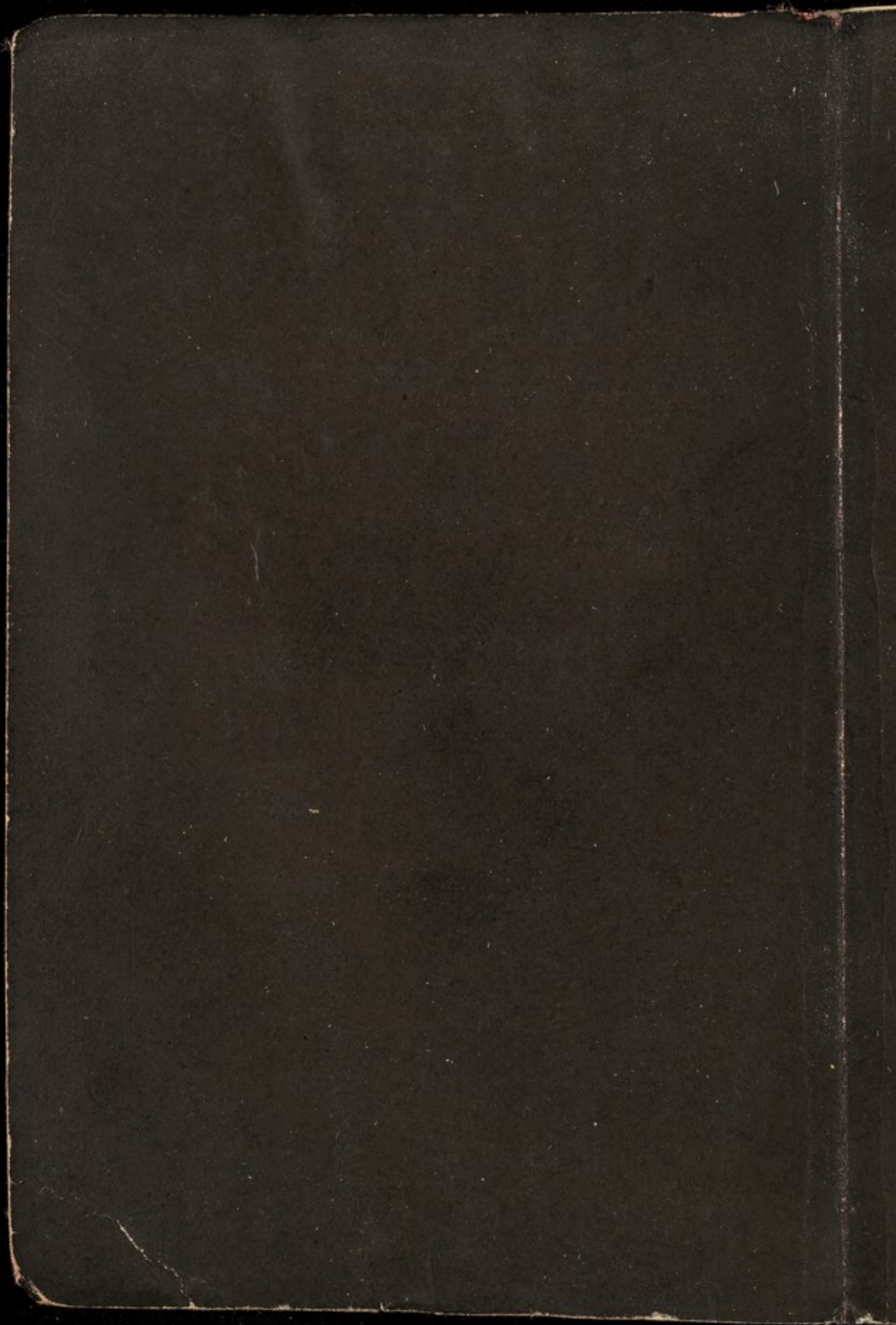




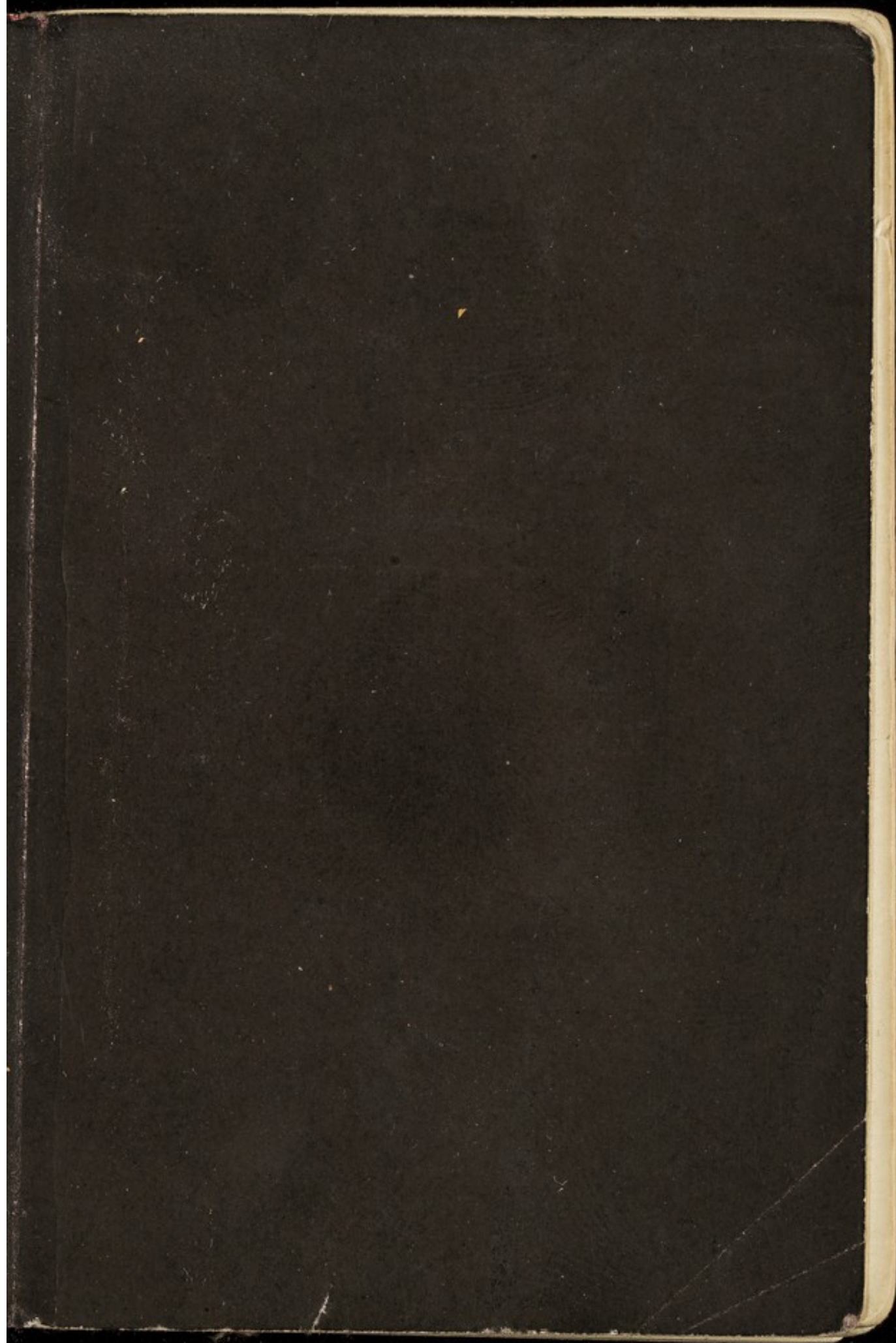
POSOLOGICAL  
TABLES.

FOURTH EDITION











Ramc 2049

4 | 3

2637



*Capt. H. Moncrieff Ramage*  
POSOLOGICAL TABLES

APPENDIX ON POISONS

INDEX OF DISEASES

AND

MEDICINES ARRANGED ACCORDING  
TO THEIR ACTIONS

BY

WILLIAM CRAIG, M.D., C.M., F.R.S.E.,  
F.R.C.S. Ed.

Author of 'Manual of Materia Medica :'  
Examiner, Royal College of Surgeons, Edinburgh :  
Late Examiner in Materia Medica, University of Edinburgh :  
Lecturer on Materia Medica, School of Medicine,  
Surgeons' Hall, Edinburgh.

---

**FOURTH EDITION.**

*Revised in accordance with the British Pharmacopœia, 1914.*

---

EDINBURGH: E. & S. LIVINGSTONE,  
15-17 TEVIOT PLACE.

1915

*All Rights Reserved.*



## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS epitome contains a tabular arrangement of all the Medicines contained in the British Pharmacopœia 1914, with their Doses, Actions, and forms of Administration. It also contains tables showing the important alterations effected by the new Pharmacopœia as compared with that of 1898; Imperial and Metric Weights and Measures; a table for converting Imperial into the Approximate Metric Standard; a list of the Chief Incompatibilities; an Appendix on Poisons; an Index of Diseases, with their most important Remedies; and the principal Medicines arranged according to their Actions.

It will be found convenient for the Student to carry in his pocket when attending the outdoor practice of a dispensary, inasmuch as the Index of Diseases will give him the most appropriate remedy, and the Posological Tables will give him the dose and mode of administration.



# POSOLOGICAL TABLES:

Being a Tabular arrangement of all Medicines contained in the British Pharmacopœia, with Dose, Action, and Form of Administration.

[Medicines in *italics* are non-official.]

<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Acaciæ Cortex	—	—	Astringent Demulcent	In decoction
„ Gummi	30-60 grs.	—		In powder or mucilage
Acetanilidum (Antefebrein)	2-5 grs.	12-30 cgms.	Antipyretic	In powder
Acetoneum	—	—	Solvent for resins, &c.	—
Acetum Canthar- idini	—	—	Vesicant	—
„ Scillæ (twice strength of 1898)	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Expectorant, diuretic	In mixture
„ Urgineæ	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Acidum Aceticum	—	—	—	Apply with lint or glass rod



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	<i>Metric.</i> 2-4 mils.		
Acidum Aceticum Dilutum	—	—	Refrigerant	In water
„ „ Glaciale	—	—	Caustic	Apply with glass rod
„ Acetylsalicylicum (aspirin)	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Anti-rheumatic, analgesic	In powder
„ Arseniosum	$\frac{1}{64}$ - $\frac{1}{16}$ gr.	1-4 mgms.	Poison, tonic in skin disease	As liquor arsenicalis
„ Benzoicum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Expectorant, antiseptic	As tinct. op. am. and tinct. camph. co.
„ Boricum	Do.	Do.	Antiseptic	In powder, ointment, or lotion
„ Carbolicum (Phenol)	1-3 grs.	6-20 cgms.	Caustic, stimulant, antiseptic	In mucilage, pill, or syrup
„ „ Liquefactum	1-3 ℥	6-18 cmils.	Do.	Do.
„ Chromicum	—	—	Caustic	Also in lotion Apply in solution with glass rod



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Acidum Citricum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgrms.	Refrigerant, tonic	In water much diluted
„ <i>Gallicum</i>	5-15 grs.	—	Astringent, in hæmorrhage and diarrhoea	In powder
„ Hydriodicum Dil.	5-10 ℥	3-6 dmils.	Deobstruent	In syrup or glycerin
„ Hydrobromicum Dil.	15-60 ℥	1-4 mils.	Sedative, tonic, &c.	In water or syrup
„ Hydrochloricum	—	—	Caustic. corrosive poison	—
„ „ Dil.	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Tonic, antiseptic, &c. in fevers	In water or bitter infusion
„ Hydrocyanicum Dil.	2-5 ℥	12-30 cmils.	Poison, and sedative in cough and irritable stomach	In draught with mucilage or syrup
„ Lacticum	15-30 ℥	1-2 mils.	Solvent for false membranes	Apply with brush
„ Nitricum	—	—	Caustic, corrosive poison	Apply with glass rod



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Acidum Nitricum Dil. ( $\frac{2}{3}$ th strength of 1898)	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Tonic, antisyphilitic	In water or bitter infusion
„ Nitro-Hydro- chloricum Dilutum	Do.	Do.	Tonic, alterative, and cholagogue	Do.
„ Oleicum	—	—	For making oleates and ointments	—
„ Phosphori- cum Conc.	—	—	Tonic	Well diluted in water or syrup
„ „ Dil.	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Tonic and aphrodisiac	In water or bitter infusion
„ Picricum	—	—	Antiseptic, dressing for burns	Gauze wet with 1% solution
„ Salicylicum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Antipyretic and anti- septic	In powder or solution
„ Sulphuricum	—	—	Corrosive poison	—
„ „ Aromati- cum	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Tonic, refrigerant, and astringent	In syrup or bitter infusion



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Acidum Sulphuricum Dilutum	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Tonic, refrigerant, and astringent	In syrup or bitter infusion
„ Sulphurosum	½-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	Antiseptic, disinfectant, given in sarcinæ	Spray: externally with glycerin; internally in bitter infusion
„ Tannicum	5-10 grs.	3-6 dgms.	Astringent	In powder or water
„ Tartaricum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Refrigerant	In water well diluted
Aconiti Radix	—	—	Poison; used in making preparations	—
Aconitina	—	—	Poison; powerful sedative	As ointment
Adeps Benzoatus	—	—	Healing ointment	—
„ Lanæ	—	—	For making ointments	—
„ „ Hydrosus	—	—	Do.	—
„ „ Præparatus	—	—	Do.	—
„ „ Adrenalinum	—	—	Astringent and hæmostatic	See liquor



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Aether	15-30 ℥ 45-60 ℥	(rep) 1-2 mls. (sing.) 3-4 mls.	Antispasmodic, stimulant, and anæsthetic	By inhalation, or by the mouth in mixture
„ Aceticus	Do.	Do.	Do.	—
„ Purificatus	—	—	Do.	By inhalation
Agaricine	1/12 to 1/16 gr.	—	To check sweating, etc.	In pill or subcutaneously
Agropyrum (Couch Grass)	—	—	Contains much mucilage	See liquid extract and decoction
Alcohol Absolutum	—	—	For making chloroform and tinctures	—
Aloe	2-5 grs.	12-30 cgms.	Cathartic, cholagogue, and tonic	In pill
Aloinum	1/2-2 grs.	3-12 cgms.	Do.	Do.
Alstonia	—	—	Tonic and antiperiodic	See tincture and infusion
Alumen Exsiccatum	—	—	Astringent and caustic for external use	—
„ Purificatum	5-10 grs.	3-6 dgms.	Astringent	In powder or solution



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Ammoniacum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Stimulating expectorant	In pill or emulsion
Ammonii Benzoas	Do.	Do.	Stimulant of mucous membranes; cholagogue	In mixture
„ Bromidum	5-30 grs.	3-20 dgms.	Antispasmodic in whooping cough	Do.
„ Carbonas	3-10 grs.	2-6 dgms.	Antacid and stimulant	Do.
„ Chloridum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Deobstruent and alterative in neuralgia, in gout, etc.	Do.
„ Phosphas	Do.	Do.	Antilithic; cholagogue	Do.
„ Nitras	—	—	For making nitrous oxide gas	—
Amygdala Amara	—	—	For making the oil	—
„ Dulcis	—	—	Do.	—
Amyl Nitris	2-5 ℥	12-30 cmils.	Antispasmodic in angina pectoris	By inhalation
Amylum	—	—	For making mucilage	—
Anethi Fructus	—	—	For making aqua or oleum	—



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Anisi Fructus	—	—	For making aqua or oleum	—
„ <i>Stellati Fructus</i>	—	—	Do.	—
Anthemidis Flores	—	—	Tonic, but intusion or extract given	Externally as a poultice
Antimonii Oxidum	—	—	Diaphoretic, sedative	In powder
Antimonium Sulphuratum	1-2 grs. Do.	6-12 cgms. Do.	Diaphoretic	In pill
„ Tartaratum (Tartar Emetic)	1/25-1/8 gr. (ord.) 1/2-1 gr. (emet.)	2.5-8 mgms. 3-6 cgms.	Poison, emetic, diaphoretic, sedative, expectorant	In water or vinum
Apomorphinæ Hydrochl.	1/20-1/10 gr. (Hyp.) 1/10-1/4 gr. (Mouth) 1/2-2 fl. oz. Do. Do.	3-6 mgms. 6-16 mgms. 15-30 mls. Do. Do.	For making hypodermic injection	By hypodermic injection or by mouth
Aqua Anethi	—	—	Carminative	In mixture
„ Anisi	—	—	Do.	Do.
„ Aurantii Floris	—	—	Slightly anodyne	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Camphoræ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. ozs.	15-30 mls.	Weak stimulant	In mixture
" Carui	Do.	Do.	Aromatic do.	Do.
" Chloroformi	Do.	Do.	Sedative, antispasmodic	Do.
" Cinnamomi	Do.	Do.	Carminative	Do.
" Destillata	Do.	Do.	Diluent	Do.
" Fœniculi	Do.	Do.	Stimulant, carminative	Do.
" Laurocerasi	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. drs.	2-8 mls.	Poisonous, narcotic, and sedative	In mixture
" Menthæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. ozs.	15-60 mls.	Stimulant, carminative, antispasmodic	Do.
" Piperitæ	Do.	Do.	Do. but weaker	Do.
" Viridis	Do.	Do.	Slightly astringent; used for collyria	Do.
" Rosæ	—	—	To prepare chrysarobinum	—
Araroba	—	—	Tonic in epilepsy	In pill
Argenti Nitras	$\frac{1}{4}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	16-30 mgms.	Caustic	In solid form
" Nitras Induratus	—	—		



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Argenti Nitras Mitigatus	—	—	Caustic	In solid form
„ Oxidum	—	—	Tonic in epilepsy	In pill —
Armoraciæ Radix	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 grs.	6-12 cgm.s.	For making the spirit tincture	—
Arnici Flores	—	—	Do.	—
Arsenii Iodidum	$\frac{1}{20}$ - $\frac{1}{5}$ gr	3-12 mgms.	Alterative, etc.	In solution or pill
Asafetida	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Antispasmodic in hysteria	In pill, spirit, or tincture
Atropina	$\frac{1}{200}$ - $\frac{1}{100}$ gr.	0.3-0.6 mgm.	An active poison, sedative, etc.	In ointment
Atropinæ Sulphas	Do.	Do.	Used in solution for dilating the pupil	In solution and lamellæ
Aurantii Cortex Indicus	—	—	For preparing tincture	—
„ „ Recens	—	—	Do.	—
„ „ Siccatus	—	—	For preparing infusion	—
Balsum Peruvianum	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Stimulating expectorant	Suspended in mixture
„ Tolutanum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms	Stimulating expectorant, stronger	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Barbitonum (Veronal)	5-10 grs.	3-6 dgms.	Hypnotic	In powder or solution
Belæ Fructus	—	—	For making the extract	—
Belladonnæ Folia	—	—	Do.	—
„ Radix	—	—	For making the liquid extract, liniment, atropine, etc.	—
Benzaminæ Lactas	$\frac{1}{8}$ - $\frac{1}{4}$ gr.	8-30 mgms.	Sedative and anæsthetic	In lotion, or by hypodermic injection, or in solution by the mouth
Benzenum (Benzol)	—	—	A solvent	—
Benzoinum	—	—	For making tincture and adeps	—
Berberis	—	—	Tonic and antispasmodic.	See tincture
Betel	—	—	Carminative, astringent	Leaves chewed
Bismuthi Carbonas	5-20 gr.	3-12 dgms.	Tonic, astringent and sedative	In powder or in mucilage



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Bismuthi Salicylas	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Tonic, astringent, and sedative	In powder or in mucilage
" Subnitras	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Borax Purificatus	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Emmenagogue	In water
Buchu Folia	—	—	For making infusion and tincture	—
Buteæ Gummi	—	—	Astringent	In powder
" Semina (pulv.)	10-20 grs.	—	Anthelmintic for round worms	Do.
Butyl-Chloral Hydras	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Sedative and hypnotic	In solution or syrup
Caffeina	1-5 grs.	6-30 cgms.	Cardiac tonic and diuretic	In solution or pill
Caffeinæ Citras	2-10 grs.	12-60 cgms.	Do.	Do.
" " Effervesc.	60-120 grs.	4-8 gms.	Do.	In solution
<i>Calamina Præparata</i>	—	—	Astringent	As ointment
Calcii Carbonas Præcip.	15-60 grs.	1-4 gms.	Antacid, astringent	In powder or mucilage
" Chloridum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	For sickness and in glandular diseases	In mixture



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Calcii Hydras	—	—	For making liquor calcis	—
„ Hypophosphis	3-10 grs.	2-6 dgms.	Nerve Tonic	In mixture
„ Lactas	10-30 grs.	6-20 dgms.	Tonic astringent	Do.
„ Phosphas	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Given in rickets and mollities ossium	In mucilage
Calumbæ Radix (pulv.)	—	—	Tonic	In powder
Calx	—	—	For making calcii hydras	—
Calx Chlorinata	—	—	Antiseptic, and for making liquor calc. chlorinatae	—
„ Sulphurata	$\frac{1}{4}$ -1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	For subduing local inflammation	In powder or pill
Cambogia	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 grs.	—	Drastic cathartic in dropsy	In pill
Camphora	2-5 grs.	12-30 cgms.	Expectorant, anti-spasmodic, diaphoretic, stimulant	In solution or pill



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Cannabis Indica	—	—	Narcotic, antispasmodic	See extract and tincture
Cantharidinum	—	—	Poison, vesicant, diuretic	See tincture
Capsici Fructus	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 gr.	—	Hot stimulant and astringent	In pill
Carbo Ligni	—	—	Antidote to morphine, aconite, etc.	In powder
Carbon Disulphidum	—	—	For dissolving phosphorus, etc.	
Cardamomi Semina	—	—	Aromatic stimulant	See tincture
Carui Fructus	—	—	Aromatic carminative	„ aqua
Carophyllum	—	—	Do.	„ infusion
Cascara Sagrada	—	—	Tonic and laxative	„ extract
Cascarilla	—	—	Warm aromatic and tonic	„ tincture and infusion
Cassiae Fructus	—	—	Laxative, to prepare the pulp	„ confect. sennæ
„ Pulpa Catechu	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Laxative Astringent	In confectio In powder



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Catechu Nigrum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Astringent	—
Cera Alba	—	—	For making ointment and plasters	—
"    Flava	—	—	Do.	—
Cerii Oxalas	2-10 grs.	—	In chronic vomiting	In powder or pill
Cetaceum	—	—	For making ointment	—
Charta Sinapis	—	—	Rubefacient	—
Chirata	—	—	Tonic	See infusion and tincture
Chloral Formamidum	15-45 grs.	1-3 gms.	Hypnotic	In water or syrup
"    Hydras	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Sedative, hypnotic, and antiseptic	Do.
Chloroformum	1-5 ℥	6-30 cmils.	Stimulant, anæsthetic, antispasmodic	In spirit, water, tincture, or inhaled
Chrysarobinum	—	—	Antiparasitic	In ointment
Cinchonæ Rubræ Cortex	10-60 grs.	—	Tonic and antiperiodic	In powder
Cinchonidinæ Sulphas	1-10 grs.	—	Do.	,, or solution



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
<i>Cinchoninae Sulph</i>	1-10 grs.	—	Tonic and antiperiodic	In powder or solution
<i>Cinnamomi Cortex</i>	5-10 grs.	—	Aromatic tonic	In powder
<i>Cocæ Folia</i>	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 drs.	—	Tonic and antitriptic	By chewing
<i>Cocaina</i>	—	—	Sedative	In ointment
<i>Cocainæ Hydrochloridum</i>	1/10- $\frac{1}{4}$ gr.	6-16 mgms.	„ anaesthetic	In solution, pill, or lamellæ
<i>Coccus</i>	—	—	For making tincture	—
<i>Codeina</i>	$\frac{1}{4}$ -1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Sedative and hypnotic	In solution or pill
<i>Codeinæ Phosphas</i>	Do.	Do.	Do.	In syrup
<i>Colchici Cormus</i>	2-5 grs.	—	Irritant, diuretic; given in gout	See extract and vinum
„ <i>Semina</i>	—	—	Do.	See tincture
<i>Collodium</i>	—	—	For covering wounds	—
„ <i>Flexile</i>	—	—	Do.	—
„ <i>Vesicans</i>	—	—	For blistering	—
<i>Colocynthis Pulpa</i>	2-8 grs.	—	Cathartic	In pill
<i>Confectio Piperis</i>	60-120 grs.	4-8 gms.	Laxative and carminative	—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Confectio Rosæ Gallicæ	—	—	For making pills	—
" Sennæ	60-120 grs.	4-8 gms.	Laxative	—
" Sulphuris	Do.	Do.	Do.	—
Copaiba	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Diuretic, tonic to mucous membrane; given in gonorrhœa	In emulsion
Coriandri Fructus	—	—	Carminative	See confect. sennæ
Creosotum	1-5 ℥	6-30 cmils.	Sedative in vomiting, antiseptic	In draught or capsule
Cresol	1-3 ℥	6-18 cmils.	Antiseptic	See liquor
Creta Præparata	15-60 grs.	1-4 gms.	Antacid, astringent	In mixture or powder
Cubebæ Fructus	30-60 grs.	2-4 gms.	Special stimulant in gonorrhœa	In powder
Cucurbitæ Semina Præparata	3-4 ozs.	—	Anthelmintic for tape worm	Bruised with water or milk to creamy consistency



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
<i>Cupri Nitras</i>	—	—	Caustic	Solid or in solution
„ <i>Sulphas</i>	—	—	Astringent and emetic	In pill; in draught as emetic
<i>Cuspariæ Cortex</i>	—	—	Aromatic tonic	In powder
<i>Cusso</i> (Kousso)	14-2 grs. (ord.) 5-10 grs. (emet.) 10-30 grs. 120-240 grs.	16-120 mgms. 3-6 dgms. — 8-16 gms.	Anthelmintic in tape worm	In infusion
<i>Daturæ Folia</i>	—	—	Antispasmodic, sedative	By smoking
„ <i>Semina</i>	—	—	Do.	See tincture
<i>Decoctum Acaciæ</i>	—	—	Astringent	In mixture
„ <i>Corticis</i>	½-2 fl. ozs.	15-60 mils.	Do.	Do.
„ <i>Agropyri</i>	Do.	Do.	Demulcent to the urinary tract	Do.
„ <i>Aloes Co.</i>	Do.	Do.	Cathartic	In mixture or draught
„ <i>Gossypii Radicis</i>	Do.	Do.	Stimulant and hæmodynamic in uterine affections	In mixture
„ <i>Corticis</i>	Do.	Do.		



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial. $\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. ozs.	Metric. —		
<i>Decoctum Granati Corticis</i>			Vermifuge in tape worm	In mixture or draught
„ <i>Haematoxyli</i>	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. ozs.	15-60 mls.	Astringent	In mixture
„ <i>Ispaghulæ</i>	Do.	Do.	Mucilaginous properties	Do.
„ <i>Sappan</i>	Do.	Do.	Astringent	Do.
<i>Diamorphinæ</i>	$\frac{1}{25}$ - $\frac{1}{8}$ gr.	2.5-8 mgms.	Sedative	In solution
<i>Hydrochloridum Digitalinum</i>	$\frac{1}{60}$ - $\frac{1}{30}$ gr.	—	Poison, cardiac tonic, sedative, and diuretic	In pill
<i>Digitalis Folia</i> (pulv.)	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 grs.	3-12 cgms.	Do.	Do.
<i>Embelia</i>	60-240 grs.	4-16 gms.	Anthelmintic for tape worm	In powder
<i>Emplastrum Belladonnæ</i> ( $\frac{1}{2}$ strength of 1898)	—	—	Anodyne in rheumatism and neuralgia	—
„ <i>Calefaciens</i> (.02% cantharidin)	—	—	Rubefacient	—



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Emplastrum Cantharidini (.2% cantharidinum)	—	—	Blistering	—
Hydrargyri	—	—	Stimulant, resolvent	—
Menthol	—	—	To relieve pain	—
Opii	—	—	To relieve local pain	—
Plumbi	—	—	For strapping and giving support	—
Resinae	—	—	Protective, stimulant	—
Saponis	—	—	Protective	—
Ergota	15-60 grs.	1-4 gms.	Stimulant to uterus, emmenagogue	In infusion
Ethyl Chloridum	—	—	Anæsthetic	By inhalation
Euonymi Cortex	—	—	For making extract	—
Extractum Agropyri Liq.	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mls.	Demulcent in urinary diseases	In mixture
„ Aloes	1-4 grs.	6-25 cgms.	Cathartic	In pill
„ Anthemidis	2-8 grs.	—	Tonic	In pill
„ Belæ Liquidum	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mls	Astringent	In draught



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Extractum Belladonnæ Liq.	—	—	To make the preparations	—
“ “ Siccum	$\frac{1}{4}$ -1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Narcotic, anodyne and calmative	In pill
“ Cannabis Indicæ	Do.	Do.	Narcotic and antispasmodic	In pill
“ Cascaræ Sagr. Liq.	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Tonic and laxative	In mixture
“ “ Siccum	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Do.	In pill
“ Cinchonæ Liq.	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Tonic and antiperiodic	In mixture or draught
“ Colchici	$\frac{1}{4}$ -1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Irritant, diuretic, in gout	In pill
“ Colocynth. Comp.	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Cathartic	In pill
“ Ergotæ	Do.	Do.	Stimulant of uterus and astringent	In pill or hypodermic solution
“ “ Liquidum	10-30 ℥	6 18 dmils.	Do.	In mixture or emulsion
“ Euonymi	1-2 grs.	6-12 cgms.	Hepatic stimulant	In pill
“ Filicis Liq.	45-90 ℥	3-6 mls.	Anthelmintic in tape worm	In mixture or draught



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Extractum Gentianæ	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Tonic	In pill
" Glycyrrhizæ	—	—	Demulcent	Ad libitum
" Liquidum	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Do.	In mixture
" Gossypii	Do.	Do.	Stimulant and hæmodynamic	Do.
" Radicis Corticis Liq.	10-20 ℥	6-12 dmils.	Expectorant and diuretic	Do.
" Grindeliæ Liq.	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Astringent	Do.
" Hamamelidis Liq.	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Tonic in dyspepsia	In mixture
" Hydrastis Liquidum	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Narcotic and anodyne	In pill
" Hyosciaminæ Liq.	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 ℥	3-12 cmils.	Expectorant and emetic	In solution
" Jaborandi Liquidum	5-15 ℥	—	Diaphoretic and sialagogue	In solution
" Kava Liq.	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Diuretic in gonorrhœa	In mixture



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Extractum Kramerizæ	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Astringent in bowel and bladder diseases	In powder
„ Nucis Vomizæ Liq. (1.5% strychnine)	1-3 ℥	6-18 cmils.	Nerve tonic	In solution
„ Nucis Vomizæ Sic. (5% strychnine)	¼-1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Nerve tonic	In pill
„ Opii Liquidum (.75% morphine)	5-30 ℥	3-18 dmils.	Narcotic and sedative	In draught
„ Opii Siccum (20% morphine)	¼-1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Do.	In pill
„ <i>Physostig-</i> <i>matis</i>	¼-1 gr.	—	Narcotic; contracts the pupil	In pill
„ Picrorhizæ Liq.	15-60 ℥	1-4 mils.	Tonic and laxative	In mixture
„ Rhei	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Laxative and tonic	In pill or powder
„ Strophanthi	¼-1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Cardiac tonic	In pill
„ Taraxaci	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Tonic, aperient and cholagogue	In pill, mixture, or draught



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Extractum Viburni Liquidum	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mls.	Sedative, antispasmodic	In mixture
Fel Bovinum Purificatum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Tonic and laxative	In pill
Ferri Carbonas Saccharatus	10-30 grs.	6-20 dgms.	Chalybeate tonic	In powder
„ et Ammonii Citras	5-10 grs.	3-6 dgms.	Do.	In water
„ et Potassii Tartras	5-10 grs.	3-6 dgms.	Do.	Do.
„ et Quininae Citras	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
„ Phosphas Saccharatus	Do.	Do.	Tonic in scorfula	In powder
„ Sulphas	1-5 grs.	6-30 cgms.	Irritant, astringent, and tonic	In pill
„ „ Exsiccatus Ferrum Redactum	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 grs.	3-20 cgms.	Do.	Do.
Filix-mas	1-5 grs.	6-30 cgms.	Chalybeate tonic	In pill
	—	—	Anthelmintic in tape worm	See ext. filicis liquidum



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Foeniculi Fructus	—	—	Carminative	See aqua
Galla	—	—	Astringent	In powder
Gelatinum	—	—	For making suppositories and lamellæ	—
Gelsemii Radix	—	—	For making tincture	—
Gentianæ Radix	—	—	Tonic	—
Glucosum	—	—	Syrupy, sweetening liquid	—
Glusidum (Saccharin)	—	—	Instead of sugar in diabetes	—
Glycerinum	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mls.	Emollient	In mixture
" Acidi Borici	—	—	Antiseptic	—
" " Carbolic	5 ℥.	—	In chronic vomiting and worms	In draught
" " Tannici	—	—	Astringent in sore nipples	—
" " Aluminis	—	—	Do.	—
" " Amyli	—	—	Emollient, demulcent	—
" " Boracis	—	—	For sore nipples	—
" " Pepsini	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mls.	Tonic in dyspepsia	In mixture



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Glycerinum Plumbi Subacetatis	—	—	Astringent, sedative	—
" Tragacanthæ Glycyrrhizæ Radix	—	—	Emollient, etc. For making extracts, etc.	—
Gossypii Radicis Cortex	—	—	For making extract	—
Gossypium Grindelia	—	—	For pyroxylin	—
Guaiaci Resina	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Expect. and diuretic Stimulant and diaphoretic in rheumatism	See extract In powder or electuary
Guaiacol	1-5 ℥	6-30 cmils.	Antiseptic and antipyretic	In capsules or in oil
" Carbonas Gummi Indicum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Do. Demulcent	In cod liver oil Same as Gum. Acaciæ
Hæmatoxyli Lig-num	—	—	For making decoction	—
Hamamelidis Cortex	—	—	For making tincture	—



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Hamamelidis Folia	—	—	For making the liquid extract and liquor	—
Hexamina (Urotropine)	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Antiseptic to the urinary tract; kills bacteria	In mixture
Hirudo (The Leech)	—	—	For local bleeding	—
Homatropinæ Hydrobromidum	1/64-1/32 gr.	1-2 mgms.	Dilates the pupil, etc.	In solution
Hydrargyri Iodidum	1/32-1/16 gr.	2-4 mgms.	Alterative, deobstruent, sialagogue, antiseptic	In pill
Rubrum Oxidum	—	—	For making the ointment	—
Flavum	—	—	Do.	—
Rubrum	—	—	Alterative. antisyphilitic, and antiseptic	In solution
Perchloridum	1/32-1/16 gr.	2-4 mgms.	Cathartic, alterative, and sialagogue	In powder or pill
Subchloridum	1/2-5 grs.	3-30 cgms.		



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Hydrargyrum	—	—	For making preparations	—
„ Ammoniatum	—	—	For making ointments	—
„ cum Creta	1-5 grs.	6-30 cgms.	Laxative, alterative	In powder
„ Oleatum	—	—	For making ointment	—
Hydrastis	—	—	Hepatic stim. and tonic	See tincture and liquid extract
Rhizoma	—	—	Sedative; dilates the pupil	In solution
Hyoscinæ Hydrobromidum	1/200-1/100 gr.	0.3-0.6 mgms.	Narcotic	See extract and tincture
Hyoscyami Folia	—	—	Narcotic; dilates the pupil	In solution
Hyoscyaminæ Sulphas	1/200-1/100 gr.	0.3-0.6 mgms.	Narcotic; dilates the pupil	See extract and tincture
Infusum Alstoniæ	½-1 fl. oz.	15-30 mls.	Tonic and antiperiodic	In mixture
„ Aurantii	Do.	Do.	Aromatic, tonic	Do.
„ „ Co.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
„ Buchu	1-2 fl. ozs.	30-60 mls.	Stimulating diuretic	Do.
„ Calumbæ	½-1 fl. oz	15-30 mls.	Bitter tonic	Do.
„ Caryophylli	Do.	Do.	Aromatic tonic	Do.
„ Cascarillæ	Do.	Do.	Aromatic tonic	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Infusum Chiratae	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	15-30 mls.	Bitter tonic	In mixture
" Cinchon. Acid.	Do.	Do.	Tonic, antiperiodic	Do.
" Digitalis	2-4 fl. drs.	7-15 mls.	Sedative and diuretic	Do.
" Ergotae	1-2 fl. ozs.	30-60 mls.	Uterine stimulant	In draught
" Gentianae Co.	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	15-30 mls.	Bitter tonic	In mixture
" Jaborandi	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	—	Diaphoretic and sialagogue	Do.
" Krameriae	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	15-30 mls.	Astringent in urinary diseases	Do.
" Linum	<i>Ad libitum</i>	—	Demulcent drink in urinary diseases	Do.
" Quassiae	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	15-30 mls.	Bitter tonic	Do.
" Rhei	Do.	Do.	Tonic and laxative	Do.
" Rosae Acidum	Do.	Do.	Astringent	Do.
" Scoparii	1-2 fl. ozs.	30-60 mls.	Diuretic	Do.
" Senegae	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	15-30 mls.	Stimulating expectorant	Do.
" Sennae	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz. (rep.) 2 fl. ozs. (sing.)	15-30 mls. 60 mls.	Laxative	In draught



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	<i>Metric.</i> 15-30 mls.		
Infusum Uvæ Ursi			Tonic and astringent in urinary diseases	In mixture
Injectio Apomorph. Hypoder. (1%)	5-10 ℥	3-6 dmils.	Emetic, expectorant	By subcutaneous injection
„ Cocainæ Hyp. (5%), ( $\frac{1}{2}$ strength of 1898.)	Do.	Do.	Sedative	Do.
„ Ergotæ (33%)	Do.	Do.	To contract blood vessels in uterus	Do.
„ Morphinæ Hyp. ( $\frac{1}{2}$ strength of 1898), (2.5% morph).	Do.	Do.	Narcotic, sedative	Do.
„ Strychinæ Hyp. (.75% Stry- chnine)	5-10 ℥	3-6 dmils.	Bitter tonic; poison	Do.
Iodoformum	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 grs.	3-20 cgms.	Antiseptic and seda- tive	In pill
Iodum	—	—	Deobstruent	See potassii iodidum



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
<i>Ipecacuanhæ</i> Radix	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 grs. (ord.)	3-12 cgms.	Expectorant, emetic	In powder
<i>Ipomœæ</i> Radix	15-30 grs. (emet.)	1-2 gms.		
<i>Iridin</i>	—	—	Cathartic	In powder or pill
<i>Ispaghulæ</i>	1-5 grs. 45-150 grs.	3-10 gms.	Powerful cholagogue For mucilaginous pro- perties	In pill See decoction
<i>Jalapæ</i>	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Cathartic	In powder or pill
<i>Jalapæ</i> Resina	2-5 grs.	12-30 cgms.	Do.	Do.
<i>Kaladana</i>	30-45 grs.	2-3 gms.	Purgative—like jalapæ	Do.
<i>Kaladana</i> Resinæ	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Do.	Do.
<i>Kaolinum</i>	—	—	For making pills	—
<i>Kavæ</i> Rhizoma	—	—	For liquid extract	—
<i>Kino</i> (pulv.)	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Astringent	In powder
„ <i>Eucalypti</i> (pulv.)	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
<i>Krameria</i> Radix	—	—	Do. in urinary diseases	See extract and infusion



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> Strength of	<i>Metric.</i> Alkaloid.		
Lamellæ Atropinæ	1/5000 gr.	0.013 mgm.	To dilate the pupil	Within the conjunctiva
" Cocainæ	1/50 gr.	1.3 mgm.	Local anæsthetic	Do.
" Homotropinæ	1/100 gr.	0.65 mgm.	To dilate the pupil	Do.
" Physostigminæ	1/1000 gr.	0.065 mgm.	To contract the pupil	Do.
Laurocerasi Folia	—	—	For making the aqua	—
Limonis Cortex	—	—	For making syrup and tincture	—
Lini Semina	—	—	For making mucilage	—
Lini Semina Con- tusa	—	—	For making poultices	—
Linimentum Aconiti	—	—	For rheumatism and neuralgia	—
" Ammonia	—	—	Rubefacient	—
" Belladonnæ	—	—	For rheumatism and neuralgia	—
" Calcis (Carron Oil)	—	—	For burns	—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Linimentum Camphoræ	—	—	For rheumatism	—
” ” Ammoni- atum	—	—	Stimulating liniment	—
” Chloroformi	—	—	Powerfully stimu- lating	—
” Crotonis	—	—	For producing pustules	—
” Hydrargyri	—	—	Stimulant, resolvent	—
” Opii	—	—	Anodyne liniment	—
” Potassii Iodid. cum Sapone	—	—	Stimulant	—
” Saponis	—	—	For sprains, etc.	—
” Sinapis	—	—	Epispastic, in muscular rheumatism	—
” Terebinthinæ	—	—	Do.	—
” ” Aceticum	—	—	Do.	—
Liquor Acidi Chromici	—	—	Caustic	Use with glass rod
” Adrenalini	10-30 ℥	6-18 dmls.	Astringent, hæmo- static	In solution
” Hydrochloricus				



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i> <i>well diluted</i>		
Liquor Ammoniae	5-15 ℥.	—	Antacid and stimulant	In mixture
" " Fortis	—	—	Corrosive poison	For external use
" Ammonii Acetatis	2-6 fl. drs.	8-24 mls.	Diaphoretic in catarrh and fevers	In mixture
" " Citratis	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" " Arsenicalis (1°/o)	2-8 ℥	12-50 cmils.	Alterative, anti-periodic; poison	Do.
" " Arsenici Hydrochloricus (1°/o)	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" " Arsenii et Hydrag. Iodidi	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Do.	Do.
" " Atropinae Sulphatis (1°/o Alk).	½-1 ℥	3-6 cmils.	Sedative and for dilating pupil	In solution
" " Bismuthi et Ammonii Citratis	½-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Tonic and astringent in dyspepsia	In mixture
" " Calcis	1-4 fl. ozs.	30-120 mls.	Antacid, astringent	Alone, or in mixture or milk



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Liquor Calcis Chlorinatæ	—	—	Disinfectant	—
„ „ Saccharatus	15-60 ℥	1-4 mls.	Antacid and astringent in diarrhœa	In water well diluted
„ Cresol Saponatus (Lysol)	—	—	Antiseptic	—
„ Epispasticus	—	—	Blistering fluid	—
„ Ethyl Nitritis	15-60 ℥	1-4 mls.	Antispasmodic	In mixture
„ Ferri Dialisatus	10-30 ℥	—	Tonic and astringent	In water well diluted
„ „ Perchloridi	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Chalybeate tonic	In water
„ „ Fortis	—	—	Styptic	—
„ „ Pernitratidis	5-15 ℥	—	Tonic and astringent	In water
„ „ Persulphatis	—	—	For making ferri tart.	—
„ „ Formaldehydi	—	—	Powerfully antiseptic	—
„ „ Saponatis	—	—	Do.	—
„ „ Hamamelidis	—	—	Astringent	—
„ Hydrarg.	—	—	—	—
Nitratidis Acidus	—	—	Poison, caustic	—
„ „ Perchloridi	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Given in syphilis	In mixture



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> ½-2 fl. drs.	<i>Metric.</i> 2-8 mls.		
Liquor Hydrogenii Peroxidi			Oxidising agent	Applied locally or put into the stomach by stomach pump
„ <i>Lithiæ Effervescens</i>	5-10 fl. ozs.	—	Antacid drink in gout	—
„ Magnesi Bicarbonatis	1-2 fl. ozs.	30-60 mls.	Antacid drink in dyspepsia	In mixture
„ Morphinae	10-60 ℥	6-36 dmils.	Narcotic	In draught
„ Acetatis (1%) morphine)	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
„ „ Hydrochloridi (1%) morphine)	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
„ „ Tartratis (1% morphine)			Tonic in dyspepsia	For digesting, food before administration
„ Pancreatis	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mls.	Antiseptic	In ointment
„ Picis Carbonis	—	—		



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Liquor Plumbi Subacetatis Dilutus	—	—	Lotion for inflammation, injection, etc.	—
„ „ Fortis Potassæ (5%)	— 10-30 ℥ (freely diluted)	— 6-18 dmils.	To make above Antacid	— In mixture
„ „ <i>Effervescens</i> Potassii Permanganatis (1%)	— 2-4 fl. drs.	— 7-15 mils.	Antacid and diuretic Disinfectant and antiseptic in fevers	<i>Ad libitum</i> In water
„ Sodæ Chlorinatae	10-20 ℥	6-12 dmils.	Antiseptic and astringent	In mixture
„ Sodii Arsenatis (1%)	2-8 ℥	12-50 cmils.	See Arsenic	Do.
„ Strychninae Hydrochloridi (1%)	Do.	Do.	Nerve tonic	Do.



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
<i>Liquor Thyroidei</i>	5-15 ℥	—	In goitre	In mixture
" Trinitrini (1%)	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 ℥	3-12 cmils.	Dilates the arterioles; for angina pectoris	In alcoholic mixture
" Zinci Chloridi	—	—	Caustic, disinfectant	—
Lithii Carbonas	2-5 grs.	12-30 cgms.	Antacid in gout	In powder or mixture
" Citras	5-10 grs.	3-6 dgms.	Do.	Do.
" " Effervesc.	60-120 grs.	4-8 gms.	Do.	In draught
Lobelia	—	—	Narcotic—poison, emetic and expectorant	By smoking or in tincture
Lotio Hydrargyri Flava	—	—	For venereal and un- healthy sores	—
" " Nigra	—	—	Do.	—
Magnesia Levis	5-20 grs. (rep.) 30-60 grs. (sing.)	3-12 dgms. 2-4 gms.	Antacid and laxative	In powder



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Magnesia Ponderosa	5-20 grs. (rep.) 30-60 grs. (sing.) Do.	3-12 cgms. 2-4 gms. Do. Do.	Antacid and laxative  Do. Do.	In powder  Do. Do.
Magnesium Carbonas " " Ponderosus " Sulphas	30-90 grs. (rep.) 120-240 grs. (sing.) 60-180 grs. (rep.) 240-480 grs. (sing.) —	2-6 gms. 8-16 gms. 4-12 gms. 16-32 gms. — — 3-12 cgms.	Cathartic  Do.  Astringent in sore mouth To make the above Anodyne and antiseptic	In water  Do.  — — In solution, pill or plaster
Mel Boracis " Depuratum " Menthol	— — 1/2-2 grs.	— — 3-12 cgms.		



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Methyl Salicylas	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Carminative and antiseptic	On sugar, or in emulsion
Methylsulphonal	10-20 grs	6-12 dgms.	Hypnotic	In draught
Mistura Ammoniaci	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	15-30 mils.	Stimulant and expectorant	In mixture
„ Amygdalæ	Do.	Do.	A vehicle for other medicines	—
„ Creosoti	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	—	Sedative given in vomiting	In mixture
„ Cretæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	Do.	Astringent in diarrhoea	Do.
„ Ferri Composita	Do.	Do.	Stimulant and tonic in amenorrhoea	Do.
„ Guaiaci	Do.	Do.	Diaphoretic in rheumatism	Do.
„ Olei Ricini	1-2 fl. ozs.	30-60 mils.	Laxative	In draught
„ Sennæ Co.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Morphinæ Acetas	$\frac{1}{8}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	8-30 mgms.	Narcotic and sedative	In pill, mixture, or draught
„ Hydrochloridum	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> 1-1/2 gr.	<i>Metric.</i> 8-30 mgms.		
Morphinæ Tartras	---	---	Narcotic and sedative	In pill, mixture or draught
Mucilago Acaciæ	---	---	Demulcent, vehicle for other medicines	---
" <i>Amyli</i>	---	---	For injections	---
" Gummi Indici	---	---	Substitute for acacia	---
" Tragacanthæ	---	---	Vehicle for other medicines	---
Myristica	---	---	For making oleum myristicæ	---
Myrobalanum	30-60 grs.	2-4 gms.	Astringent	In powder and in ointments
Myrrha	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Stimulant and tonic	In powder or pill
Naphthol (Beta-Naphthol)	3-10 grs.	2-6 dgms.	Antiseptic and disinfectant	Do.
Nux Vomica (pulv.)	1-4 grs.	6-25 cgms.	Special stimulant and nerve tonic	In pill or powder
Oleo-Resina Cubeæ	5-30 ℥	---	In gonorrhœa	In emulsion



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Oleum Abietis	10-30 ℥	—	Antiseptic, carminative	On sugar
„ Ajowan	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Do.	Do.
„ Amygdalæ	—	—	For making ointments	—
„ Anethi	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Carminative	In liquorice mixtures
„ Anisi	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
„ Anthemidis	Do.	Do.	Carminative in colic	Do.
„ Arachis	—	—	Instead of olive oil for liniments, ointments, etc.	—
„ Cadinum	—	—	For scaly skin diseases	In ointment
„ Cajuputi	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Stimulant, rubefacient	On sugar
„ Carui	Do.	Do.	Carminative	Do.
„ Caryophylli	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
„ Chaulmoogræ (Gynocardia)	5-10 ℥ grad. inc. to $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	3-6 dmils. 2-4 mils.	Tonic in chronic skin disease	In emulsion
„ Cinnamomi	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Warm stimulant, for flavouring	On sugar



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Oleum Copaibæ	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	In gonorrhœa	In emulsion
" Coriandri	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Aromatic, carminative	On sugar
" Crotonis	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 ℥	3-6 cmils.	Irritant poison, cathartic	In olive oil
" Cubebæ	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Stimulant in gonorrhœa	In mixture
" Eucalypti	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Antiseptic and disinfectant	On sugar
" Gaultheriæ	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Antiseptic, carminative	Do.
" Graminis	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Stimulant, carminative	Do.
" Citrati	Do.	Do.	Diuretic	Do.
" Juniperi	Do.	Do.	Stimulant, carminative	Do.
" Lavandulæ	Do.	Do.	Flavouring, aromatic	Do.
" Limonis	—	—	Emollient	—
" Lini	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Carminative in flatulence	On sugar
" Menthæ	Do.	Do.	Do but weaker	Do.
" Piperitæ	1-4 fl. drs	4-16 mils.	Alterative and nutritive in phthisis	In milk
" Viridis				
" Morrhuæ				



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Oleum Myristicæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	3-18 cmils.	Aromatic, carminative Emollient, for plasters, etc.	On sugar —
Phosphoratum	1-5 ℥	6-30 cmils.	Nerve tonic	In mixture
„ Ricini	1-8 fl. drs.	4-30 mils.	Laxative	In draught or mixture
„ Rosæ	—	—	For flavouring in ointments	On sugar
„ Rosmarini	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	—	Carminative and ex- ternal stimulant	Do.
„ Rutæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -3 ℥	—	Antispasmodic in hysteria	Do.
„ Sabinæ	Do.	—	Poison, and uterine stimulent	In draught or pill
„ Santali	5-30 ℥	3-18 dmils.	For gonorrhœa	In mixture —
„ Sesami	—	—	For making ointments, liniments, plasters	—
„ Sinapis	—	—	Vesicant, epispastic	—
„ Volatile	—	—	—	—
„ Terebinthinæ	2-10 ℥ (ord.)	12-60 cmils.	Anthelmintic, stimu- lant, cathartic, epis- pastic	Enema or draught, or fric- tion externally
„ Rectificatum	3-4 fl. drs. (anthe.)	12-15 mils.	—	—



<i>Medecine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Oleum Theobromatis	—	—	For making suppositories	—
Oliveri Cortex (Black Sassafras)	—	—	Carminative and antiseptic	See the tincture
Opium	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 grs.	3-12 cgms.	Narcotic, sedative, or hypnotic	In powder or pill
Oxymel	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. drs.	2-8 mls.	For catarrh	Pure, or as gargle
„ Scillæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Do.	In mixture
„ Urgineæ	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Paraffinum Durum	—	—	For making ointments	—
„ Liquidum	1-4 fl. drs.	4-16 mls.	Emollient	In draught
„ Molle	—	—	For making ointments, emollient	—
Paraldehydum	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. drs.	2-8 mls.	Hypnotic	In mixture
Pelletierinæ	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Astringent and anthelmintic	In powder
Tannas	—	—	—	—
Pepsinum	5-10 grs.	3-6 dgms.	For dyspepsia with deficient secretion of gastric juice	In powder or mixture with HCl



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Phenacetinum	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Antipyretic, etc.	In powder or solution
Phenazonum (antipyrine)	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Phenolphthaleinum	2-5 grs.	12-30 cgms.	Laxative	In powder or in alcoholic solution
Phosphorus	1/100-1/25 gr.	.6-2.5 mgms.	In nervous debility	In pill or oil
<i>Physostigmatis</i> <i>Semina</i>	—	—	Narcotic and sedative, to make Physostigmine	—
Physostigminæ Sulphas	1/64-1/32 gr.	1-2 mgms.	Sedative, contracts the pupil	In solution or lamellæ
Picrorhiza	10-20 grs. (ord.)	6-12 dgms.	Bitter tonic and laxative, for neuralgia, to make extract and tincture	—
<i>Picrotoxinum</i>	45-60 grs. (antiper.) 1/100-1/25 gr.	3-4 gms.	For checking sweating	In solution or hypodermically



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Pilocarpinæ Nitras	1/20-1/5 gr.	3-12 mgms.	Diaphoretic and sialagogue	In solution, or hypodermically
Pilula Aloes	4-8 grs.	25-50 cgms.	Cathartic	—
„ et Asafetidæ	Do.	Do.	Laxative and antispasmodic	—
„ et Ferri	Do.	Do.	Laxative and emmenagogue	—
„ et Myrrhæ	Do.	Do.	Do.	—
„ Colcynthis Co.	Do.	Do.	Cathartic	—
„ et Hyoscyami	Do.	Do.	Laxative	—
„ Ferri (Blaud's Pill)	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms	Tonic in anæmia	—
„ Hydrargyri	4-8 grs.	25-50 cgms.	Cholagogue, cathartic	—
„ Subchloridi Composita	Do.	Do.	Do	—



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Pilula Ipecacuan- hæ cum Scilla (5% opium)	4-8 grs.	25-50 cgms.	Expectorant	—
„ Ipecac. cum Urginea (5% opium)	Do.	Do.	Do.	—
„ Phosphori ( $\frac{1}{2}$ strength '98; 1% phos.)	1-4 grs.	6-25 cgms.	Nervine tonic	—
„ Plumbi cum Opio, (12% opium)	2-4 grs.	12-25 cgms.	Astringent and seda- tive	—
„ Quininæ Sul- phatis	2-8 grs.	12-50 cgms.	Tonic, antiperiodic	—
„ Rhei Co.	4-8 grs.	25-50 cgms.	Cathartic	—
„ Saponis Co. (20% opium)	2-4 grs.	12-25 cgms.	Anodyne, hypnotic	—
„ Scammonii Co.	4-8 grs.	—	Purgative	—
„ Scillæ Co.	4-8 grs.	25-50 cgms.	Expectorant	—
„ Urginæ Com- posita	Do.	Do.	Do.	—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Pix Carbonis Præp.	—	—	For making the liquor	—
„ Liquida	—	—	For making the ointment	—
Plumbi Acetas	1-5 grs.	6-30 cgms.	Irritant, sedative, astringent	In pill or lotion
„ Iodidum	—	—	For porrigo, enlarged glands, etc.	In ointment
„ Oxidum	—	—	Astringent, to make plasters	—
Podophylli Indici Resina	$\frac{1}{4}$ -1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Cathartic, cholagogue	In pill with aromatics
„ „ Rhizoma	—	—	To make above	—
„ „ Resina	$\frac{1}{4}$ -1 gr.	16-60 mgms.	Cathartic, cholagogue, alterative	In pill with aromatics
„ Rhizoma	—	—	To make above	—
Potassa Caustica	—	—	Corrosive poison, caustic	—
„ Sulphurata	—	—	To make ointment	—
Potassii Acetas	15-60 grs.	1-4 gms.	Diuretic and cathartic	In mixture
„ Bicarbonas	5-30 grs.	3-20 dgms.	Antacid, antilithic, and diuretic	In mixture or powder



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Potassii Bichromas	1/10-1/5 gr.	6-12 mgms.	For ulcer of the stomach	In pill
„ Bromidum	5-30 grs.	3-20 dgms.	Alterative, calmative, hypnotic	In water
„ Carbonas	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Corrosive, antacid, and diuretic	In water, largely diluted
„ Chloras	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	In fevers, and cancerum oris	In mixture, tablets or lozenges
„ Citras	15-60 grs.	1-4 gms.	In gout and scorbutus	In mixture or draught
„ Ferro-cyanidum	—	—	To make acidum hydrocyan. dil.	—
„ Iodidum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Alterative, deobstruent, diuretic	In water
„ Nitras	Do.	Do.	Irritant, sedative, diuretic	In mixture or draught
„ Permanganas	1-3 grs.	6-20 cgms.	Disinfectant, antidote, etc.	In solution or pill
„ Sulphas	15-45 grs.	1-3 gms.	Mild cathartic	In draught



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Potassii Tartras	30-240 grs.	2-16 gms.	Mild cathartic	In electuary
" " Acidus	15-60 grs.	1-4 gms.	Mild cathartic, laxative and diuretic	In electuary, or largely diluted in water
Pruni Virginianæ Cortex	—	—	To make the syrup and tincture	—
Pterocarpi Lignum (Red Sandal Wood)	—	—	For making tinct. lavandulæ, co.	—
Pulvis Amygdalæ Compos.	—	—	For making mistura amygdalæ	—
" Antimonialis	3-6 grs.	2-4 dgms.	Sedative, diaphoretic	In powder
" Buteæ Seminum	10-20 grs.	6-12 dgms.	Anthelmintic	Do.
" Catechu Co.	10-60 grs.	6-40 dgms.	Astringent	Do.
" Cinnamomi Co.	Do.	Do.	Carminative, corrective	Do.
" Cretæ Arom.	Do.	Do.	Aromatic, astringent	In powder or mixture



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Pulvis Cretæ cum Opio (2.5% Op.)	10-60 grs.	6-40 dgms.	Sedative and astringent	In powder or mixture
" <i>Elaterini</i> Co.	1-4 grs.	—	Hydragogue, cathartic	In powder or pill
" Glycyrrhizæ Co.	60-120 grs.	4-8 gms.	Laxative	In powder
" Ipecacuanhæ Co. (10% Opium)	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Sedative, diaphoretic	In powder or mixture
" Jalapæ Co.	10-60 grs.	6-40 dgms.	Cathartic	In powder or electuary
" Kaladanæ Compos.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" Kino Co. (5% Opium)	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Sedative, astringent	Do.
" Opii Co. (10% Opium)	5-15 grs.	3-10 dgms.	Aromatic, sedative and astringent	Do.
" Rhei Co.	10-60 grs.	6-40 dgms.	Laxative	Do.
" Scammonii Co.	10-20 grs.	6-12 dgms.	Cathartic	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Pulvis Sodæ Tartaratæ Effervesc.	—	—	Laxative	In solution
„ Tragacanthæ Co.	10-60 grs.	6-40 dgms.	Demulcent, a vehicle	In powder or mixture —
Pyrethi Radix	—	—	Chewed for toothache	—
Pyroxylum	—	—	To make collodium	—
Quassia Lignum	—	—	Bitter tonic	See infusion or tincture —
Quillaia Cortex	—	—	To make tincture	In pill, powder, or solution —
Quininæ Hydrochlor.	1-10 grs.	6-60 cgms.	Tonic, antiperiodic	Do. Do. —
„ „ Acidum	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
„ „ Sulphas	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Resina	—	—	For making plasters and ointments	—
Resorcinum	1-5 grs.	-30 cgms.	Antipyretic, dia- phoretic	In sweetened water or oint- ment



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Rhei Rhizoma	3-10 grs. (rep.)	2-6 dgms.	Laxative and tonic	In powder or pill
Rhœados Petala	15-30 grs. (sing.)	1-2 gms.	To make syrup	—
Rosæ Gallicæ Petala	—	—	To make confection, infusion, and syrup.	—
Saccharum Lactis	—	—	Vehicle for powders	—
" Purificatum	—	—	For making confect- ions, syrups, etc.	—
Salicinum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Tonic and antipyretic	In powder
Salol	Do.	Do.	Antipyretic and dis- infectant	In powder or solution
Santoninum	1-3 grs.	6-20 cgms.	Anthelmintic for small worms	In powder
Sapo Animalis	—	—	For making pills and liniments	—
" Durus	—	—	For making pills and plasters	—
" Mollis	—	—	In linimentum terebin- thinæ	—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Sappan	—	—	Astringent, and for colouring mixtures	—
Scammoniae Radix	—	—	To prepare resina	—
Resina	4-8 grs.	25-50 cgms.	Cathartic	In pill or powder
Scilla (Pulv.)	1-3 grs.	6-20 cgms.	Diuretic, expectorant	Do.
Scoparii Cacumina	—	—	To make infusion, etc.	—
Senegae Radix	—	—	Do.	—
Sennae Folia	—	—	Cathartic	See confection, &c.
" Fructus	—	—	To make preparations	—
Serpentariae Rhizoma	—	—	Tonic and stimulant	See tincture
Sevum Benzoatum	—	—	For making ointments	—
" Præparatum	—	—	Do.	—
Sodii Arsenas Anhydrosus	1/40-1/10 gr.	1.5-6 mgms.	Poison; tonic in skin disease	In pill or solution
" Benzoas	5-30 grs.	3-20 dgms	Powerful cholagogue	In solution
" Bicarbonas	Do.	Do.	Antacid and diuretic	In powder
" Bromidum	Do.	Do.	Sedative, etc.	In solution
" Carbonas	Do.	Do.	Irritant, antacid, diuretic	In pill or solution



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Sodii Carbonas	3-10 grs.	2-6 dgms.	Irritant, antacid, diuretic, but stronger Cathartic, emetic Antacid and refrigerant in fevers Laxative	In pill or solution
Exsiccatus Chloridum	—	—		
Citro-Tartras Effervesc.	60-120 grs.	4-8 gms.		In solution
et Potassii Tartras	120-240 grs.	8-16 gms.		Do.
Hypophosphis	3-10 grs.	2-6 dgms.	Nerve tonic Alterative, deobstruent Dilates capillaries, etc. Gentle saline cathartic	In mixture
Iodidum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms		
Nitris	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 grs.	3-12 cgms.		In solution
Phosphas	30-120 grs. (rep.)	2-8 gms.		Do.
	150-240 grs. (sing.)	10-16 gms	Do. Do.	In mixture or draught
Acidus	30-60 grs.	2-4 gms.		
Effervesc.	60-120 grs. (rep.)	4-8 gms.		Do.
	150-240 grs. (sing.)	10-16 gms.		Do.
Salicylas	10-30 grs.	6-20 dgms.	Antipyretic, cholagogue	In powder



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Sodii Sulphas	30-120 grs. (rep.)	2-8 gms.	Saline cathartic	In mixture or draught
“ Efferves- cens	150-240 grs. (sing.)	10-16 gms.	Do.	Do.
“ Sulphis	60-120 grs. (rep.)	4-8 gms.		
Spiritus Ætheris	150-240 grs. (sing.)	10-16 gms.	Antiseptic, and for flatulence	In solution
	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Stimulant, antispasmodic	In mixture or draught
“ Nitrosi	20-40 ℥ (rep.)	12-25 dmils.		
	60-90 ℥ (sing.)	4-6 mls.		
“ Ammoniaë Aromat.	15-60 ℥	1-4 mls.	Diuretic, diaphoretic, antispasmodic	Do.
	20-40 ℥ (rep.)	12-25 dmils.	Antacid, stimulant, and antispasmodic	Do.
	60-90 ℥ (sing.) (largely diluted)	4-6 mls.		



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Spiritus Ammoniaë Fetidus	20-40 ℥ (rep.) 60-90 ℥ (sing.) (largely diluted)	12-25 dmils. 4-6 mils.	Stimulant and antispasmodic	In mixture or draught
" Anisi	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Antispasmodic	Do.
" Ammoraciæ Compos.	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mils.	Warm stimulant and antiscorbutic	Do.
" Cajuputi	5-20 ℥	3-12 dmils.	Stimulant, antispasmodic	Do.
" Camphoræ	Do.	Do.	Expectorant, antispas- modic, diaphoretic, and stimulant	Do.
" Chloroformi	5-20 ℥ (rep.) 30-40 ℥ (sing.) 5-20 ℥ Do.	3-12 dmils. 18-25 dmils.	Stimulant, antispasmodic	Do.
" Cinnamomi " Juniperi (twice strength of 1898)	5-20 ℥ Do.	3-12 dmils. Do.	Carminative do. Diuretic	Do. Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> 5-20 ℥	<i>Metric.</i> 3-12 dmils.		
Spiritus Lavandulæ	Do.	Do.	Stimulant, carminative	In mixture or draught
" Menthæ Piperitæ	Do.	Do.	Carminative	Do.
" Myristicæ	Do.	Do.	Aromatic, carminative	Do.
" Rectificatus	—	—	To make tinctures, etc.	—
" Rosmarini	—	—	Carminative	In mixture or draught
Staphisagriæ Semina	—	—	To make ointment	—
Stramonii Folia	—	—	Poison, narcotic	By smoking
Strontii Bromidum	5-30 grs.	3-20 dgms.	Sedative	In mixture
Strophanthi Semina	—	—	To make tincture and extract	—
Strychnina	1/64-1/16 gr.	1-4 mgms.	Nerve tonic in paralysis, etc.	In pill or draught
Strychninæ Hydrochlor.	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Styrax Præparatus	—	—	To make tinct. benzoin co.	—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Succus Limonis			Antiscorbutic	In mixture
" Scoparii	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	—	Diuretic	Do.
" Taraxaci	1-2 fl. drs.	4-8 mls.	Tonic and cholagogue	Do.
Sulphonal	Do.	Do.	Hypnotic	In solution
Sulphur Præcipitatum	10-30 grs.	6-20 dgms.	Diaphoretic, laxative; in skin diseases	In electuary
" Sublimatum	20-60 grs.	12-40 dgms.	Do.	Do.
Suppositoria Acidi Carbolicæ (1 gr. phenol)	Do.	Do.	Disinfectant	—
" Tannici (3 grs. tannic acid)	—	—	Astringent	—
" Belladonnæ	—	—	Sedative	—
( $\frac{1}{60}$ gr. alkaloids)	—	—	Laxative	—
" Glycerini (70%)	—	—	Antiseptic	—
" Iodoformi (3 grs.)	—	—	Narcotic and sedative	—
" Morphinae ( $\frac{1}{4}$ gr.)	—	—		



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Suppositoria Plumbi Co. (3 grs. lead ; 1 gr. opium)	—	—	Sedative and astringent	—
Syrupus Acidi Hydriodici	— $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	— 2-4 mls.	Vehicle for mixtures Deobstruent	In mixture Do.
" Aromaticus	Do.	Do.	Flavouring aromatic	Do.
" Aurantii	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" Floris	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" Calcii Lactophosphatis	Do.	Do.	Tonic	Do.
" Cascaræ Aromat.	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. drs.	2-8 mls.	Laxative	Do.
" Chloral	Do.	Do.	Hypnotic and sedative	In water
" Codeinæ	Do.	Do.	Sedative	Do.
" Phosphatis				
" Ferri Iodidi	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Chalybeate tonic alterative	Do.
" " Phosphatis	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Syrupus Ferri Phosphatis cum Quinina et Strych. ( $\frac{1}{32}$ gr. strych.)	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Nervine tonic	In water
" Glucosi	—	—	For making pills	—
" Limonis	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Refrigerant	In mixture
" Pruni Virginianæ	Do.	Do.	Sedative	Do.
" Rhei	$\frac{1}{2}$ -2 fl. drs.	2-8 mls.	Laxative	Do.
" Rhoeados	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Feeble narcotic, for colouring	Do.
" Rosæ	Do.	Do.	Flavouring	In mixture and gargle
" Scillæ	Do.	Do.	Diuretic, expectorant	In mixture
" Sennæ	$\frac{1}{8}$ -2 fl. drs.	2-8 mls.	Cathartic	In draught
" Tolutanus	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Expectorant	In mixture
" Urgineæ	Do.	Do.	Diuretic, expectorant	Do.
" Zingiberis	Do.	Do.	Aromatic, corrective	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Tabellæ Trinitrini	one to two (1/130 gr. in each)	—	Antispasmodic in angina pectoris, etc.	In tablet
Tamarindus	—	—	Laxative	In confection
Taraxaci Radix	—	—	Tonic and cholagogue	See extract and succus
Terebenum	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Antiseptic	In mixture and by inhalation
Terebinthina	—	—	—	—
Canadensis	—	—	—	—
<i>Theriaca</i>	—	—	To make pills	Do.
Theobrominæ et Sodii Salicylas	10-20 grs.	6-12 dgms.	Diuretic and tonic	—
Thymol	½-2 grs. (ord.)	3-12 cgms.	Antiseptic and anthelmintic	In pill or solu- tion
	15-30 grs. (anthel.)	1-2 gms.	—	—
Thyroideum Siccum	½-4 grs.	3-25 cgms.	For myxœdema	In powder or tablets



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> 2-5 ℥.	<i>Metric.</i> 12-30 cmils.		
Tinctura Aconiti (twice strength 1898)			Poison and sedative	In mixture
" Alstoniæ	½-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	Tonic and antiperiodic	Do
" Arnicæ	Do.	Do.	Stimulant	Do.
" Florum Asafetidæ	Do.	Do.	Antispasmodic and carminative	Do.
" Aurantii	Do.	Do.	Aromatic for flavouring	Do.
" Belladonnæ (7/10 strength of 1898)	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Narcotic, anodyne, carminative, anti- spasmodic	Do.
" Benzoini Co.	½-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	Expectorant	Do.
" Berberidis	Do.	Do.	Tonic and Anti- spasmodic	Do.
" Buchu	Do.	Do.	Diuretic and tonic in urinary diseases	Do.
" Calumbæ	Do.	Do.	Bitter tonic	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i> $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	<i>Metric.</i> 2-4 mls.		
Tinctura Camphoræ Co. ( $\frac{1}{10}$ morph. more than 1898)			Anodyne, expectorant	In mixture
" Cannabis Indicæ	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Narcotic, antispas- modic in tetanus	In mixture or draught
" Cantharidini	2-5 ℥	12-30 cmils.	Diuretic, aphrodisiac	Do.
" Capsici	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Stimulant, tonic, and epispastic	In mixture, or as gargle
" Cardamomi Composita	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Aromatic tonic	In mixture
" Cascarillæ	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" Catechu	Do.	Do.	Astringent	Do.
" Chiratae	Do.	Do.	Bitter tonic	Do.
" Chloroformi Co	5-15 ℥	—	Stimulant, antispas- modic	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Tinctura Chloroformi et Morphinæ Co. (1/11 gr. morphine & 1/2 m. acid hydrocyan. dil. in 10 minims).	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Sedative and hypnotic	In mixture
" Cinchonæ	1/2-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	Tonic, antiperiodic	Do.
" Composita	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" Cinnamomi	Do.	Do.	Aromatic	Do.
" Cocci	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	For colouring	Do.
" Colchici (1/3 strength 1898)	Do.	Do.	Diuretic in gout	Do.
" Cubebæ	1/2-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	In gonorrhœa	Do.
" Daturæ Semi-num	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Antispasmodic	Do.
" Digitalis (4/5 strength 1898)	Do.	Do.	Sedative and diuretic	In mixture or draught
" Ergotæ Ammoniata	1/2-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	Uterine stimulant	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Chalybeate tonic in amenorrhœa	In mixture
" Gelsemii	Do.	Do.	Antiperiodic; for neuralgia	Do.
" Gentianæ Co.	1-1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	Bitter tonic	Do.
" Guaiaci	Do.	Do.	Stimulating diaphoretic	Do.
" Ammon.	Do.	Do.	Astringent	Do.
" Hamamelidis	Do.	Do.	Hepatic stimulant and tonic	Do.
" Hydrastis	Do.	Do.	Narcotic and sedative	Do.
" Hyoscyami	—	—	For external use only	—
" Iodi Fortis (same strength as the liquor of 1898)	2-5 ℥	12-30 cmils.	Alterative, deobstruent	In mixture
" " Mitis (same strength as 1898)	1-1 fl. dr.	—	Diaphoretic, etc.	Do.
" Jaborandi	Do.	2-4 mils.	Cathartic	Do.
" Jalapæ	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" " Composita	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.



Medicin	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial. $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	Metric. 2-4 mls.		
Tinctur aKala- danæ			Cathartic	In mixture
" Kino	Do.	Do.	Astringent	Do.
" Krameriæ	Do.	Do.	Astringent in mucous discharges	Do.
" Lavandulæ Co.	Do.	Do.	Aromatic, stimulant. and for colouring	Do.
" Limonis	Do.	Do.	Refrigerant	Do.
" Lobeliæ	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Poison ; emetic, ex- pectorant, anti- spasmodic	Do.
" Ætherea				
" Myrrhæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Stimulant, emmena- gogue, and tonic	Do.
" Nucis Vomicae ( $\frac{1}{2}$ strength 1898)	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Nerve tonic	Do.
" Oliveri Cor- ticis	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Antispasmodic	Do.
" Opii ( $\frac{1}{3}$ stronger than 1898)	5-15 ℥ (rep.) 20-30 ℥ (sing.)	3-10 dmils. 12-18 dmils.	Narcotic and sedative	Do.



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial. $\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	Metric. 2-4 mls.		
Tinctura Opii Ammoniata ( $\frac{1}{10}$ less morphine than 1898)			Narcotic and sedative, expectorant	In mixture
" Picrorhizæ	Do.	Do.	Bitter tonic and laxative	Do.
" Podophylli	5-15 $\text{m}$	3-10 dmils	Purgative, cholagogue	Do.
" Indici	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" Pruni Vir- ginianæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Sedative	Do.
" Pyrethri	—	—	Sialogogue, used as mouth wash	—
" Quassia	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mls.	Bitter tonic	Do.
" Quillaia	Do.	Do.	Expectorant	Do.
" Quininæ	Do.	Do.	Tonic, antiperiodic	Do.
" Ammoniata	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.
" Rhei Co.	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr. (rep.)	2-4 mls.	Laxative, tonic, purga- tive	Do.
	2-4 fl. drs. (sing.)	8-16 mls.		



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Tinctura Scillæ	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.	Expectorant, diuretic Stimulating expectorant Cathartic	In mixture
„ Senegæ	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.		Do.
„ Sennæ Co.	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr. (rep.)	2-4 mils.		Do.
„ Sepentariæ	2-4 fl. dr. (sing.)	8-16 mils.	Tonic, stimulant, diaphoretic Narcotic and sedative Cardiac tonic	Do.
„ Stramonii	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.		Do.
„ Strophanthi (four times strength of 1898).	5-15 ℥ 2-5 ℥	3-10 dmils. 12-30 cmils.		Do. Do.
„ Tolutana	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.	Expectorant Diuretic, expectorant Stimulant, antispasmodic	Do.
„ Urgineæ	5-15 ℥	3-10 dmils.		Do.
„ Valerianæ Ammoniata	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. dr.	2-4 mils.		Do.
„ „ Indicæ Am.	Do.	Do.	Aromatic, corrective For making mucilage	Do.
„ Zingiberis Tragacantha	Do.	—		—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Trochiscus Acidi Benzoici	—	—	Expectorant	Lozenge
" " Carbolici ( $\frac{1}{2}$ strength of 1898)	—	—	Antiseptic	Do.
" " Tannici	—	—	Astringent	Do.
" Bismuthi Co.	—	—	Sedative and tonic	Do.
" Catechu	—	—	Astringent	Do.
" Ferri Redacti	—	—	Tonic	Do.
" Guaiaci	—	—	Stimulant	Do.
" Resinæ	—	—	Expectorant	Do.
" Ipecacuanhæ	—	—	Astringent	Do.
" Kino	—	—	Do.	Do.
" Eucalypti	—	—	Astringent and sedative	Do.
" Krameriæ	—	—	Sedative, expectorant	Do.
" " et Cocainæ ( $\frac{1}{10}$ gr. cocaine)	—	—		
" Morphinæ ( $\frac{1}{32}$ gr. morphine)	—	—		



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Trochiscus Morphinæ et Ipecac. ( $\frac{1}{32}$ gr. morphine)	—	—	Sedative, expectorant	Lozenge
" Potassii Chloratis	—	—	Demulcent, astringent	Do.
" Santonini	—	—	Anthelmintic	Do.
" Sulphuris	—	—	Laxative	Do.
Turpethum	5-20 grs.	3-12 dgms.	Purgative	In powder
Unguentum Acidi Borici	—	—	Antiseptic	—
" " Carbolic	—	—	Do.	—
" " Salicylici	—	—	Do.	—
" Aconitinæ	—	—	In neuralgia	—
" Aquæ Rosæ	—	—	Simple dressing	—
" Atropinæ (2% atropine)	—	—	Anodyne	—
" Belladonnæ (0.6% alk.)	—	—	Anodyne, and in neuralgia	—
" Calamine	—	—	Astringent	—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Unguentum Cantharidini (2/3 strength Ung. Canth. 1898)	—	—	Epispastic	—
" Capsici	—	—	Stimulant	—
" Cetacei	—	—	Simple dressing	—
" Chaulmoogræ	—	—	Chronic skin diseases	—
" Chrysarobini	—	—	Antiparasitic	—
" Cocainæ (4% cocaine)	—	—	Anodyne	—
" Creosoti	—	—	For porrigo and tinea	—
" Eucalypti	—	—	Antiseptic	—
" Gallæ	—	—	Astringent	—
" " cum Opio (7.5% op.)	—	—	Sedative and astringent in piles	—
" Hamamelidis	—	—	Astringent in piles	—
" Hydrargyri (3/5 strength of 1898)	—	—	Resolvent, alterative	—



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Unguentum	—	—	In herpes and impetigo	—
Hydrargyri Ammoniati ( $\frac{1}{2}$ strength of 1898)	—	—		—
" " Compositum (3-5 strength of 1898)	—	—	Resolvent, alterative	—
" " Iodidi	—	—	Do.	—
" " Rubri	—	—	Stimulant, alterative; in skin diseases	—
" " Nitratis	—	—	Do.	—
" " Dil.	—	—	Do.	—
" " Oleati	—	—	Do.	—
" " Oxidi	—	—	Do.	—
" " Flavi	—	—		—
" " Rubri	—	—	Stimulant, astringent	—
" " Subchloridi (twice strength of 1898)	—	—	Resolvent, alterative	—



Medicine.	Dose for Adult.		Actions and Uses.	Form of Administration.
	Imperial.	Metric.		
Unguentum Iodi	—	—	Deobstruent; in glandular swellings	—
" Iodoformi	—	—	Antiseptic	—
" Lanæ Compositum	—	—	Do., and basis for ointments	—
" Myrobalani	—	—	Astringent	—
" " cum Opio (7.5% of op.)	—	—	Astringent and sedative	—
" Paraffini	—	—	A basis for ointments	—
" Picis Liquidæ	—	—	Stimulant; in scaly skin diseases	—
" Plumbi Iodidi	—	—	Resolvent, alterative	—
" " Subacutatis	—	—	Astringent	—
" Potassii Iodidi	—	—	Alterative	—
" Resinæ	—	—	Stimulant	—
" Staphisagriæ	—	—	For destroying pediculi	—
" Sulphuris	—	—	For scabies	—
" Veratrina	—	—	In strumous joint disease	—



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Unguentum Zinci	—	—	Astringent in simple sores and eczema	—
„ „ Oleatis	—	—	Do.	—
Urginea	1-3 grs.	6-20 cgms.	Diuretic, expectorant	In pill or powder
Uvæ Ursi Folia	—	—	In urinary disorders	See infusion
Valerianæ Indicæ Rhizoma	—	—	Antispasmodic	See tincture
„ Rhizoma	—	—	Do.	Do.
Viburnum (Black Haw)	—	—	To make liquid extract	—
Vinum Antimoniale	10-30 ℥ (ord.) 2-4 fl. drs. (emet.)	6-18 dmils. 8-16 mls.	Emetic, expectorant, sedative	In mixture or draught
„ Aurantii	—	—	Aromatic	Do.
„ Colchici	10-30 ℥	6-18 dmils.	Diuretic, sedative; in gout or rheumatism	Do.
„ Ferri	1-4 fl. drs.	4-16 mls.	Chalybeate tonic	Do.
„ „ Citratis	Do.	Do.	Do.	Do.



<i>Medicine.</i>	<i>Dose for Adult.</i>		<i>Actions and Uses.</i>	<i>Form of Administration.</i>
	<i>Imperial.</i>	<i>Metric.</i>		
Vinum Ipecac.	10-30 ℥ (ord.)	6-18 dmils.	Expectorant, emetic	In mixture or draught
" Quininæ	4-6 fl. drs. (emet.)	16-24 mls.	Tonic, antiperiodic	Do.
" Xericum	$\frac{1}{2}$ -1 fl. oz.	___	To make vinum antimoniale, etc.	___
Zinci Acetas	1-2 grs.	6-12 cgms.	Tonic and astringent	In pill
" Carbonas	___	___	Astringent	For external use
" Chloridum	___	___	Caustic, disinfectant	Do.
" Oleostearas	___	___	Astringent	Do.
" Oxidum	3-10 grs.	2-6 dgms.	Tonic in epilepsy	In pill
" Sulphas	1-3 grs. (ord.)	6-20 cgms.	Tonic, emetic and astringent	In pill or solution
" Valerianas	10-30 grs. (emet.)	6-20 dgms.	Antispasmodic and tonic	In pill
Zingiber	1-3 grs.	6-20 cgms.	Aromatic, carminative	In powder



## TABLE

SHOWING THE GRADATIONS OF DOSES FROM  
INFANCY TO MANHOOD.

For an adult, supposing the dose to be . 1, or 60 grains

Under 1 year	will be . . .	$\frac{1}{12}$ , or 5	,,
" 2 years	" . . .	$\frac{1}{8}$ , or $7\frac{1}{2}$	,,
" 3	" . . .	$\frac{1}{6}$ , or 10	,,
" 4	" . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$ , or 15	,,
" 7	" . . .	$\frac{1}{3}$ , or 20	,,
" 14	" . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ , or 30	,,
" 20	" . . .	$\frac{2}{3}$ , or 40	,,
Above 21	the full dose.		
" 70	the full dose should be diminished in the inverse ratio of the above.		



# IMPORTANT ALTERATIONS EFFECTED BY THE NEW PHARMACOPŒIA 1914.

<i>Name of Drug.</i>	<i>Dosage.</i>		<i>Strength.</i>
	B.P. 1898.	B.P. 1914.	
Acetanilidum	1-3 grs.	2-5 grs.	
Acetum Scillæ	10-30 ℥	5-15 ℥	100% stronger
Acidum Nitric. Dil.	—	—	40% weaker
„ Phosph. Dil.	—	—	27.5% weaker
„ Sulphuric Dil.	—	—	26.7% weaker
Æther Aceticus	20-40 ℥ (rep.)	15-30 ℥	—
	60-90 ℥ (sing.)	45-60 ℥	—
Antimonii Tart.	1-2 grs. (emet.)	½-1 gr.	—
Cocainæ Hydrochlor.	1/5-½ gr.	1/10-¼ gr.	—
Codeina	¼-2 grs.	¼-1 gr.	—
Codeinæ Phosphas.	Do.	Do.	—
Emplastrum Belladonnæ	—	—	50% weaker
Homatropinæ Hydrobrom.	1/80-1/20 gr.	1/64-1/32 gr.	—
Injectio Cocainæ Hypo.	2-5 ℥	5-10 ℥	50% weaker
„ Morphinæ Hypo.	Do.	Do.	Do.
Linimentum Hydrargyri	—	—	40% weaker
„ Opii	—	—	33.3% stronger
Liq. Ferri Perchlor. Ft.	—	—	12 5% less iron
„ Hydrarg. Perchlor.	—	—	12% weaker
„ Potassæ	—	—	19% weaker
Phenacetinum	5-10 grs.	5-15 grs.	—
Phenazonum	5-20 grs.	5-15 grs.	—
Physostigminæ Sulphas	1/60-1/20 gr.	1/64-1/32 gr.	—



Name of Drug.	Dosage.		Strength.
	B.P. 1808.	B.P. 1914.	
Pilula Phosphori	1-2 grs.	1-4 gr.	50% weaker
Potassii Citras	10-40 grs.	15-60 grs.	—
Pulv. Catechu Co.	10-40 grs.	10-60 grs.	—
„ Cinnamomi Co.	Do.	Do.	—
„ Cretæ cum Opio	Do.	Do.	—
„ Opii Co.	2-10 grs.	5-15 grs.	—
Salol	5-15 grs.	5-20 grs.	—
Santoninum	2-5 grs.	1-3 grs.	—
Spirit. Ætheris Nit.	20-40 ℥ (rep.)	15-60 ℥	—
	60-90 ℥ (sing.)	nil.	—
„ Juniperis	20-60 ℥	5-20 ℥	100% stronger
Syrup. Chloral	—	—	9% stronger
„ Codeinæ Phosp.	—	—	Do.
„ Ferri Iodidi	—	—	30% weaker
Tabellæ Trinitrini	—	—	23% weaker
Thyroideum Siccum	3-10-grs.	½-4 grs.	—
Tinct. Aconiti	5-15 ℥	2-5 ℥	100% stronger
„ Belladonnæ	—	—	30% weaker
„ Camphoræ Co.	—	—	10% stronger
„ Cantharidini	5-15 ℥	2-5 ℥	—
„ Colchici	—	—	50% weaker
„ Digitalis	—	—	20% weaker
„ Nucis Vomicae	—	—	50% weaker
„ Opii	—	—	33.3% stronger
„ Opii Ammoniati	—	—	10% weaker
„ Strophanthi	5-15 ℥	2-5 ℥	300% stronger
Troch. Acidi Carbolici	—	—	50% weaker
Ung. Acidi Carbol.	—	—	25% weaker
„ Cantharidini	—	—	30% weaker
„ Hydrargyri	—	—	38% weaker
„ „ Ammon.	—	—	50% weaker
„ „ Comp.	—	—	38% weaker
„ „ Subchlor	—	—	100% stronger
Vinum Antimoniale	—	—	12.5% weaker
„ Auranlii	—	—	20% more alch



Chief Alterations in Nomenclature.

OLD NAME (1898).	NEW NAME (1914).
Acet. Cantharidis.....	Acet. Cantharidini
Emp. Cantharidis.....	Emp. Cantharidini
Eucalypti Gummi.....	Kino Eucalypti
Ext. Aloes Barb.....	Ext. Aloes
„ Bellad. Alch.....	„ Bellad. Siccum
„ Cascaræ Sag. ....	„ Cascaræ Sag. Siccum
„ Euonymi Siccum.....	„ Euonymi
„ Hyoscyami Viride.....	„ Hyoscyami
„ Nucis Vom.....	„ Nucis Vom. Siccum
„ Opii.....	„ Opii Siccum
„ Viburni Prun. Liq.....	„ Viburni Liq.
Ferrum Tartaratum.....	Ferri et Potassii Tartras
Ferri Phosphas.....	Ferri Phosph. Sacch.
Hydrargyri Oleas.....	Hydrargyrum Oleatum
Linum.....	Lini Semina
Liq. Iodi Fort.....	Tinct. Iodi Fort.
„ Magnes. Carb.....	Liq. Magnes. Bicarb.
Oleum Gynocardiaë.....	Oleum Chaulmoogræ
„ Pini.....	„ Abietis
Pil. Aloes Barb.....	Pil. Aloes
„ Aloes Soc.....	„ Aloes
Rhei Radix.....	Rhei Rhizoma
Soda Tartarata.. ..	Sodii et Potassii Tartras
Syr. Codeinæ.....	Syr. Codeinæ Phosph.
Tinct. Cantharidis.....	Tinct. Cantharidini
„ Colchici Sem.....	„ Colchici
„ Iodi.....	„ Iodi Mitis
Troch. Eucalypti Gummi....	Troch. Kino Eucalypti
Ung. Cantharidis.....	Ung. Cantharidini
„ Glyc. Plumbi Subacet..	„ Plumbi Subacet.
„ Gynocardiaë.....	„ Chaulmoogræ



**Chief Additions.**

Acetonum.

Acidum Acetylsalicylicum (Aspirin).

„ Hydriodicum Dil. and Syr. Acid. Hydriodici.

„ Picricum.

Adrenalinum (Adrenin, Suprarenin) and Liq. Adrenalinum Hydrochloricus.

Barbitonum (Veronal, Malouria).

Benzaminæ Lactas (B-Eucaine Lactate).

Calcii Lactas.

Cantharidinum and Acetum, Emp., Tinct., Ung.  
Cantharidini.

Chloral Formamidum (Chloramide, Chloralamide).

Cresol and Liq. Cresol Saponatus (Lysol).

Diamorphinæ Hydrochloridum (Heroin).

Ethyl Chloridum (Chloryl Anæsthetic).

Ferri Phosph. Saccharatus,

Guaiacol and Guaiacol Carbonas

Hexamina (Urotropin, Formamine)

Injectio Strychninæ Hyp

Liq. Formaldehydi (Formol, Formalin) and Liq. Form.  
Saponatus.

Methyl Salicylas.

Methylsulphonal (Trional).

Pelletierinæ Tannas.

Phenolphthaleinum (Purgen or Laxoin).

Picrorhiza and Ext. Liq. and Tinct. Picrorhizæ.

Resorcinum (Resorcinol).

Sodii Phosphas Acidus.

Strontii Bromidum.

Theobrominæ et Sodii Salicylas (Diuretin).

Urginea and Acetum, Oxymel, Pil., Syr., and Tinct.  
Urgineæ.



**Chief Omissions.**

Acetum Ipecacuanhæ.  
Acidum Gallicum.  
Ammonii Phosphas.  
Antimonium Nigrum Purificatum.  
Argenti Oxidum.  
Bismuthi Oxidum.  
Cambogia and Pil. Cambog. Co.  
Cerii Oxalas.  
Cimicifugæ Rhizoma, Ext. Cimic. Liq., and Tinct  
Cimicifugæ.  
Cocæ Folia and Ext. Cocæ Liq.  
Conii Folia and Fructus. Tinct. and Ung. Conii.  
Elaterium and Elaterinum, and Pulvis Elaterini Co.  
Extractum Jalapæ.  
Ferri Arsenas.  
Galbanum and Pil. Galb. Co.  
Infusum Serpentariæ and Liq. Serp. Conc.  
Jaborandi Folia, Ext. Jabor. Liq., and Tinct. Jabor  
Liquores Concentrati (all kinds).  
Liq. Sodii Ethylatis.  
Liq. Thyroidei.  
Lupulus and Lupulinum, Infus. and Tinct. Lupuli.  
Pareiræ Radix and Ext. Par. Liq.  
Picrotoxinum.  
Pimenta, Aqua, and Oleum Pimentæ.  
Plumbi Carbonas and Ung. Plumb. Carb.  
Sarsæ Radix, Ext. Sars. Liq., and Liq. Sars. Conc.  
Scammonium and Pil. Scam. Co.  
Sodii Sulphocarbolas.  
Spiritus Ætheris Co.  
Succus Belladonnæ.  
„ Hyoscyami.  
Sulphuris Iodidum and Ung. Sulph. Iodidi.  
Sumbul Radix and Tinct. Sumbul.  
Stramonii Semina and Ext. Stramonii.  
Tinctura Aloes.  
Veratrina and Ung. Veratrinæ.  
Zinci Sulphocarbolas.



## APPENDIX.

## WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

## Imperial Standard.

## MEASURES OF MASS.

1 grain	-	-	gr.	
1 ounce (avoir.)	oz.	=	437.5 grs.	
1 pound	lb.	=	16 ounces	= 7000 grs.

The drachm (ʒ) where used as a weight is to be taken as meaning 60 grains, and the ounce (ʒ) as meaning 480 grains.

## MEASURES OF CAPACITY.

1 minim	-	min. or ℥,	
1 fluid drachm	fl. dr. or ʒ	=	60 minims.
1 fluid ounce	fl. oz. or ʒ	=	8 fluid drachms.
1 pint	-	O	= 20 fluid ounces.
1 gallon	-	C	= 8 pints.

Metric Weights and Measures and  
their Equivalents in the British  
Pharmacopœia.

1 gramme	-	gm.	= 15.4323554 grs.
1 decigramme	-	dgm.	= 1.543235 grs.
1 centigramme	-	cgm.	= 0.154323 gr.
1 milligramme	-	mgm.	= 0.015432 gr.
1 litre	-	-	= 35.196 fl. ozs.
1 millilitre	-	mil.	= 16.9 minims.
1 decimil	-	dmil.	= 1.69 minims.
1 centimil	-	cmil	= 0.169 minim.
1 cubic centimetre	-	cc	= 16.95 minims.
1 metre	-	-	= 39.37 inches.

One cc. is approximately = one mil.



# Table for converting Imperial into approximate Metric Standard.

## EQUIVALENT MEASURES OF MASS (MARTINDALE).

1 pound	-	-	-	=	453.59 gm.
$\frac{1}{2}$ pound	-	-	-	=	226.8.
$\frac{1}{4}$ pound	-	-	-	=	113.4.
1 ounce	-	-	-	=	30 (28.35).
$\frac{1}{2}$ ounce	-	-	-	=	15
2 drachms	-	120 gr.	-	=	8.
$1\frac{1}{2}$ drachms	-	90 gr.	-	=	6.
1 drachm	-	60 gr.	-	=	4.
2 scruples	-	40 gr.	-	=	2.6.
$\frac{1}{2}$ dr.	-	30 gr.	-	=	2.
24 grains	-	-	-	=	1.5.
1 scruple	-	20 gr.	-	=	1.3.
15 grains	-	-	-	=	1.
12 grs.	-	-	-	=	.8.
10 grs.	-	-	-	=	.65.
9 grs.	-	-	-	=	.6.
8 grs.	-	-	-	=	.52.
7 grs.	-	-	-	=	.46.
6 grs.	-	-	-	=	.4.
3 grs.	-	-	-	=	.2.
2 grs.	-	-	-	=	.13.
1 gr.	-	-	-	=	.065.
$\frac{3}{4}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.05.
$\frac{1}{2}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.032.
$\frac{1}{3}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.02.
$\frac{1}{4}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.016.
$\frac{1}{5}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.013.
$\frac{1}{6}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.01.
$\frac{1}{8}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.008.
$\frac{1}{10}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.0065.
$\frac{1}{12}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.0054.
$\frac{1}{16}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.004.
$\frac{1}{20}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.0032.
$\frac{1}{25}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.0026.
$\frac{1}{30}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.0022.
$\frac{1}{32}$ gr.	-	-	-	=	.002.



$\frac{1}{40}$ gr.	-	-	=	.0016.
$\frac{1}{50}$ gr.	-	-	=	.0013.
$\frac{1}{64}$ gr.	-	-	=	.001.
$\frac{1}{100}$ gr.	-	-	=	.00065.

## EQUIVALENT MEASURES OF CAPACITY.

1	gallon	-	Ci	=	4.55 litres.
1	pint + 15 fl. oz.	=		=	1 litre.
1	pint - $\frac{3}{4}$ xx	Oi	=		.57 litres (568 cc).
12	ounces	-	-	=	340 cc.
10	ozs.	-	-	=	280 cc.
8	ozs.	-	-	=	230 cc.
6	ozs.	-	-	=	170 cc.
5	ozs.	-	-	=	140 cc.
4	ozs.	-	-	=	115 cc.
3	ozs.	-	-	=	90 cc.
2	ozs.	-	-	=	60 cc.
1	oz.	-	-	=	30 cc.
$\frac{1}{2}$	oz.	-	(3iv)	=	15 cc.
3	fluid drachms	-	-	=	10.5 cc.
2	fluid drachms	-	-	=	7 cc.
100	minims	-	-	=	6 cc.
90	m.	-	(3iss)	=	5.3 cc.
60	m.	-	(3i)	=	3.5 cc.
50	m.	-	-	=	3 cc.
40	m.	-	-	=	2.4 cc.
30	m.	-	(3ss)	=	1.8 cc.
25	m.	-	-	=	1.5 cc.
20	m.	-	-	=	1.2 cc.
17	m.	-	-	=	1 cc.
15	m.	-	-	=	.9 cc.
12	m.	-	-	=	.7 cc.
10	m.	-	-	=	.6 cc.
8	m.	-	-	=	.5 cc.
6	m.	-	-	=	.35 cc.
5	m.	-	-	=	.3 cc.
4	m.	-	-	=	.24 cc.
3	m.	-	-	=	.18 cc.
2	m.	-	-	=	.12 cc.
1	m.	-	-	=	.06 cc.



**INCOMPATIBILITIES.**

The chief chemical and pharmacological incompatibilities might be briefly summarised as follows:—

Mineral acids or acid salts with alkalies or alkaline salts, iodides and bromides, spt. eth. nitrosi, metallic oxides, glucosides, hydrates, tannin.

Alkalies and their oxides with acids and acid salts, metallic salts, alkaloids and their salts, chloral, quinine, iodides and bromides, tinct. card. co., and tinct. cocci.

Iron salts and solutions with tannin-containing drugs, salicylates, carbolic acid, calomel.

Alkaloids and their salts with alkalies, tannic, phosphoric, and boric acids, iodides and bromides.

Mucilage with concentrated alcohol, iron and lead salts, mineral acids, nitrous ether, glucosides.

Nitrous ether with phenazonum, bromides and iodides, iron salts, guaiacum, gallic and tannic acids, mucilages, mineral acids.

Quinine with alkalies and carbonates, salicylates, astringent infusions.

Tannic acid with alkaloids, mineral acids, alkalies, antimony, lead, silver and iron salts, arsenic, gelatin, and albumen.

Nitrate of silver with alkalies and carbonates, chlorides, iodides, arsenic, astringent infusions.

Perchloride of mercury with vegetable infusions containing tannin or albumen, alkalies, iodides, tartar emetic.

Calomel with alkalies, iodides, iron and lead salts, prussic acid.



Iodine and iodides with alkaloids, mineral acids, nitrous ether, metallic salts and starch, e.g., iodide of potassium with preparations of strychnine.

Lime water with mercurial salts, carbonates, morphine, quinine, and phosphoric acid.

Carbonates with alkaloids, metallic salts, and acetic acid.

Nitric acid with alcohol, sulphate of iron, and acetate of lead.

Phosphoric acid with alkaloids, metallic salts, and lime water.

Alum with alkalies, tannin, tartrates, and salts of lead.

Cyanides with chloral; cocaine with borax; oxide of silver with creosote; bismuth subnitrate with carbonates and bicarbonates in watery solution; infusion of roses with alkalies: and it should be remembered that chlorate and permanganate of potassium should not be rubbed up with charcoal, sulphur, glycerin, etc., as explosive mixtures may be produced.

*Note.*—In some cases incompatibility between drugs has been purposely ignored as in the combination of calomel with lime-water (black wash), of hydrochloric acid and chlor. of pot. (chlorine gargle), of iod. of pot. and perchlor. of merc. and in efferv. mixtures. It may also be overcome in many instances by skilful dispensing, e.g. by the use of dil. phos. acid in preventing the inky colour of iron mixtures: of liq. ammon. acet. in avoiding the precipitation of quinine from its ammoniated tinct. and of salicylic acid when mixed with water; of liq. ammoniæ in making liquid extr. of cascara soluble; of carb. of pot. in rendering nitrous ether compatible with iod. of pot.; and of the tincts. of senega and quillaia in emulsifying santol, copaiba, and other oils and making them miscible with water.



# APPENDIX ON POISONS.

Poison.	Effects and Tests.	Antidotes.
Acidum Arseniosum.	<p>Shortly after partaking, burning pain in the epigastrium, sickness, vomiting, diarrhœa, thirst, feeling of constriction in throat. Heart's action becomes feeble, with quick and weak pulse. Respiration painful and hurried; cold and clammy skin. Death at times within twenty-four hours from collapse, with or without convulsions.</p> <p><i>Tests.</i>—Slowly sublimed, it forms minute transparent octahedral crystals. Sprinkled on a hot iron, it gives out an alliaceous odour. Solution gives, with ammonio-nitrate of silver, a canary-yellow precipitate, insoluble in water, but readily dissolved by ammonia, and by nitric acid.</p>	<p>Stomach-pump or emetic of sulphate of zinc or apomorphine. Wash out stomach with tepid water, in which is suspended the humid peroxide of iron. Give largely also of light magnesia and demulcent drinks.</p>



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
Acidum Carbolicum. Acidum Hydrochloricum.	<p>Caustic to mucous membranes, pain, vomiting, gastro-enteritis, dark-colored urine. Death from collapse. Immediate burning pain in mouth, oesophagus, and stomach. Vomiting of liquid, with mucus. Corrosion of parts touched by the poison. Death from inflammation or asphyxia, the chink of the glottis becoming occluded by the tumefaction of the fauces.</p> <p><i>Tests.</i>—Gives, with nitrate of silver, a curdy-white precipitate, soluble in excess of ammonia, insoluble in nitric acid.</p>	<p>Saline purgatives and oleaginous drinks.</p> <p>Chalk, magnesia, and demulcent drinks.</p>
Acidum Hydrocyanicum Dilutum.	<p>Spasmodic breathing, convulsions, insensibility, and speedy death.</p> <p><i>Tests.</i>—Treated with a small quantity of a mixed solution of sulphate and persulphate of iron, afterwards with potash, and finally acidulated with</p>	<p>Fresh air, vigorous cold affusions, water being showered down head and neck, and artificial respiration. Newly precipitated</p>



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
Acidum Nitricum.	<p>hydrochloric acid, it forms Prussian blue. Gives no precip. with chloride of barium, but with nitrate of silver it gives a white precipitate, entirely sol. in boiling concentrated nitric acid. Same as Acidum Hydrochloricum.</p> <p><i>Tests.</i>—Poured over copper filings, dense red vapours are immediately formed; but if the acid be mixed with an equal volume of water, and then added to the copper, it gives off a colourless gas, which acquires an orange-red colour as it mixes with the air, and which, if introduced into a solution of ferri sulphas, communicates to it a dark purple or brown colour.</p> <p>Burning pain in throat, œsophagus, and stomach. Vomiting of mucus and blood altered to a dark green or black hue. Feeble pulse, convulsions, and death.</p>	<p>oxide of iron, with an alkaline carbonate.</p> <p>Same as Acidum Hydrochloricum.</p>
Acidum Oxalicum.		<p>Emetics and stomach-pump. Chalk, magnesia, or whiting suspended in water.</p>



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes,</i>
Acidum Sulphuricum	Same as Acidum Nitricum. <i>Tests.</i> —Evolves heat on addition of water, and when thus diluted gives a copious precipitate with chloride of barium, insoluble in nitric acid.	Magnesia and demulcent drinks.
Aconiti Radix et Folia.	Numbness and tingling in mouth and throat, vomiting, purging, giddiness, dilated pupil, feeble pulse, oppressed breathing, muscular paralysis. Death either from syncope or asphyxia.	Emetic of sulphate of zinc; internal and external stimulants; best emetic apomorphine.
Antimonium Tartaratum (Tartar Emetic)	Burning pain in stomach and bowels, vomiting, purging, thirst, cold perspiration, cramps, great debility and death. <i>Tests.</i> —Decrepitates and blackens when heated. Its solution in water gives with HCl a white precipitate, soluble in excess, and which is not formed if tartaric acid be previously added. 29 grs. dissolve without residue in 1 fl. oz. of aqua destillata at 60° F. :	Tannin, catechu, and other vegetable astringents.



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes</i>
Argenti Nitras.	and the solution gives, with sulphuretted hydrogen, an orange precipitate, which, when washed and dried at 212° F., weighs 15.1 grs. Corrosion of the tissues touched by it. <i>Tests.</i> —The solution gives, with HCl, a curdy-white precipitate, which darkens by exposure to light, and is soluble in solution of ammonia.	Common Salt
Belladonnæ Folia et Radix.	Dryness of mouth and throat, insatiable thirst, sickness, vomiting, greatly dilated pupil, giddiness, palpitation, coma, death.	Emetic of apomorphine or zinci sulphas, cold to head, ammonia inter. and exter., other stimulants; and, after a brisk purgative, careful doses of opium.
Calx Chlor- inata.	Burning pain in stomach and bowels, and thirst. <i>Tests.</i> —The solution evolves chlorine on adding oxalic acid, and deposits at the same time oxalate of lime.	Emetics, albumen, milk, flour, demulcent drinks.



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
Cantharidis Pulvis or Cantharidin.	<p>Burning pain in stomach, vomiting, purging, pains in loins, bloody urine, strangury, priapism, delirium, convulsions, death.</p> <p><i>Tests.</i>—Powder, greyish-brown, containing shining green particles. Odour strong and disagreeable; yields cantharidin in white crystals.</p> <p>Insensibility, stertorous breathing, relaxation of muscles, arrestment of action of heart.</p>	<p>Emetics, mucilaginous drinks, opium by the mouth, and by enema.</p>
Chloroform.	<p>Dryness of throat, convulsions, death from paralysis of respiratory muscles.</p> <p>Burning pain in belly; vomiting, purging, thirst; depression of circulation, sometimes delirium and stupor; death from exhaustion.</p>	<p>Currents of fresh air, amyl nitris, galvanism, artificial respiration, stimulants</p>
Conii Folia et Fructus. Colchici Cormus et Semina	<p>Emetics; internal and external stimulants.</p> <p>Emetics promptly, and demulcent drinks; if coma results, strong stimulants. Tannin also, as it forms an insoluble compound with the colchicin.</p>	<p>Emetics; internal and external stimulants.</p> <p>Emetics promptly, and demulcent drinks; if coma results, strong stimulants. Tannin also, as it forms an insoluble compound with the colchicin.</p>



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
Digitalis.	Vomiting, purging, slow and irregular pulse, dilated pupils, great debility, stupor, convulsions, coma, death.	Emetics of apomorphine or zinci sulphas; internal and external stimulants, and particularly the recumbent posture.
Elaterium.	Pain in bowels, purging, vomiting, cold sweats, collapse.	Demul. drinks, mucilag. enemata, small and repeated doses of opium, and the <i>warm bath</i> .
Ferri Perchloridi, Liquor. Hydrargyri Perchloridum.	Same as Acidum Hydrochloricum.  Burning heat and pain in mouth and throat immediately after partaking of it. Pain soon extending to abdomen. Sickness, vomiting. Matters thrown up mixed with mucus and blood. Diarrhoea, dysentery, cramps, convulsions, insensibility, death.	Same as Acidum Hydrochloricum.  Albumen, white of egg, flour, milk, protochloride of tin.



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
<p>Hyoscyami Folia</p> <p>Liquor Ammoniae Fortis. Lobelia.</p>	<p><i>Tests.</i>— Gives a yellow precipitate with caustic potash; a white precipitate with ammonia; and a curdy-white precipitate with nitrate of silver. Heated, it sublimes without decomposing, and without leaving any residue. Giddiness, delirium, dilated pupil, fullness about head, drowsiness, cold sweats, paralysis, exhaustion, death. Burning pain in mouth, throat, and stomach, corrosion of parts, vomiting of blood.</p> <p>Pain, sickness, vomiting, feeble pulse, contraction of pupils, insensibility, death.</p> <p>See Opium.</p>	<p>Emetics, stomach-pump, stimulants, lemon juice.</p> <p>Vinegar, lemon juice, tartaric acid, demulcents</p> <p>Emetic of zinc sulphas, internal and external stimulants.</p>
<p>Morphinae Hydro- chloridum.</p>	<p><i>Tests.</i>—Aqueous solution gives a white curdy precipitate with nitrate of silver, and a white one with potash, which is re-dissolved when an excess</p>	<p>See Opium. Permanganate of potassium.</p>



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
<p>Nux Vomica. Oleum Crotonis. Opium.</p>	<p>of the alkali is added; moistened with strong nitric acid it becomes orange-red, and with solution of per-chloride of iron, greenish-blue.</p> <p>Irritation of alimentary canal, tetanic convulsions, death.</p> <p>Burning pain along alimentary tract, severe purging, inflammation of bowels.</p> <p>Drowsiness, giddiness, stupor, insensibility, stertorous breathing, contracted pupils, feeble pulse, coma, convulsions, death.</p>	<p>Chloral; chloroform</p> <p>Emetic, if seen early, demulcent drinks, opium.</p> <p>Emetic of zinci sulphas or apomorphine, the stomach pump, potassium permanganate in solution (1-1000), external stimulants, artificial respiration, enforced exertions.</p>
<p>Phosphorus.</p>	<p>Burning pain in alimentary tract, thirst, vomiting of luminous matters, diarrhoea, debility, convulsions at times, death.</p>	<p>Demulcent drinks and small doses of opium.</p> <p>Permangan. of potassium, turpentine, and sulphate of copper.</p>



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
Plumbi Acetas.	<p>Dryness and constriction of throat, pain in stomach and bowels, colic, paralysis of extensor muscles, apoplectic symptoms.</p> <p><i>Tests.</i>—Solution gives a yellow precipitate with iodide of potassium, and is precipitated white by sulphuric acid—acetic acid being set free. Solution in distilled water has a slight milkiness, which disappears on the addition of acetic acid.</p>	<p>Phosphates of sodium and magnesium, sulphate of magnesium, laxatives, and afterwards opium and the warm bath, and the iodide of potassium.</p>
Potassa Caustica.  Sabinæ Cacumina	<p>Burning pain along alimentary tract, corrosion of tissues, vomiting of mucus and blood, diarrhœa.</p> <p>Pain along intestinal canal, vomiting, diarrhœa, tenesmus, cold sweats, feeble pulse, convulsions at times, collapse, death.</p>	<p>Dilute acetic acid, citric acid, fixed oils, demulcents, lemon juice.</p> <p>Emetics, demulcents, opiates.</p>



<i>Poison.</i>	<i>Effects and Tests.</i>	<i>Antidotes.</i>
<p>Stramonii Folia et Semina.</p> <p>Strychnina.</p>	<p>See Belladonna.</p> <p>Twitching of muscles, jerking of limbs, tetanic spasms, dyspnoea, death.</p> <p><i>Tests.</i>— Sparingly soluble in water, but communicating to it its intensely bitter taste; soluble in boiling rectified spirit and in chloroform, but not in absolute alcohol or ether. Pure sulphuric acid forms with it a colourless solution, which, on the addition of bichromate of potassium acquires an intensely violet hue, quickly passing through red to yellow. Not coloured by nitric acid.</p>	<p>See Belladonna.</p> <p>Chloral, chloroformum, tinctura aconiti, tinctura belladonnae. A little of either of these tinctures should be given, the patient being afterwards put under chloroform.</p>
Veratrina.	Sickness, diarrhoea, vomiting, pain in bowels, dilated pupils, cold sweats, convulsions, death.	Same as for Colchicum.



## INDEX OF DISEASES.

WITH

THEIR MOST IMPORTANT REMEDIES.

**Abscess**—*Locally*, Poultices of Poppy Heads, Chamomile Flowers, or Linseed Meal. *Internally*, Quinine and Iron, Cod-Liver Oil, &c.

**Acne**—*Locally*, Iodide of Sulphur Ointment, Mercurial Ointment, &c. *Internally*, Arsenic, Nitro-Hydrochloric Acid Dilute, Cod-Liver Oil, &c.

**Adenitis**—Aconite, Belladonna.

**Albuminuria** — *Internally*, Hexamina (Urotropin), Potassii Acetas, Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi. Acidum Gallicum, Opium, &c.

**Alopecia**—*Locally*, Cantharidin, Ammonia, Acetic Acid, &c. *Internally*, Quinine, Iron, Cod-Liver Oil, &c.

**Amenorrhœa** — Pilula Aloes et Ferri, Quinine, Iron, Gossypii Radicis Cortex, &c.

**Anæmia**—Iron Tonics, Cod-Liver Oil, &c.

**Anasarca** — See Dropsy.

**Aneurysm**—Potassii Iodidum, in 20 grain doses, several times a-day.



**Angina Pectoris**—*Internally*, Nitrite of Amyl, Nitrite of Sodium, Nitro-Glycerin Tablets, Erythrol Tetranitrate Tablets, Hydrocyanic Acid, Potassii Iodidum. *Locally*, Aconite, Belladonna, Opium, &c.

**Aphonia**—Borax in Crystals, sucked ; Nitrate of Potassium, sucked, &c.

**Aphthæ of Mouth**—*Locally*, Honey of Borax. *Internally*, Iron and Cod-Liver Oil.

**Apoplexy**—Croton Oil, Scammony, Hydrargyri Subchloridum, &c.

**Arteriosclerosis**—Nitrite of Amyl, Trinitrin, Erythrol Titanitrate, Pot. Iodide, Adrenalin, Thyroid Preparations, &c.

**Ascites**—See Dropsy.

**Asthma**—Lobelia, Stramonium, Ether, Chloroform, Nitrites, Belladonna, &c.

**Biliousness**—Rhubarb, Hydrargyri Subchloridum, Podophyllin, &c.

**Boils**—*Locally*, Poultices of Linseed Meal or Poppy Heads. *Internally*, Calx Sulphurata. Sulphate of Magnesium, &c.

**Bright's Disease**—Caffeine, Purgatives, Acetate of Potassium, Pilocarpine, &c.

**Bronchitis**—*Internally*, Squills, Ammonia, Senega, Ipecacuanha, Ether, Turpentine, Opium, &c. *Locally*, Sinapisms, Blisters, Turpentine Liniments, &c.



**Bruises**—*Locally*, Chloride of Ammonium in Lotion, Chamomile Flowers, &c.

**Bubo**—Poultices of Poppy Heads, Free Incision by knife, or the use of Caustic Potash, &c.

**Burns and Scalds**—*Locally*, Linimentum Calcis, Picric Acid Solution, Cotton Wadding, &c.

**Cancer**—*Locally*, Hemlock, Poppy Heads, Permanganate of Potassium, Carbolic Acid, Belladonna, Opium, Chlorinated Soda Lotion. *Internally*, Opiates.

**Carbuncle**—Injection of six minims of Liquefied Carbolic Acid, Poultices of Poppy Heads, &c. *Internally*, Quinine and Iron, &c.

**Chicken-Pox**—Quinine, Iron, &c.

**Chilblain**—*Locally*, Camphor, Iodine, Opium, &c. *Internally*, Adrenalin, Calcii Lactas.

**Chlorosis**—Aloes, Iron, Arsenic.

**Cholera**—*Internally*, Salol, Chlorate of Potassium, Chloride of Sodium, Brandy. *Locally*, Opiates, Belladonna, Sinapisms.

**Chordee**—Belladonna, Camphor.

**Chorea**—Arsenic, Iron, Quinine, Oxide of Zinc.

**Colic**—Ether, Ammonia, Asafetida, Chloroform, Opium, Ginger.



**Conjunctivitis**—*Locally*, Sulphate of Zinc, Hydrate of Chloral, Acetate of Lead and Morphine, Nitrate of Silver.

**Constipation**—Cascara Sagrada, Phenolphthaleinum, Aloes and Sulphate of Iron, Belladonna, Nux Vomica.

**Convulsions**—Scammony, Belladonna, Chloral, Opium, Chloroform, Valerian, Bromide of Potassium, Iodide of Potassium.

**Coryza**—Morphine, Camphor, &c.

**Cough**—Morphine, Hyoscyamus, Ether, Chloroform, Hydrocyanic Acid, Senega, Ammonia.

**Croup**—*Internally*, Ipecacuanha, Belladonna, Chloroform. *Locally*, Poultices, Sinapisms, &c.

**Cystitis**—Alkalies or Acids, Hexamina (Urotropine), Salicylic Acid, Buchu, Uva Ursi, Opium, &c.

**Delirium Tremens**—Chloral, Bromide of Potassium, Digitalis.

**Diabetes Mellitus**—Milk, Opium, Jaborandi, Nux Vomica, Quinine, Lactic Acid, Phosphoric Acid.

**Diarrhœa**—Castor Oil and Opium, Gallic Acid, Tannic Acid, Chalk, Opium, Acetate of Lead, Vegetable Astringents.

**Diphtheria**—*Internally*, Chlorate of Potassium and Iron, Quinine, Sulphite of Sodium, Brandy. *Locally*, Solution of Permanganate of Potassium, Lactic Acid, Perchloride of Iron, Antitoxin Hypodermic, Chlorinated Soda Lotion,



**Diuresis**—Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi, Opium, Gallic Acid, Phosphoric Acid.

**Dropsy** — *Diuretics*, Copaiba, Acetate of Potassium, Squill, Digitalis, Juniper, Broom, Jaborandi. *Purgatives*, Jalap, Elaterin, Scammony Resin.

**Dysentery**—Ipecacuanha, Opium, Corrosive Sublimate, Gallic Acid, Kino, Logwood, Mucilage, Lead and Opium.

**Dysmenorrhœa**—Opium, Belladonna, Cannabis Indica. Viburnum (liquid extract of), Guaiacum Resin.

**Dyspepsia** — Pepsin, Pancreatic Solution, Bismuth, Morphine, Nux Vomica, Iron, Quinine, Ginger, Alkalies, Mineral Acids.

**Dyspnœa** — Ether, Chloroform, Lobelia, Nitrite of Amyl, Hydrocyanic Acid, Nitro-Glycerine, Pilocarpine, Nitrite of Sodium.

**Eczema**—*Locally*, Zinc Ointment, Chloral Ointment. *Internally*, Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi, Arsenic.

**Emphysema**—Lobelia. Ether, Chloroform, Ammonia, Stramonium, Pilocarpine.

**Enteritis** — *Internally*, Opium, Calomel, Aconite. *Locally*, Sinapisms, Belladonna, Opiates, Turpentine.

**Entozoa** — Filix-mas, Santonin, Kamala, Koussou, Pelletierinæ Tannas, Turpentine, Scammony.



**Enuresis**—Belladonna, Perchloride of Iron, Cantharidin.

**Epilepsy**—Bromide of Potassium, Arsenic, Zinc, Indian Hemp, Belladonna, Quinine, Iron, Cod-Liver Oil, Nux Vomica.

**Epiphytes**—Sulphurous Acid, Corrosive Sublimite, Chrysarobinum.

**Epistaxis** — *Locally*, Alum, Perchloride of Iron, Adrenalin, Tannin, Gallic Acid. *Internally*, Gallic Acid, Perchloride of Iron, Ergot, &c.

**Epizoa**—Sulphur, Stavesacre, Corrosive Sublimite.

**Erysipelas**—*Internally*, Perchloride of Iron and Chlorate of Potassium. *Locally*, Acetate of Lead and Morphine, Tincture of Iodine, Sulphurous Acid and Glycerin.

**Flatulence**—Charcoal, Ether, Valerian, Ammonia, Asafetida, Chloroform, Ginger, Sulphurous Acid, Sulphites.

**Gastralgia**—Morphine, Bismuth, Bicarbonate of Potassium, Hydrocyanic Acid, Pepsin.

**Gonorrhœa**—*Internally*, Oil of Sandal-wood, Acetate of Potassium, Bicarbonate of Potassium, Belladonna, Morphine, Perchloride of Iron, Gallic Acid, Cubebs, Copaiba. *Locally*, Permanganate of Potassium, Lead and Morphine, Nitrate of Silver, Sulphate of Zinc.

**Gout**—Colchicum, Bicarbonate of Potassium, Lithium, Opium, Iodide of Potassium.



**Hæmatemesis**—Ice, Gallic Acid, Opium, Turpentine, Lead and Morphine, Alum, Sulphuric Acid, Ergot.

**Hæmaturia**—Turpentine, Gallic Acid, Per-nitrate of Iron, Logwood, Krameria, Ergot, Liquor Hamamelidis

**Hæmoptysis**—Gallic Acid, Mineral Acids, Opium, Acetate of Lead, Ergot, Turpentine, Perchloride of Iron.

**Hæmorrhage**—(Uterine)—Ergot, Gallic Acid, Pernitrate of Iron, Opium, Digitalis, Ustilago, Viburnum, Adrenalin.

**Hæmorrhoids**—*Internally*, Sulphur, Acid Tartrate of Potassium, Treacle, Castor Oil, Hamamelis Solution. *Locally*, Tannin Suppositories, Ointment of Galls and Opium, Hamamelis Ointment.

**Headaches**—Purgatives, Ether, Chloroform, Ginger, Phenazonum.

**Heart, Disease of**—Digitalis, Strophanthus, Arsenic, Bromide and Iodide of Potassium, Belladonna.

**Hepatic Diseases**—Calomel, Podophyllin, Ipecacuanha, Taraxacum, Nitro-Hydrochloric Acid, &c.

**Herpes Zoster**—*Internally*, Tonics. *Externally*, Solutions of Nitrate of Silver, Zinc Ointment, &c.



**Hysteria**—Valerian, Asafetida, Hyoscyamus, Quinine, Iron.

**Influenza**—Phenazonum, Tonics.

**Intermittent Fever**—Quinine, Cascarella, Arsenic, Beberine.

**Iritis**—Mercurials, Belladonna.

**Jaundice**—Aloes, Podophyllin, Taraxacum, Nitric Acid, Benzoates, Salicylates, &c.

**Lead Colic**—Sulphate of Magnesium, Opium, Sulphuric Acid, Iodide of Potassium.

**Lepa**—*Internally*, Arsenic. *Locally*, Pitch Ointment, &c.

**Leucorrhœa**—*Internally*, Perchloride and Pernitrate of Iron, Gallic Acid, Quinine. *Locally*, Alum, Tannin, Decoction of Oak Bark, Permanganate of Potassium.

**Locomotor Ataxy**—Belladonna, Strychnine, Phosphorus, Ergot, &c.

**Lumbago**—*Internally*, Potassium Salts, Morphine. *Locally*, Belladonna, Aconite, Menthol, Opium, Chloroform Liniment, &c.

**Lupus**—*Internally*, Thyroid Tabloids, Quinine and Iron, Arsenic, Cod-Liver Oil, Iodide of Potassium. *Locally*, Strong Nitric Acid, Chloride of Zinc, &c.



**Measles**—Compound Powder of Ipecacuanha, Acetate of Ammonium, Spirit of Nitrous Ether, Compound Tincture of Chloroform, Carbonate of Ammonium.

**Meningitis**—*Purgatives*, Iodide of Potassium, Bromides, Chloral, &c. *Locally*, Bags of Ice.

**Menorrhagia**—Liquor Ferri Pernitratis, Gallic Acid, Mineral Acids, Opium, Ergot.

**Myalgia**—*Internally*, Quinine, Iron, Opium, *Locally*, Liniments of Aconite and Belladonna, Menthol, &c.

**Myxœdema**—*Internally*, Thyroid preparations.

**Nephritis**—*Internally*, Milk, Barley Water, Jalap, Sulphate of Magnesium, Elaterin, Quinine and Iron. *Locally*, Poultices of Poppy Heads, Sinapisms.

**Neuralgia**—*Internally*, Phenazonum. Quinine, Morphine, Sulphate of Beberine, Iron, Iodide of Potassium. *Locally*, Aconite, Belladonna, Morphine, Cantharidin, Menthol.

**Orchitis**—*Locally*, Lead and Morphine Lotion.

**Otalgia**—*Locally*, Opiates and Poultices. *Internally*, Quinine.

**Otorrhœa**—*Locally*, Sulphate of Zinc, Permanganate of Potassium, Chloral Hydrate. *Internally*, Quinine, Iron, Cod-Liver Oil.

**Oxaluria**—Nitro-Hydrochloric Acid Dilute.



**Ozæna**—*Internally*, Quinine, Iron Cod-Liver Oil. *Locally*, Permanganate of Potassium, Sulphate of Zinc, Chlorine, Carbolic Acid.

**Paralysis**—Croton Oil, Elaterin, Scammony Resin, Nux Vomica, Strychnine.

**Pericarditis**—*Internally*, Opium, Aconite, Antimony. *Locally*, Belladonna, Poultices, &c.

**Peritonitis** — *Internally*, Opium, Calomel, *Locally*, Poultices, Turpentine.

**Phlebitis**—*Internally*, Chlorate of Potassium Quinine, Iron, Opium. *Locally*, Poultices.

**Phlegmasia Dolens**—Opium, Aconite, Iodide of Potassium, Sulphite of Sodium.

**Phthisis**—*Internally*, Cod-Liver Oil, Quinine, Iron, Morphine, Hydrocyanic Acid, Mineral Acids. *Locally*, Iodine.

**Pleurisy**—*Locally*, Sinapisms, Cantharidin, Aconite, Belladonna. *Internally*, Aconite, Opium, Iodide of Potassium, Sweet Spirit of Nitre, Tinctura Veratri Viridis.

**Pleurodynia**—*Locally*, Aconite, Belladonna, Morphine. *Internally*, Quinine, Opium.

**Pneumonia** — *Internally*, Acetate of Ammonium, Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus, Carbonate of Ammonium, Antimony, Aconite. *Locally*, Turpentine, Cantharidin, Aconite, Belladonna.



**Prostatitis** — *Locally*, Morphine Suppositories, Belladonna. *Internally*, Opium, Iodide of Potassium.

**Pruritus Ani**—*Locally*, Lead and Morphine Lotions, Menthol in Solution.

**Psoriasis**—*Locally*, Pitch Ointment. *Internally*, Arsenic, Iodide of Potassium.

**Purpura**—Milk, Iron and Quinine, Chlorate of Potassium, Turpentine, Ergot.

**Pyæmia**—Salicylic Acid, Tonics, &c.

**Pyrosis**—Bismuth, Bicarbonates of Potassium and Sodium, Nux Vomica.

**Rheumatism** — *Internally*, Salicin, Acidum Acetylsalicylicum (Aspirin), Salol, Acetate and Bicarbonate of Potassium, Colchicum, Morphine, Iodide of Potassium, Quinine. *Locally*, Aconite, Belladonna, Cantharidin, Turpentine.

**Rheumatoid Arthritis**—Sulphate and Carbonate of Magnesium, Arsenic, Quinine, Iron.

**Rickets**—Iron, Cod-Liver Oil.

**Rupia**—Quinine, Iron, Mineral Acids, Iodide of Potassium.

**Scabies**—*Locally*, Sulphur Ointment, Solution of Chloride of Lime, Stavesacre Ointment.

**Scarlet Fever**—Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus, Potassii Nitrates, Potassii Chloras, Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi, Acetate of Ammonium.



**Sciatica**—*Locally*, Acupuncture, Liniments of Aconite and Belladonna, Hypodermic Injection of Morphine. *Internally*, Purgatives, Iodide of Potassium.

**Scrofula** — Cod-Liver Oil, Iron, Quinine, Iodine, and Iodides.

**Scurvy**—Lemon Juice, Citric Acid, Chlorate of Potassium, Iron, Fresh Meat and Vegetables.

**Sleeplessness**—Bromides of Potassium and Ammonium, Chloral, Opium, Butyl-Chloral, Sulphonal, Methylsulphonal (Trional), Barbitonum (Veronal).

**Small-Pox**—Barley Water, Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus, Acetate of Ammonium, Spiritus Ætheris Nitrosi, Brandy.

**Sneezing**—Arsenic, Gelsemium, &c.

**Sore Nipples**—*Locally*, Sulphurous Acid and Glycerin, Tannic Acid, Solution of Chloral.

**Sore Throat**—*Internally*, Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus Potassii Nitras, Potassii Chloras, Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi. *Locally*, Permanganate of Potassium in Solution, Sulphurous Acid, Alum, Tannic Acid, Bicarbonate of Sodium, Syrup of Lemons, &c

**Spermatorrhœa** — Camphor, Hyoscyamus, Belladonna, Dilute Nitric Acid, Nux Vomica.

**Sweating**—Oxide of Zinc, Mineral Acids, Quinine, Belladonna, Picrotoxin, Pilocarpine Muscarine, &c.



**Synovitis**—*Locally*, Cantharidin, Iodine. *Internally*, Iodide of Potassium, Cod-Liver Oil, Iron.

**Syphilis**—Potassii Iodidum, Quinine, Iron, Mineral Acids, Hydrargyri Perchloridum.

**Tabes Mesenterica**—*Internally*, Iodide of Iron, Cod-Liver Oil, Quinine, Perchloride of Iron. *Locally*, Cod-Liver Oil.

**Tetanus**—Antitoxin, Chloral, Calabar Bean, Belladonna, Opium, Chloroform.

**Tinea**—*Locally*, Solution of Sulphurous Acid and Glycerin, Petroleum, Iodine, &c.

**Tonsillitis**—*Internally*, Chlorate of Potassium, Perchloride of Iron. *Locally*, Poultices, Acetic Acid, Sulphurous Acid, Belladonna, Opium, Bicarbonate of Sodium.

**Toothache**—Creosote, Chloroform, Tinctura Opii, Tinctura Capsici, Carbolic Acid, Nitrate of Silver.

**Tuberculosis**—Cod-Liver Oil, Iron Tonics, Quinine.

**Typhoid Fever**—Mineral Acids, Opiates, Sulphites, Quinine, Iron, Bromide of Potassium, Chloral, Ergot, Hexamina (Urotropine).

**Typhus** — Mineral Acids, Quinine, Iron, Chloral, Bromides of Potassium and Ammonium.



**Uræmia**—Elaterin, Croton Oil, Iron, Turpentine.

**Urticaria**—*Internally*. Chlorate of Potassium and Perchloride of Iron, Saline Purgatives. *Locally*, Glycerin, Alkaline Baths. Menthol in Solution, Sulphurous Acid and Glycerin.

**Vesical Inflammation**—Opium, Belladonna, Alkalies or Acids, Uva Ursi, Buchu, Salicylic Acid, Barley Water.

**Vomiting**—Bismuth, Cerii Oxalas, Hydrocyanic Acid, Morphine, Creosote, Calomel, Hydrargyrum cum Cretâ, Belladonna.

**Vulvitis** — *Locally*, Morphine and Lead Lotions. *Internally*, Opium, Quinine, Iron.

**Whooping-Cough**—Ipecacuanha, Belladonna, Hydrocyanic Acid, Bromide of Potassium, Chloride of Ammonium, Bromide of Ammonium, Chloroform, Alumen, Ammonia, Ether, Aconite, Opium.

**Worms**—See Entozoa.



## THE PRINCIPAL MEDICINES

ARRANGED

ACCORDING TO THEIR ACTIONS.

---

### Alteratives.

These are medicines which improve the general nutrition of the body, without any apparent action on individual organs.

*Examples.*—Arsenic, Mercury, Iodine, Cod-Liver Oil, and most Vegetable Bitters.

### Anæsthetics.

These are medicines which destroy sensibility.

They are either LOCAL, depriving the peripheral nerves of sensation—

*Examples.*—Cold, Ether Spray, Cocaine, Carbolic Acid, &c.,

Or GENERAL, which destroy the sensibility of the nerve centres—

*Examples.*—Chloroform, Ether, Nitrous Oxide, Ethyl Chloridum, &c.

**Analgesics.** See Anodynes.



### **Anaphrodisiacs.**

These are medicines which diminish the sexual appetite.

*Examples.*—Cold, Bromides, Iodides, Hyoscyamus, Camphor, &c.

**Anhidrotics.** *See* Antihidrotics.

### **Anodynes.**

These are medicines which relieve pain, by acting on the nerves or nerve-centres.

*Examples.*—Cold or hot applications, Aconite, Exalgine, Belladonna, Cocaine, Hemlock, Opium, Morphine, Chloral, Anæsthetics, Acidum Acetylsalicylicum (Aspirin), Benzaminæ Lactas, &c.

### **Antacids.**

These are medicines which neutralise, by combining chemically with any free acid existing in the stomach or intestines. Tonics should be given with them to improve the feeble or perverted state of the digestive organs on which the acidity depends. If the acid exists in the gaseous condition, ammonia, from its volatility, will best combat it; if in the lower bowel, magnesia or lime is most suitable, as it will withstand for a longer time the action of the intestinal juices. When the acidity is in the urinary organs, the alkalies, except ammonia, are to be preferred, from their direct diuretic action. Ammonia is most suitable for the old and feeble, being most stimulating.



*Examples.*—Carbonate of Ammonium, Solutions of Ammonia, Spirit of Ammonia, the Alkalies and their Carbonates, the Carbonates of Magnesium and Calcium, Solution of Lime, &c.; and when the acidity is in the urine, the Acetates, Citrates, and Tartrates may also be employed.

### **Anthelmintics.** (Vermifuges. Vermicides.)

These are substances which destroy or expel worms located in the intestines; as a rule, they should be given on an empty stomach. If the parasite exists in the large bowel, as is the case with *Oxyuris vermicularis*, which is chiefly in the rectum, enemata will very readily deal with it, and they should be added to internal remedies.

*Examples.*—Felix mas, Cusso, Santoninum, Oleum Terebinthinæ, Enema of Infusion of Quassia, Pelletierinæ Tannas, Thymol, &c. Most of the Cathartics also act as Vermifuges.

### **Antidotes.**

These are medicines which counteract the effect of poisons. See under "POISONS."

### **Anti-Emetics.**

These are medicines which check vomiting.

*Examples.*—Ice, Bismuth, Creosote, Chloroform, Hydrocyanic Acid, Opium. Alcohol, Cocaine, Bromides, Chloral, Butyl-Chloral, &c.



### **Antihidrotics, or Anhidrotics.**

These names have been given to medicines which lessen the secretion of sweat.

*Examples.* — Mineral Acids, Belladonna, Atropine, Picrotoxin, Muscarine, Pilocarpine, &c.

### **Antiperiodics.**

These are medicines which lessen the severity or prevent the recurrence of the attacks of those diseases which recur periodically.

*Examples.* — Cinchona and its alkaloids, Nectandra Bark and its alkaloid Beberine, Arsenic, Salicin, Salicylates, Tinctura Gelsemii, &c.

### **Antipyretics.**

These are medicines which reduce the temperature of the body in fevers, &c.

*Examples.* — Quinine, Salicin, Salicylates, Phenazonum (Antipyrine), Salol, Acetanilidum (Antifebrin), Camphor, Cold, most of the Essential Oils, Sudorifics, &c.

### **Antiseptics.**

These are medicines which arrest or prevent putrefaction.

*Examples.* — Carbolic Acid, Sulphurous Acid, Salicylic Acid, Boric Acid, Chloral Hydrate, Thymol, Salol, Permanganate of Potassium, Iodoform, Iodol, Guaiacol, Creosote, Cresol, Formaldehyde, Hexamina (Urotropine) for urine.



**Antisialics.**

These are medicines which lessen the secretion of saliva.

*Examples.*—Atropine, Opium, Morphine, Borax, &c.

**Antispasmodics.**

These allay spasm, that is, undue or irregular muscular contraction. There are the pure or direct, and the indirect; the former have a direct influence on spasmodic action, the latter (such as a purgative in chorea, where it depends on intestinal irritation, or a tonic in epilepsy arising from vascular atony) operate indirectly.

*Examples.*—The pure or direct are Ether, Chloroform, Opium, Ammonia, Asafetida, Valerian, and the Valerianates, &c.

**Antizymotics.**

These are substances which arrest fermentation, and include ANTISEPTICS and DISINFECTANTS. (Which see.)

**Aphrodisiacs.**

These are medicines which increase the sexual appetite.

*Examples.* — Strychnine, Phosphorus, and Tonics.



**Astringents.** (Styptics. Constringents.)

Substances which arrest secretions and excretions. They do so by causing a condensation of contractile fibres, improving tone, and altering action.

*Examples.*—Acidum Carbolicum, Acidum Sulphuricum, Acidum Tannicum, Alumen, Belæ Fructus, Bismuthi Subnitrates, Borax, Catechu, Creosotum, Salts of Calcium, Cupri Sulphas, Ergota, Ferri Sulphas, Solutions of the Ferric Salts, Galla, Hæmatoxyli Lignum, Kino, Kino Eucalypti, Krameria, Plumbi Acetas and other preparations of lead, Quercus, Uva Ursi, Zinci Acetas, Zinci Carbonas, Zinci Oxidum, Zinci Sulphas, Calcii Lactas, &c.

**Cardiac Sedatives.** *See* Sedatives.

**Cardiac Stimulants.** *See* Stimulants.

**Cardiac Tonics.** *See* Tonics.

**Carminatives.**

These are medicines which aid the expulsion of gas from the alimentary canal.

*Examples.*—The Essential Oils, Alcohol, Ether, Chloroform; the Warm Aromatics, as Cinnamon, Ginger, Pepper, Capsicum, and Myrrh; Asafetida, Ammonia, &c.



**Cathartics.** (Purgatives. Evacuants.)

Medicines which promote the evacuation of the intestinal contents. Mild ones are LAXATIVES; stronger, PURGATIVES; and those are DRASTIC which operate with painful energy. They vary in their mode of action—some rouse and increase the peristaltic action; others merely stimulate the mucous glands, inducing watery evacuations. Further, these medicines elect certain parts of the bowel on which to operate. Jalap acts on the small intestine chiefly; Aloes and Colocynth on the large bowel; while Rhubarb acts on both.

*Examples.*—Aloin, Cambogia, Colocynthis Pulpa, Oleum Crotonis, Elaterium, Hydrargyrum cum Cretâ, Hydrargyri Subchloridum, Jalapa, Jalapæ Resina, Magnesia, Magnesii Sulphas, Oleum Olivæ, Podophylli Resina, Potassii Sulphas, Potassii Tartras Acidus, Prunum, Rhei Rhizoma, Oleum Ricini, Scammoniae Resina, Senna, Sodii Phosphas, Soda Tartarata, Sodii Sulphas, Sulphur, Tamarindus, Cascara Sagrada, Phenolphthaleinum, &c.

**Caustics.** (Cauterants. Escharotics.)

Substances possessing the power of destroying living tissue. When they act powerfully they produce an Eschar; hence Escharotic.

*Examples.* — Acidum Carbolicum, Acidum Chromicum, Acidum Aceticum, Acidum Hydrochloricum, Acidum Nitricum, Acidum Sulphuricum, Liquor Ammoniae Fortis, Liquor Antimonii



Chloridi, Argenti Nitras, Cupri Sulphas, Mercuric Salts, Potassa Caustica, Zinci Chloridum, Zinci Sulphas, &c.

### **Cholagogues.**

These are medicines which remove bile from the body, either by acting on the intestines or by preventing its re-absorption from the intestines.

*Examples.*—Purgatives, Sulphate of Sodium, Salts of Mercury, Podophyllin, Euonymin, &c.

### **Demulcents.**

These are medicines which soothe and protect the parts to which they are applied, especially the mucous membrane.

*Examples.* — Mucilage, Olive Oil, Almond Oil, White of Egg, Glycerin, Honey, Starch, Linseed, Liquid Paraffine, &c.

**Deobstruents.** See Liquefacients.

### **Deodorizers.**

These are medicines which neutralise or destroy disagreeable smells.

*Examples.*—Chlorine, Sulphurous Acid, Permanganate of Potassium, Charcoal, &c.

### **Depressants.**

These are medicines which lessen functional activity.

I. HEPATIC.—These lessen the secretion of the liver.



*Examples.*—Purgatives, especially the Sulphate of Magnesium, Castor Oil, &c.

2 SPINAL. — These depress the functional activity of the cord, either by lessening the supply of blood to the cord, or by directly depressing the nerve-centres.

*Examples.*—Antimony, Hydrocyanic Acid, Chloral, Camphor, Opium, &c.

### **Diaphoretics.** (Sudorifics.)

Remedies which increase perspiration. Some of them act by increasing the functional activity of the skin; some by quickening the circulation; others by lowering it, where, as in fevers, increased vascular action is associated with a perversion of the cutaneous function. While using them, the surface of the body should be kept warm.

*Examples.*—Liquor Ammonii Acetatis. Antimonii Oxidum, Antimonium Tartaratum, Guaiaci Resina, Pulvis Ipecacuanhæ Compositus, Sulphur, Jaborandi, Phenazonum, Opium, Camphor, Alcohol, Warm Drinks, &c.

### **Disinfectants.**

These are substances which destroy the specific poisons of communicable diseases.

*Examples.*—Calx Chlorinata, Liquor Chlori, Acidum Carbolicum, Acidum Boricum, Acidum Salicylicum, Potassii Permanganas, Liquor Sodæ Chlorinatæ, Liquor Zinci Chloridi, Chloral Hydras, Corrosive Sublimate, Mercuric Iodide, Formaldehyde, &c.



### **Diuretics.**

These promote the secretion and evacuation of urine, either by stimulating the secreting cells of the kidneys, or by raising the blood pressure. Their operation is favoured by a cool skin, and that of some of them by not giving so much as would induce catharsis.

*Examples.*—Spiritus Ætheris Nitrosi, Buchu, Cantharidin, Digitalis, Oleum Juniperi, Potassii Acetas, Potassii Nitrates, Potassii Tartras Acidus, Scilla, Scoparius, Oleum Terebinthinæ, Copaiba, Digitalis, Strophanthus, Caffeinæ Citras, Urginea, Theobrominæ et Sodii Salicylas (Diuretin), &c.

### **Emetics.** (Vomits.)

These are medicines which occasion the emptying upwards of the contents of the stomach. They are direct, topical, or irritant, producing vomiting only when received into the stomach, and whose action is immediate; and general, or specific which act alike, whether when introduced into the stomach or any part of the vascular system (as for instance, the veins), and whose operation is generally more tardy, a gradually deepening depression preceding it. The specifics are marked thus\*.

*Examples.*—\*Antimonium Tartaratum, Cupri Sulphas, \*Ipecacuanha, Sinapis, Sodii Chloridum, Zinci Sulphas, \*Apomorphine, Lukewarm Water, &c.

### **Emmenagogues.**

Medicines which promote the menstrual discharge by stimulating the uterus to increased



action. Many so-called emmenagogues are merely cathartics, their influence on the rectum being reflected on the uterus.

*Examples.*—The following operate directly, and may be termed the true:—Borax, Ergota, Myrrha, Gossypii Radicis Cortex, &c.

**Emollients.** (Demulcents, Relaxants.)

Substances which render the tissues softer and more lax, by lessening the vital tone or cohesion; or which soften and protect the sensitive surfaces of the body.

*Examples.*—Acacia, Adeps, Oleum Amygdalæ, Amylum, Cera Alba, Cera Flava, Cetaceum, Glycerinum, Glycyrrhiza, Lini Farina, Oleum Lini, Oleum Olivæ, Theriaca, Tragacantha, Uvæ, Fixed Oils and Fats, Heat and Moisture, Paraffinum Liquidum, &c.

**Epispastics.** (Counter-irritants. Derivatives. Rubefacients. Revulsives.)

These redden, inflame, and vesicate the skin.

*Examples.*—Acidum Carbolicum, Liquor Ammonię Fortis, Antimonium Tartaratum, Aqua Fervens, Cantharidin, Capsicum, Oleum Crotonis, Sinapis, Oleum Terebinthinæ, &c.

**Errhines,**

These are medicines which cause sneezing and increase the mucous secretion from the nose.

*Examples.*—Ipecacuanha, Tobacco, &c.



### **Expectorants.**

These are medicines which increase pulmonary secretion, or promote its discharge.

*Examples.*—Acidum Benzoicum, Ammonii Benzoas, Antimonium Tartaratum, Balsamum Peruvianum, Balsamum Tolutanum, Benzoinum, Ammoniacum, Ipecacuanha, Lobelia, Scilla, Senega, Ammonii Carbonas, Sulphur, Jaborandi, Ipecacuanha, Apomorphine, Potassii Iodidum, Alkalies, Urginea, &c.

**Febrifuges.** *See* Antipyretics.

**Gastric Tonics.** *See* Tonics.

**Hepatic Depressants.** *See* Depressants.

### **Hepatic Stimulants.**

These are medicines which increase the functional activity of the liver, and the amount of bile it secretes.

*Examples.*—Acidum Nitro-Hydrochloricum Dilutum, Aloes, Sodii Phosphas, Benzoates, Salicylates, Ipecacuanha, Mercuric Chloride, Iridin, Euonymin, Podophyllin, &c.

### **Hypnotics.**

These are Medicines which induce sleep.

*Examples.*—Opium, Chloral, Chloral Formamidum, Butyl-Chloral, Belladonna, Hyoscyamus, Bromides, Paraldehyde, Methylsulphonal (Trional), Sulphonal, Barbitonum (Veronal), &c.



**Liquefacients.** (Deobstruents. Alteratives.)

Medicines acting obscurely or specifically, and altering morbid conditions of the system ; others acting on the lymphatic and capillary systems, accelerating the metamorphosis of tissue, and thus promoting the removal of swellings, fluid and solid.

*Examples.*—Acidum Arseniosum, Hydrargyri Perchloridum, Hydrargyri Iodidum Rubrum, Hydrargyri Subchloridum, Iodum, Oleum Morrhuæ, Podophylli Resina, Potassii Bromidum, Potassii Chloras, Potassii Iodidum, Acidum Hydriodicum Dilutum, &c.

**Lithotriptics.**

These are medicines which prevent the solids of the urine from being deposited, or dissolve the solids formed in the urine.

*Examples.*—Water, Mineral Acids, especially Nitric Acid, the Alkalies and their Carbonates, &c.

**Mydriatics.**

These are medicines which dilate the pupil.

*Examples.*—Belladonna and its alkaloids Atropine, Hyoscyamine, Duboisine, Homatropine, &c.

**Myotics.**

These are medicines which contract the pupil.

*Examples.*—Calabar Bean, Esserine, Physostigmine, &c.



**Narcotics.** (Hypnotics. Soporifics. Anodynes.)

Medicines which induce prostration of the vital powers and sleep; this being preceded by a stimulating effect on the brain and heart. In large doses, the stimulant effect is overborne, and they operate like sedatives.

*Examples.*—Belladonna, Cannabis Indica, Hyoscyamus, Morphinae Hydrochloridum, Opium, Stramonii Folia et Semina, Chloral Hydras, Butyl-Chloral Hydras, Codeina, Paraldehyde, Sulphonal, Methylsulphonal (Trional), Chloral Formamidum (Chloralamide), Barbitonum (Veronal), &c.

**Purgatives.** See Cathartics.

**Pustulants.**

These are drugs which produce pustules.

*Examples.*—Croton Oil, Tartar Emetic, &c.

**Refrigerants,**

These act by diminishing the force of the circulation when it is unduly or morbidly excited, thus reducing the heat of the body and giving rise to a sensation of coolness throughout the system. The most powerful are cold drinks, cold bath, cold air, freezing mixtures.

*Examples* —Acidum Citricum, Acidum Sulphuricum Dilutum, Acidum Tartaricum, Limonis Succus, Potassii Chloras, Potassii Nitras, Phenazonum, Acetanilidum, Phenacetinum, &c.



### Rubefacients.

These are medicines which produce congestion and redness of the skin.

*Examples.* — Friction, Ammonia, Alcohol, Mustard, &c.

### Sedatives. (Contra-Stimulants. Calmatives.)

Medicines which directly depress the vital powers, there being no antecedent excitement. In large doses, they give rise to delirium; whereas, in the case of Narcotics, the tendency is to apoplexy and coma.

1. CARDIAC.—These lessen the force and frequency of the heart's action.

*Examples.*—Aconite, Antimonials, &c.

2. VASCULAR. — These contract the blood-vessels, and so lessen the supply of blood through them.

*Examples.* — Digitalis, Adrenalinum, Ergot, Hamamelis, Lead, Opium, &c.

3. LOCAL.—These diminish the sensibility of the skin.

*Examples.* — Aconite, Belladonna, Opium, Chloroform, Chloral, &c.

4.—GENERAL.

*Examples.*—Opium, Hydrocyanic Acid, &c.



### **Sialagogues.**

Substances which excite the secretion of saliva by a topical, irritant, or stimulant action.

*Examples.*—Armoracia, Caryophyllum, Pyrethri Radix, Senega, Zingiber, Jaborandi, Physostigma, Mustard, Mercurials, &c.

**Sternutatories.** See Errhines.

### **Stimulants. (Excitants.)**

Remedies which excite the vital powers, and give an impulse to the circulation, by increasing the force and frequency of the heart's contractions. The most important are marked thus. \*

*Examples.* — \*Æther, Ammoniacum, \*Ammonii Carbonas, \*Liq. Ammoniae, \*Spiritus Ammon. Aromaticus, Oleum Anisi, Armoracia, Arnica, Oleum Cajuputi, \*Camphora, Capsicum, Cardamomum, Carui, Caryophyllum, Cinnamonum, Oleum Coriandri, Fœniculi Fructus, Oleum Lavandulæ, Oleum Menthæ Piperitæ, Oleum Menthæ Viridis, Myristica, Oleum Pimentæ, Piper, Oleum Rosmarini, Serpentaria, \*Sinapis, \*Liquor Sodæ Chlorinatæ, Sodii Chloridum, \*Oleum Terebinthinæ, \*Vinum Xericum (and other alcoholic drinks), Zingiber, &c.

### **Styptics.**

These are medicines which arrest the flow of blood from bleeding vessels.



*Examples.*—Cold, Acids, Astringents, Digitalis, Hamamelis, Ergot, especially Adrenalinum, &c.

### **Tonics.** (Corroborants.)

Medicines which impart firmness, vigour, and tone to the body when it is relaxed and debilitated. They are stimulants so far, inasmuch as they quicken the vital powers; but this result is brought about gradually, and is of a more lasting nature. Some act upon the nervous system only, others on the vascular, &c. The most important are marked thus \*.

*Examples.*—Acidum Hydrochloricum Dilutum, Acidum Nitricum Dilutum, Acidum Phosphoricum Dilutum, Acidum Sulphuricum Dilutum, Anthemis, Argenti Nitras, Argenti Oxidum, Aurantii Cortex, \*Bismuthi Subnitras, Calumbæ Radix, \*Chirata, \*Cinchona, Fel Bovinum Purificatum, \*Ferri Carbonas Saccharatus, \*Ferri et Ammonii Citras, \*Ferri et Quininæ Citras, \*Tinctura Ferri Perchloridi, \*Liquor Ferri Pernitratis, \*Ferri Sulphas, \*Gentiana, \*Myrrha, \*Nux Vomica, \*Quassia, \*Quininæ Sulphas, \*Strychnina, Taraxacum, Zinci Oxidum, Zinci Sulphas, Tinctura Picrorhizæ, &c.

### **Vesicants.**

These are medicines which produce vesicles.

*Examples.*—Cantharidinum, Oleum Sinapis, &c.



67 Read: Rd  
talis, Hæmorrhæ, Rigor, especially Adrenalinum, &c.

3  
? *Re-ignis*  
*Re-ignis*

Medicines which impart firmness, vigour, and tone to the body when it is relaxed and debilitated. They act upon the nervous system, as they quicken the vital powers; but this result is brought about gradually, and is of a more lasting nature. Some act upon the nervous system only, others on the vascular, &c. The most important are marked thus \*

Examples - Acidum Hydrochloricum Dilu-  
tum, Acidum Nitricum Dilutum, Acidum Phos-  
phoricum Dilutum, Acidum Sulphuricum Dilu-  
tum, Anthemis, Argenti Nitras, Argenti Oxidum,  
Aurantii Cortex, \*Bismuthi Subnitras, Cascarilla,  
Radix \*Chinis, \*Cinchona, Fel Bovinum Pur-  
ificatum, \*Ferri Carbonas Saccharatus, \*Ferri et  
Ammonii Citras, \*Ferri et Quinine Citras,  
\*Tinctura Ferri Picricæ, \*Tinctura Ferri Per-  
nitatis, \*Ferri Sulphas, \*Gentiana, \*Matico,  
\*Nux Vomica, \*Quassia, \*Quinine Sulphas,  
\*Strychnia, Tarsaxum, Zinc Oxidum, Zinc  
Sulphas, Tinctura Picricæ, &c.

Vesicants

These are medicines which produce vesicles.  
Examples - Cantharidinum, Oleum Semplicis  
&c.



